

A Dictionary of Ngizim

by Russell G. Schuh

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS
Berkeley • Los Angeles • London

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PUBLICATIONS IN LINGUISTICS

Editorial Board: William Bright, Wallace Chafe, Paul
Kay, Ronald Langacker, Margaret Langdon, Paul Schachter

Volume 99

Issue Date: June 1981

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS
BERKELEY AND LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS, LTD.
LONDON, ENGLAND

ISBN: 0-520-09636-3
LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOG NUMBER: 80-28535

© 1981 BY THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Schuh, Russell G

A dictionary of Ngizim.

(University of California publications in
linguistics; vol. 99)

English and Ngizim.

1. Ngizim language Dictionaries—English.

2. English language—Dictionaries—Ngizim. I. Title.

II. Series: California. University. University of

California publications in linguistics; vol. 99.

PL 8548.67.Z5S38

493'.7

80-28535

ISBN 0-520-09636-3

Contents

Preface	vii
Phonological and grammatical introduction	x
Paradigms	xxi
Abbreviations	xxiv
NGIZIM-ENGLISH	1
ENGLISH-NGIZIM	187
Addenda	228
References	231

Preface

Ngizim is a language belonging to the Chadic Family of the Afroasiatic Phylum. Figure 1 below, based on Newman (1977), shows the place of Ngizim within Chadic.

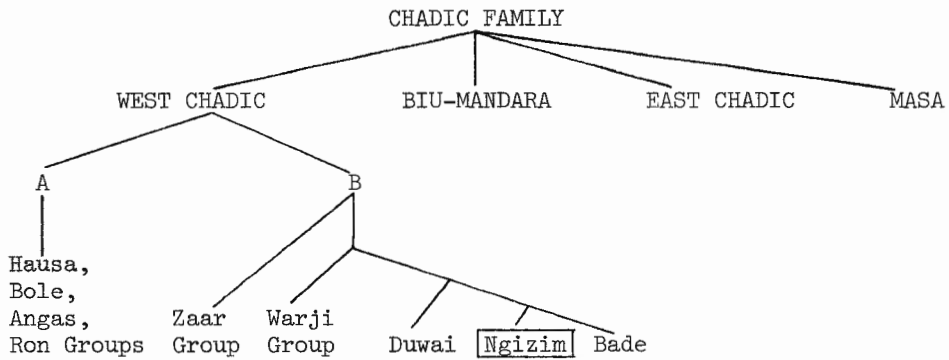


Figure 1

Ngizim is spoken by perhaps 25,000 people in northeastern Nigeria. As Figure 1 shows, Ngizim is particularly closely related to Duwai and Bade. Figure 2 shows the relative geographical positions and extents of these three languages and their general location in Nigeria.

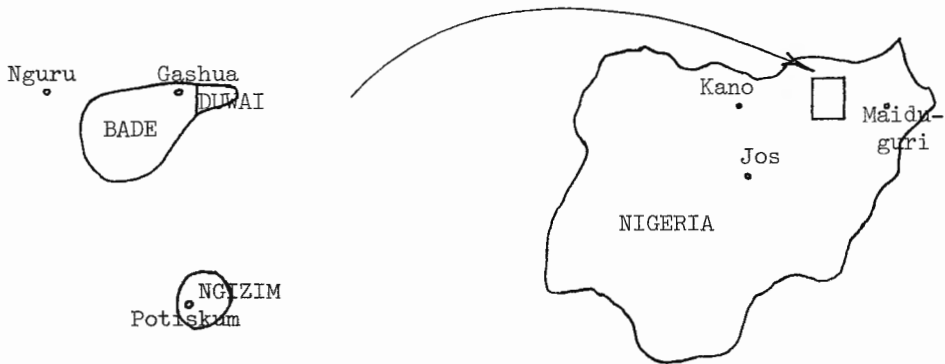


Figure 2

Prior to 1970, the only published materials on Ngizim were word lists in Koelle (1854) and Meek (1931). The list in Koelle is identified as Ngó:djin (Ngojin), the name of a historically important Ngizim town

(see Schuh (1975) for further remarks). Kraft (n.d.) also has an Ngizim list comprising about 435 items. The only document printed in Ngizim is *Duvu Miya* (anonymous, n.d.), a small adult literacy manual published by the Gaskiya Corporation of Zaria, Nigeria.

During 1969-70 I was fortunate enough to spend a year with my wife, Maxine, in Potiskum Nigeria doing research on Ngizim as part of a comparative Chadic syntax project funded by the National Science Foundation (grant no. GS-2279, Paul Newman, Principal Investigator). Two descriptive studies have been completed based on this research: Schuh (1971) is a description of Ngizim verb morphology and Schuh (1972) is a detailed descriptive syntax. In addition, multicopied versions of a fairly complete descriptive phonology and morphology with remarks on syntax ("Ngizimicae Linguae Principia") and an English-Ngizim vocabulary (an earlier version of that included here) have been distributed among interested scholars. Most of the lexical data in the present volume was also assembled based on this year of research.

In 1973-75 I was employed as a Senior Research Fellow by the Centre for the Study of Nigerian Languages of Abdullahi Bayero College, Kano (now Bayero University). During these two years, Maxine and I lived in Gashua, Nigeria where I did research mainly on Bade and Duwai, but I also was able to collect more grammatical information on Ngizim and several hundred additional lexical items which have been included here. The combined research on Bade and Ngizim has also made possible the publication of detailed descriptive and comparative studies of the Bade and Ngizim determiner systems (Schuh 1977) and phonology (Schuh 1978).

The lexical materials here are based on words elicited directly, words encountered during grammatical elicitation, and words drawn from several hundred pages of texts, including folktales, history, ethnographic texts, and proverbs. Ngizim shows no significant dialect variation so no indication of speaker for particular entries is given. The main speakers with whom I worked are Malam Dan Boyi Kwana and Malam Adamu Helman Saleh Ngojin. I worked mainly with M. Boyi in directly requesting words and grammatical information, whereas M. Adamu provided me mainly with written texts, for which he explained those parts not clear to me. Among the texts M. Adamu wrote is a lengthy history of Ngojin, already distributed in mimeographed form and soon to be published. To both these

men I express my gratitude for their many hours of help and their continuing friendship. A number of other Ngizims were also particularly helpful: Adam Mai aided us especially in our early days in Nigeria by introducing us to Potiskum town and to speakers of Ngizim; Isa Mai Dede Alaraba provided a number of tape recorded texts, which he also helped me transcribe; and Simon Bala Potiskum helped me in Gashua while he was a student in the Gashua TTC.

I hope all those other people who have contributed in some way to my knowledge of general linguistics, Chadic languages, and Ngizim will not be offended if I single out just two people for special thanks. These are Paul Newman, who introduced me to comparative Chadic and who remains a constant stimulus to my work both through advice and through example, and my wife Maxine, whose companionship, encouragement, and ability to listen to and understand my babbling about Chadic languages has made the whole enterprise seem worthwhile.

Preparation of this dictionary was supported by National Science Foundation Grant No. BNS 79-10366.

Los Angeles
October 24, 1979

R.G.S.

Phonological and Grammatical Introduction

The following remarks are intended as an aid in understanding and using the dictionary. For more complete discussion, the reader is referred to the list of references, p. xxiv.

1. Phonology

1.1. Consonants. The consonantal phonemes of Ngizim are as follows:

			labials	alveolars	palatals	laterals	velars	labialized velars	laryngeal
obstruents	stops	voiceless	p	t	c		k	kw	
		voiced	b	d	j		g	gw	
		glottalized	ɸ	dʼ	ʼy				
		prenasalized	mb	nd			ng [ŋg]	ngw [ŋgw]	
	fricatives	voiceless	f	s	sh	tl			h
		voiced	v	z	zh	dl			
sonorants	nasals		m	n	ny				
	flap			r					
	trill			ʀ					
	lateral					l			
	semivowels				y			w	

Remarks on consonant phoneme chart:

All symbols, including di- and trigraphs, are phonological units. Thus, kw, gw, ngw are [k^w, g^w, ŋ^w]; mb, nd, ng, ngw are [m^b, n^d, ŋ^g, ŋ^g]; sh, zh, ny are [ʃ, ʒ, ñ]; tɬ, dɬ are [ɬ, ɮ].

Prenasalized: These sounds function as unit phonemes only in word initial position; medially, a nasal followed by a homorganic stop is always treated as a sequence.

The two r's: There are two contrasting r's; before the consonants t, d, d', n (all of which are [+coronal, -continuant]) and tɬ and dɬ, only trilled ʀ appears. In all other positions the r's contrast, though ʀ is found mainly in borrowed words and certain phonaesthetic words such as ideophones. cf. kèrà 'theft', kóřà 'reading' (< Kanuri).

Palatalization: Before i, there is a regular process of palatalization affecting n and all non-lateral alveolar obstruents. Thus, n → ny, t → c, d → j, d' → 'y, s → sh, z → zh. This happens, for example, in the singular imperative of verbs, which end in -i, e.g. kàasú 'she swept', à káashí 'sweep!'. Although the palatals thus have a morphophonemic relationship with the alveolars, they must also be given phonemic status since they contrast with the alveolars before a and other vowels.

Final devoicing: Voiced obstruents are devoiced when they appear word final, e.g. in pairs of verbal nouns such as dǎbdà but dǎbét 'selling'.

The phonemes l and h are restricted almost entirely to borrowed words, though l appears in a number of phonaesthetic words which seem to be native.

1.2. Vowels. The vocalic phonemes of Ngizim are as follows:

<u>Vowels</u>	i, ii	u, uu	<u>Diphthongs</u>	ai	au
	ee	oo			
	a, aa				

A phonetic ə is also of frequent occurrence. Cf. remarks on Short High Vowels below.

Remarks on vowel phonemes:

Length: Phonemic long vowels are marked by doubling the vowel. Long aa and short a are contrastive in all positions, e.g. kàawà 'play-

ing', kàwà 'fondness'; àdǎn 'crying', àadǎu 'south'. The mid vowels ee and oo are always long except in closed syllables, e.g. řèptà 'folding'. With the exception of two words beginning in long ii, long ii and uu are found only medially; neither ever occurs word final (but see remark on diphthongs below) and long aa is also rare in this position. Long vowels don't occur in closed syllables, with a few rare exceptions, e.g. kàaktlú 'measure'.

Short high vowels: The short high vowels i and u are in phonemic contrast only before pause. Medial in a word or phrase, there is no contrast between short high vowels, their quality being completely conditioned by surrounding consonants, or in some cases, vowels in neighboring syllables. Because of this fact, a wide range of phonetic high vowels are found medially in words, but they revolve around three principal qualities, essentially [i] in the neighborhood of y, [u] in the neighborhood of labialized velars and w, and [ə] elsewhere (following standard Chadic linguistic practice, the symbol ə represents a high, central, unrounded vowel, [ɨ]). At a deep level, it would thus be possible to represent dictionary entries with only a single high vowel symbol, say "I", medial in words since its quality would be predictable. From a practical point of view, it seems preferable to use the sub-phonemic transcription employed here and represent three vowel qualities. Because of the variable quality of short high vowels, the orthography used in this dictionary is not entirely consistent, so that the same word may be found written more than one way, e.g. following a palatal consonant sometimes an i may be found, sometimes a ə. The placement as well as the quality of short high vowels is predictable. That is, high vowels appear only where needed to break up impermissible consonant sequences, notably word initial or word final consonant clusters, three consonant sequences, the impossible sequence of obstruent followed by a sonorant consonant, and the sequence *CṼCC (where Ṽ is a long vowel). For a complete description of the distribution of short high vowels, see Schuh (1978).

Diphthongs: When medial in a phrase, the diphthongs are monophthongized as follows: ai → ii, au → uu (see, for example, the entries mǎi 'mother' and bàu 'red'). It will be noticed that a few entries are indicated as ending in -aw rather than -au, e.g. dǎishǎw 'vulture'. Al-

though the sequence written -aw is phonetically identical to the one written -au in isolation, they can be seen to be structurally different since the sequence -aw does not become -uu (cf. [diishaw bai] 'it's not a vulture', but [kaluu bai] 'it's not fear' from kálàù 'fear'). Instead -aw is either pronounced as a diphthong or is monophthongized to [oo]. While there are no lexical items with final -ay contrasting with final -ai, there is a rule monophthongizing a sequence -a y- to [ee], e.g. /ja ykau/ 'we saw' → [jeekau]. There are also cases where medial -ay- becomes [ee] when a following vowel is truncated, e.g. bèe 'thing' related to bàyà.

The vowels ee and oo are almost entirely restricted to borrowed words except for the monophthongization processes mentioned in the previous paragraph.

1.3. Tones. Syllables carry one of the following phonetic tones:

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| ‘
\
!
^
v
" | high
low
downstep
falling
rising
extra high (found only on certain phonaesthetic words) | Syllables unmarked for tone in this dictionary have their tones determined by syntactic and/or phonological environment. |
|----------------------------|--|--|

Ngizim may be analyzed as having only two phonemic tones, high and low (but see the remark on downstep immediately below). The contour tones (falling and rising) may be analyzed as sequences of high-low and low-high on single syllables respectively. Downstep is the result of the loss of a low tone between two highs where the second high is slightly lower than the first because of the universal Chadic downdrift phenomenon. There are a few words which are always pronounced with downstep, e.g. kúkú 'baobab', where there is no evidence of an intervening low tone. These are entered as such in the dictionary, but at a deeper level, they could probably be analyzed as having the sequence Hi-Lo Hi with Hi-Lo being contracted to Hi on a short syllable and the low being manifested only by Downstep on the next syllable.

Whereas falling tones and downsteps are not uncommon in lexical items, rising tones are very rare and seem to be almost totally restricted to final syllables where a final vowel has been truncated, e.g. dǝishǎw

'vulture' < *dʰíshàwú.¹ However, there is a small class of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. bǎu 'get', and one noun, jǎ 'dog', which seem to have inherent lexical rising tones with no apparent language internal explanation, though the fact that all the words in question begin in a voiced obstruent is undoubtedly relevant.

Ngizim has a number of tone processes which are not important at the level of individual lexical items, but which play an essential role in the tonal patterns of larger phrases. See Schuh (1971) for an outline of some of these rules. Because these rules are mostly phonetic in nature and can be predicted on the basis of the tones of the individual items involved, tones have not been marked in examples except for the tones of subject pronouns, which reveal the aspect and/or the tone of the verb (see section 2).

1.4. Alphabetical order. The following alphabetical arrangement is used:

ə	l
a	m (including mb)
b	n (including nd, ng, ngw, ny)
ɓ	o
c	p
d (including dl)	r (including ř)
dʰ	s (including sh)
e	t (including tl)
f	u
g (including gw)	v
h	w
i	y
j	ʔy
k (including kw)	z (including zh)

Short vowels precede long, high tone precedes low.

Unit phonemes written as digraphs or trigraphs are treated as sequences of consonants for the purposes of alphabetization, but sequences

¹This vowel truncation undoubtedly explains why some words must lexically end in -aw rather than -au as noted above in remarks on diphthongs. That is, at a deeper level of analysis, such items would have to be entered in the form given as starred here.

of identical vowels used to represent long vowels are treated as units. Thus, words beginning in tɪ (phonetic [ɬ]) follow tkú 'this' in the section on letter t but words beginning in either a or aa in the section on letter a are listed as if they were the same. The two r's are treated as equivalent. An important orthographic convention regarding labialized velars should be noted: when a short high vowel appears in the environment of a labialized velar, only phonetic [u] was said to occur (see above, section 1.2). In the orthography here, labialization of velars preceded or followed by a short high vowel is marked by the vowel u rather than a w following the velar. Thus, kùnú 'stomach' is underlyingly /kʷànú/, and dùkshí 'heavy' is underlyingly /dèkʷshí/.

2. Verbal Entries

2.1. Lexical form. There is no single form of the verb which allows one to predict all relevant features of its behavior. Verbs have lexical high or low tone which is manifested in the Subjunctive, Imperative, and usually the verbal noun, but it is neutralized elsewhere.² On the other hand, the vocalic ending of a verb in the Perfective (u or au) is not predictable from other forms since all other aspects have characteristic vowel suffixes which occur in place of the Perfective ending. It is my conviction that if at all practicable, entries in a dictionary should be forms that actually exist in the spoken language, even if this results in some redundancy. While this practice may look like underanalysis by general linguistic standards, it provides no inconvenience to the specialist and is certainly easier for the non-specialist to use, especially the native speaker untrained in language analysis who very likely would have little or no understanding of how to interpret an abstract, unpronounceable form. For this reason, all verb entries have at least two, and sometimes three or more forms listed. The main entry is the third person singular Perfective, which shows whether the Perfective vocalic termination is -u or -au (→ -ə and -a respectively when not preceding pause—cf. the entry -w Perfective marker); every verb entry is given with the verbal noun (see below, section 2.2), which

²Tone is highly predictable on verbs. Most verbs with -a(a)- in the first syllable or with a closed first syllable have high tone, others have low tone. There are exceptions, however, so tone for any particular verb can be predicted only on the basis of probability. See Schuh (1971) for a description of verb classes and verb aspects.

in most cases reveals the "lexical tone", i.e. the tone of the verb in the Subjunctive, Imperative, and usually the Imperfective; if lexical tone is not revealed by the verbal noun, the Subjunctive form is listed. The Subjunctive is also listed for verbs which take a long vowel in the Subjunctive, Second Subjunctive, and Imperative prefix (see below, section 2.3).

2.2. Verbal nouns. The vast majority of verbs have a verbal noun with lexical tone on the first syllable and a final -a, e.g. tɛ́fú 'enter', v.n. tɛ́fà; kàasú 'sweep', v.n. káasà. High tone verbs of the form $C_1V_1C_2C_3V$ all have a second verbal noun of the form $C_1\tilde{V}_1C_2\tilde{V}_1C_3$, e.g. dɛ́bdú 'sell' with verbal nouns dɛ́bdà and dɛ́bét. A second large class of verbs, mostly intransitive verbs of state, have verbal nouns ending in -ù. These verbs all have lexical low tone, but the verbal nouns have initial high tone if they have -a(a)- in the first syllable or if the first syllable is closed (cf. gázáu 'remain', dlɛ̀bgènú 'spoil', bèdàmú 'rebel' for examples). A third fairly large class of verbs has verbal nouns ending in -i. Such verbs are all lexically high tone verbs, e.g. bàrú 'give', kùrú 'refuse'. All other verbal noun types with other final vowels or aberrant tone patterns are restricted to perhaps five verbs or fewer each. In this dictionary all verbs are entered with their verbal nouns for ease of reference.

2.3. Subjunctive and imperative. Subjunctives and Imperatives (as well as most verbal nouns) take lexical tone on the first syllable. This tone is predictable for most verbs, being low for verbs whose first syllable is $Cə$, high otherwise, though there are numerous exceptions. Lexical tone for most entries can be seen in the verbal noun, but where it cannot, the Subjunctive form is included. For almost all verbs, the subject pronoun used with Subjunctive, Second Subjunctive, and the prefix used with Imperatives has the form (C)a (tone determined by verb tone and aspect). For a handful of verbs, the pronoun or prefix has a long vowel, e.g. zègáu 'know'. For these few verbs the Subjunctive is included as part of the lexical entry.

2.4. Transitivity. It is generally clear from the meaning of a verb whether it is principally transitive or intransitive for syntactic purposes. Most verbs can be used either way if semantically possible. There

are a number of verbs which are "lexically intransitive", however, i.e. as they appear in the lexicon they can be used only intransitively. Some such verbs have semantic transitive counterparts, e.g. *vàrú* 'go out', is only intransitive; to express the meaning 'take out', the verb *dǎu* must be used, and *dǎu* in turn cannot be used intransitively. Most lexically intransitive verbs, however, can be used transitively (assuming some transitive sense is semantically plausible) by addition of a transitizing suffix *-náa* when directly followed by a direct object and *-dù* when not followed by a direct object, e.g. (*intr.*) *kàtéé wúndùwà* 'he returned home', (*tr.*) *kàtá-náa dǎgdá* 'he returned the money'. Only lexically intransitive verbs are marked *v.intr.* All other verbs are left unmarked as to transitivity.

2.5. Ventive verbs. All verbs can potentially add a ventive suffix, which replaces the neutral verb suffixes. The meaning of this extension is the same as that of the *-óó* suffix in Hausa. The form of the ventive differs depending on aspect: Perfective *-ee(u)*, e.g. *kàtéu* 'he came back' (cf. *kàtáu* 'he went back'); Subjunctive *-ai*, e.g. *dá kàtài* 'that he come back' (cf. *dà kácí* 'that he go back'); Second Subjunctive and plural Imperative *-líná*, e.g. *dà kàtlíná* 'he should come back' (cf. *dà kàtá* 'he should go back'); verbal noun (= form used in Imperfective) *-àyí*, e.g. *àa kátáyí* 'he will come back' (cf. *àa kácí* 'he will go back'); Singular Imperative *-én*, e.g. *á kátén* 'come back!' (cf. *à kácí* 'go back!'). In addition to the verb suffix changes, all verbs have low tone in the Subjunctive and Imperative when used with the ventive. No ventive verb forms are given as lexical entries, with the single exception of *réu* 'appear (said of the moon)' which has a highly idiomatic meaning, not predictable from the neutral root *ráu*. Many examples contain ventive verb forms, however.

2.6. Totality extension. All verbs may potentially add the Totality Extension, which indicates action well or completely done. With transitive verbs, this extension is a suffix *-náa* when directly preceding an overt direct object, *-dù* otherwise. Although the Totality Extension and the Transitizing Suffix (see above, 2.4) are completely homophonous, they exhibit entirely different syntactic behavior (see the entries for *-náa* and *-dù*) and from a comparative point of view, they can be seen to be historically distinct. With intransitive verbs the Totality Extension

sion is the Intransitive Copy Pronoun (see paradigm on page xxii). Addition of the Totality Extension in no way affects the form of the verb itself. Therefore, no verbs are entered lexically with the Totality Extension, though many of the examples show the verb with this extension present.

3. Noun Entries

Plurals: The overwhelming majority of nouns have a plural formed on the following pattern: wákà 'tree' (pl.) wák-àk-ín, zàyí 'rope' (pl.) zày-ày-ín. The tones of the plural are always taken from the tones of the singular, with a high tone on the plural suffix -ín. A second common plural type, mainly used with nouns referring to humans, takes a plural suffix -cín, e.g. ngézém (pl.) ngézám-cín.³ All other plural types are restricted to a very few nouns. All nouns are entered with their plurals for ease of reference.

4. Adjectives

Entries with the indication *adj.* can be used as modifiers of nouns, either by placing them after the noun with no sort of connector, or (less commonly) by placing them before the noun and connecting the two with the linker -k, e.g. tlà bàu or búu-k tlà 'red cow'. Adjectives can also be used alone as nouns. See Schuh (1972) for more details on the syntax of adjectives.

5. Derived Forms

5.1. gá- ... -ák. Derived participial forms ('spoiled', 'dead', etc.) can be formed by adding the prefix-suffix pattern gá- ... -ák to verb roots. In principle this derivation can be applied to any verb, though in practice it is most common with intransitives. This pattern is completely productive but only forms actually attested in texts or in conversation have been entered here.

5.2. dá- Statives ('seated', 'cooked', etc.) can be formed by

³The remarks above on short high vowels (see section 1.2) suggest that the vowel in the plural suffixes -ín and -cín should be [ə]. However, it is clearly a phonetic [i]. These suffixes would perhaps best be written -ín and -cín, though as stated above, long vowels in closed syllables are otherwise very rare.

adding the prefix *dá-* to a verbal noun. This pattern is restricted to transitive verbs⁴ and the subject of the stative is always the semantic object of the verb. This formation is productive, but only forms actually attested in texts or conversation are listed.

5.3. *ma-*. Agentives are formed by a prefix *ma-* (sometimes *mə-*). This pattern is no longer productive, though such agentives are common. All forms found in texts or conversation are listed.

5.1. *a-*. A number of nouns with a prefix *a-* or *aa-* derived from other roots, usually verbs, have been found. This formation has no apparent semantic unifying factor nor is it productive. All such nouns which were found are listed.

5.5. *-líná*. An apparently non-productive process derives abstract nouns from other nouns with a suffix *-líná* or in some cases *-əná*, e.g. *mángìlíná* 'friendship' < *màngá* 'friend'. All examples of such nouns are included.

5.6. *-tú*. Many verbs have a suffix *-tú* (the vowel of which changes according to regular rules of aspect formation). Such verbs always have lexical low tone. Besides having limited use as a suffix deriving verbs from nouns or other verbs, e.g. *dlèràatú* 'disturb' < *dlèrá* 'pain', this suffix is always used with verbs borrowed from other languages, e.g. *wàakàatú* 'happen' < Kanuri *wàgà-jîn*. This process of borrowing is very productive and common, so a number of attested verbs of obviously very recent vintage (mostly used by younger speakers who use Hausa to the disadvantage of Ngizim) have not been included where a native Ngizim word or phrase of equivalent meaning exists, e.g. *hùutàatú* 'rest' < Hausa is not included since Ngizim has an expression of equivalent meaning, viz. *dà màfíyâ* (lit: 'take out breath').

5.7. Reduplicated verbs. Verbs indicating iterative or frequent action can be formed by reduplicating the first or the second syllable (this process was not investigated in enough detail to discover whether it is more commonly the first or the second syllable which is affected), e.g.

⁴There are about three intransitive verbs which take the *dá-* Stative, viz. *dám̀bàsù* 'seated', *dávèjí* 'lying down', and *dàř'ýí* 'be in a standing position, stationary'.

gènànú 'go around getting' < gènú 'get', bàbèrú 'peel off' < bèrú 'separate'. All attested examples are included.

6. Borrowings

Where the source is known, this has been indicated for all borrowed items. The majority of identified borrowings come from Kanuri, indicated K. The source for identifying Kanuri loans has been Lukas (1937), though this is probably not the dialect from which Ngizim has done most of its borrowing as can be seen from certain phonological discrepancies. Verbs in Kanuri are given in third person singular past form. More recent borrowings tend to be from Hausa, indicated H. There are also a few from Fulani, indicated Ful. Some words which are obvious borrowings but for which a certain source could not be identified are so indicated.

Paradigms

See individual items in the dictionary for explanations of use and illustrations.

Independent pronouns

1	fyû	1 excl	jà
		1 incl	wà
2m	cì	2	kùn
2f	kəm		
3m	ácî	3	ákshî
3f	átû		

Subject pronouns

1	na, naa	1 excl	jà, jàa
		1 incl	wà, wàa
2m or f	ka, kaa	2	kwa, kwaa

There are no 3rd person Subject Pronouns.

Indefinite nda, ndaa

The forms unmarked for tone have tone opposite to the verb in all aspects except 2nd Subjunctive, where all persons are low; those marked as low are always low. The long forms are used in the Imperfective and in the Subjunctive and 2nd Subjunctive with low tone monoverbs and the verbs kəmáu 'hear' and zègáu 'know'. For AUX forms in 3rd person, see aa, da, daa, and for Imperative, see a, aa.

Indirect object pronouns

1	âa(nái)	1 excl	íi-jà
		1 incl	íi-wà
2m	íi-cì	2	íi-kùn
2f	íi-kəm		
3m	íi-cî	3	íi-kshî
3f	íi-tû		

Bound suffix pronouns¹

1	-g-âa(nái)	1 excl	(-áa)-jà
		1 incl	(-áa)-wà
2m	(-áa)-cì	2	(-áa)-kùn
2f	(-áa)-kèm		
3m	-gǎ-rî	3	(-áa)-kshî
3f	-gǎ-râ		

Independent associative pronouns¹

1	k-âa(nái)	1 excl	kǎ-jà
		1 incl	kú-wà
2m	kǎ-cì	2	kú-kùn
2f	kǎ-kèm		
3m	kǎ-rî	3	kǎ-kshî
3f	kǎ-râ		

Intransitive copy pronouns (illustrated with jú 'go')

1	ná jì-n-gâa(nái)	1 excl	jà jì-n-áajà
		1 incl	wà jì-n-áawà
2m	ká jì-n-áacì	2	kwá jì-n-áakùn
2f	ká jì-n-áakèm		
3m	jì-n-gǎrî	3	jì-n-áakshî
3f	jì-n-gǎrâ		

Demonstrative system¹

		Deictic Predicators	Pronouns	Adjectives
near	singular	sàw(tàì)	sáu	t(ó)kú
	pl/mass	ndàw	ndáu	
distant	singular	sîi(tàì)	síyù	tíyù
	pl/mass	ndîi	ndíyù	
previous reference	singular	sónà(tàì)	sénú	ténú
	pl/mass	ndónà	ndénú	

¹See Schuh (1977) for a complete formal and syntactic discussion of these forms.

The verbs 'go' and 'come'

The verbs translated 'go' and 'come' have a complex set of suppletive alternants based on three different etymological roots, symbolized here as *D, *N, and *Y.

		*D		*N		*Y	
		'go'	'come'	'go'	'come'	'go'	'come'
Perfective		jú	děu				
Subjunctive					nà i	yí	yén (rare)
				nì ²			
Second Subjunctive		dá	dìiná		nná ³		
Imperative	sg.	à jí					à yén
	pl.	à ddá			à nná = à nìiná ³		
Imperfective					nì i	yá	
				nyà ²			

²The Subjunctive nì and Imperfective nyà are neutral as to direction of motion. Subjunctive nì seems to be restricted to sequential (narrative contexts). Nyà is usually the verbal noun form used in contexts other than the nucleus of a verb phrase.

³The Second Subjunctive and plural Imperative forms nná appear to be equivalent to those with the suffix -ìiná.

Abbreviations

<i>adj.</i>	adjective
<i>Ar.</i>	Arabic
<i>d.f.</i>	derived from
<i>E.</i>	English
<i>excl.</i>	exclusive
<i>f.</i>	feminine
<i>Ful.</i>	Fulani
<i>H.</i>	Hausa
<i>id.</i>	ideophone
<i>incl.</i>	inclusive
<i>intr.</i>	see <i>v.intr.</i>
<i>K.</i>	Kanuri
<i>m.</i>	masculine
<i>mod.adv.</i>	modal adverb (see Schuh (1972), section 7.4)
<i>n.</i>	noun
<i>pl.</i>	plural
<i>prep.</i>	preposition
<i>pron.</i>	pronoun
<i>sg.</i>	singular
<i>tr.</i>	see <i>v.tr.</i>
<i>v.</i>	verb
<i>v.intr.</i>	intransitive verb
<i>v.n.</i>	verbal noun
<i>v.tr.</i>	transitive verb

The following indications are also used:

See or See also: indicates that further example sentences containing that lexical item can be found under the indicated entry

cf.: cross-reference to other words of related meaning and/or function

NGIZIM-ENGLISH
DICTIONARY

A

a marker used before verbs in the imperative, both singular and plural; tone depends on context, being opposite to the following syllable, e.g. á bènýí 'cook!' (*sg.*), á bèná 'cook!' (*pl.*); à káashí 'sweep!' (*sg.*), à káasá 'sweep!' (*pl.*). Before monosyllabic low tone verbs and the verbs kè máu 'hear' and zè gáu 'know', the imperative marker is long, e.g. áa mǐ 'take!' (*sg.*).

aa see a

-áa- (1) associative linker (cf. ké) used only with second person singular and all plural pronouns in associative constructions (cf. -g, -gé for other persons), and only when those pronouns are attached to a noun ending in a vowel (see Bound Suffix Pronoun paradigm, p. xxii), e.g. from zà yí 'rope' we have zà y-áa-cǐ 'your (*m.sg.*) rope', zà y-áa-kém 'your (*f.sg.*) rope', zà y-áa-jà 'our (*excl.*) rope', zà y-áa-wà 'our (*incl.*) rope', zà y-áa-kùn 'your (*pl.*) rope', zà y-áa-kshǐ 'their rope' (but from kám 'farm' we have kám-cǐ, kám-kém, kám-jà, kám-wà, kám-kùn, kám-kshǐ since kám does not end in a vowel).

(2) = áa (q.v.), which dissimilates to high tone when preceding low tone.

áa see áa(náí)

àa prep. (tone dissimilates to high before low)

(1)(a) at, in, on: required with any stationary locative phrase (but cf. ìí (1)), even if another positional word such as kùnú 'inside', dó dáa 'under', etc. is present. áa áasék 'at the market', áa dùs 'in the bush', áa rákàí 'on the bed', áa ráwân? 'where?' (i.e. 'where at?'); áa kùnú-k dáa 'in the town', áa gádáav-áakshǐ 'among them', áa wákà-k kúkú 'up in the baobab'.

(b) introducer of predicate of locative sentence; in first and second person, the pronouns for the Subject paradigm (p. xxi) are used, and these pronouns blend with áa to form unit pronoun forms with a long vowel. náa rǐí tkú 'I'm here', wàa kùnú-k wúndùwà 'we are in the house', kàa gádáav-áakshǐ? 'were you (*sg.*) among them?', māmáú áa vèdà 'the children are outside', áa rǐí tǐyú 'he/she/they are there'.

(2)(a) used before a verb as the mark of Imperfective aspect (the verbal noun is the verb form used); the same pronoun series and phonological behavior applies as in (1b). náa zégemà-k gwádánú 'I am planting peanuts', kàa dlàmà-gé mòò? 'what are you doing?', mǎayím áa ráwà 'the boy is running'.

(b) the pronoun + áa construction can be used alone with the Intransitive Copy Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxii) to mean 'go' in the Imperfective and with the transitive suffixes -náa, -dù (q.v.) to mean 'take'. náa n-gáa 'I am going/will go', kàa n-áacǐ bí? 'are

you going?', àa n-gárá 'she is going/will go'; nàa nàa káǎê 'I'll take the load', àa nàa gàréfka 'he will take the sorghum'. cf. yá. (NB: Some older speakers frown on this construction; it is not clear whether this use of àa derives from deletion or phonological reduction of yá.)

(3) at, during: apparently obligatory with simple noun phrases indicating duration (see first example below) and optional but rarely used with other temporal phrases (see second example). ndiwa gaawa áa Ngwajin aa zaaman Mai Kwaana 'there were many people in Ngwajin during the era of Mai K.'; aa lakwtu waaǎa akshi jaay ii Mai tǝnu, ǎaa damtuu naa bai 'at the time they questioned the Mai, there was no (other) nearby town'.

(4) "teen": in rapid speech, optionally replaces áyâawá (2a)(q.v.) in numbers 11-19, e.g. gúumà áa zǝdù = gúumà áyâawá-w zǝdù 'sixteen'. cf. vâré.

ábên (pl. ábábín)(d.f. bǝnú) food, specifically mush (shár) and sauce (dlùgwàn). cf. bíi-k tà.

ábá (pl. àbàncín) co-wife. á bami káa kǝmi ram-k mii wunduwa naa abancin-gara 'hide and listen to the talk of "uwargida" and her co-wives'. cf. áamá (2), màajiyà.

àbàacìkwìiná sniping co-wife. abaacikwiina kaarak bai, anaatakau sana sǎfka 'the co-wife was not nice, (and) the favored wife has drunk poison'. cf. àbá, áamá (2).

ábák (pl. àbàbín) bow.

ábákùwà (pl. ábákùwàwín) cotton (*Gossypium spp.*).

àbáyà (pl. àbáyáyín) a long gown with intricate needle work around the edges.

ábû hiding, seeking refuge from something feared. abu da kuu-k zha '(that's like) hiding after the battle (is over)'. cf. bà mú, dǝbǝsú.

ábùwán (pl. ábùwàwín) calf (of cow). cf. tǎà.

ábzhùurà (pl. ábzhùuràwín) ewe which has not yet given birth. bǝlan abzhuura áa tǝka-k miyu 'the beauty of a young ewe is (found) in the body of its mother'. cf. tǝmàakú.

ácî he, him, i.e. third person singular masculine pronoun form in Independent Pronoun paradigm (p. xxi). cf. -cî, -rî.

áacì see cì (3)

ádǝbà meat cooked before fire on spits, "shishekebab". cf. dǝbú (b).

áadâ (pl. áadádín)(< ?K. < Ar.) custom, tradition. kaawa-k aada 'traditional games'.

àdànák (pl. àdànnàín) buffalo (*Syncerus caffer planiceros*) [H. ǂauna].

ádáyàù (pl. ádáýùwín, ádáýàýín) desert fox, fenec (*Canis zerba*) [should be Hausa yanyawa, but Hausa name used by Ngizims was túlùu-túlùu]. See dāanú (2).

áadlâ (pl. áadlâdlîn) (1) chest.

(2) cough. jagadlau kkem aadla ngum, gaamana-k tlên dagai dá vèrai da aadla-gèrì, aci dà tapki 'when the lion coughed [beat cough], some old phlegm came out of his chest and he spit'. See dēkú.

(3) one's powers. bii tku dēka-naa aadla-k gayim 'that affair is beyond the powers of a cat'.

(4)(as object of tlàadũ, q.v.) clear one's throat.

àdlídlèbá (pl. àdlídlèbàbín) the tree *Cordia abyssinica* [H. alilli-ba]. mēsta da sau, paatka da sau, daamē-naa akuřna-k adliidlēba 'turning this way, licking that way, finishes off the gruel flavored with a.'.

ádliýádliýá (pl. ádliýádliýàýín) mid-afternoon. ndéa zəgəm adíyú naa adliýadliya 'one plants gourds in the afternoon'; ká mee adliýadliya 'you have suffered the heat of day' [you have brought the afternoon]. cf. ádùwáu.

ádùwáu (pl. ádùwàwín) (1) late afternoon. cf. ádliýádliýá, dúwāř.

(2) dàgàdùwáu (< dàk ádùwáu) about 6:00-9:00 PM.

ádâ (pl. áďáďlîn) (1)(a) head; (b) áďâ-k âw 'head of grain'.

(2) intellect, powers of thought. ad-aakun dá tlanyi 'you have become enlightened'. See kàatú. cf. ánkâl (2a).

(3)(a) -self (true reflexive). tiye áa gədləb̥ adâ-gəri 'everyone was praising himself'. See ànkàltú. cf. təkà (3).

(b) -self (emphatic reflexive). atu naa adâ-gara 'she herself'.

(c) own, one's own (emphatic reflexive possessive). See góo (2).

(4) ndà-k áďâ 'one's admirers, followers'.

(5) adâ kkəmə-ngara 'get lost'. See kkəmú (2a).

(6) mà áďâ 'praise'. See máu (2a).

(7) sá áďâ 'jump over'. See sáu (3c).

àďán (pl. àďàďàín)(d.f. dāanú) (a) crying, weeping.

(b) a cry, esp. of various animals, e.g. donkey, cat, fenec, etc. cf. kúrúwâ.

áďán (wákà) gum Arabic.

àadáu south.

áǎíyà previously unfarmed place. ná ju ná karm adiya 'I went and cleared a new farm'. cf. ázábái, rúwái, kàm.

áǎíyú (pl. áǎíyùwàwín) generic name for the cultivated gourd plant *Lagenaria siceraria* [H. duma] which has fruits of various sizes and shapes. See áǎlìyáǎlìyá, gàatlá (2). For various types of gourds, see cìizè mí, gérúwà, gwàbò, kùrtú, zùngùrú; cf. also fèná 'calabash' and other references there.

áfêk (pl. áfáfín) loincloth.

áfék (pl. àfakín, àfàfín) (previous reference form is àfú)

father (term used to refer to person having the relationship of father as opposed to a term of address). cf. bēbá, bàabá.

áfâ (pl. áfáfín) (1) the sun.

(2) heat of the sun. nàa áfâ 'it's hot (weather)'. cf. dāafáu.

(3) tēra-k afa 'the hot season'. See gùzép.

àfàǎgàì (< áfâ ǎgàì) day after tomorrow.

áfó see shìitá (2)

ágáǎè (< H. áagáǎée) large, old *Gazella rufifrons*. cf. ááyú.

ágáǎw (pl. áagàwàwín) pounded, cooked grain to be mixed with milk [H. fura]. See nàa (lbii). cf. dákwdâ, ákúǎnà.

àagí ever since, from the beginning of. cf. yáagì.

àgúǎ (pl. àgùǎǎín, àgùǎucín) ear.

ágùmàk (pl. ágùmámín) mahogany tree (*Khaya senegalensis*) [H. maǎaci].

ágùnàkú custard apple (*Anona senegalensis*) [H. gwandar daji].

águrátlìimà (pl. águrátlìimámín) the plant *Euphorbia lateriflora* [H. bi sartse]. aguratliima, ta-n aku-n, dà mci-n baaci dawa 'the a., when the goat eats it, it's the shepherd who dies'.

ágúǎǎadémàk (pl. àgúǎǎadémámín) (d.f. gúǎǎdémí) leper. See pátátá (a).

àagúvá the tree or shrub *Rothmania (Randia) nilotica* [H. barbaje].

àgwái (pl. àgwàgwín) egg(s).

ágwdàfú (pl. ágwdaǎfín) the tree *Detarium senegalense* [H. taura]. agwdafu shirin áa tfa ii miya gayi bai 'two a. fruits won't go into one mouth'.

ágwdù anger of a wife toward her husband, causing her to return to her father's compound. ama Waane ji-ngara ii agwdu; á ǎgiina 'so and

so's wife has run off in anger; go and conciliate her'. cf. gózhî (a), shilitán.

áikwák (pl. áikwákín) (1) hand. See jíbú (1f), màtá. cf. ámâi.

(2) finger. See bërđú. cf. zhògwèt.

(3)(with compass points) toward. caďaikwak zəgař 'east northeast'.

áipù (pl. áipàpín)(< K. áivù 'sin' < Ar.) crime, fault.

áisăw (pl. áisàwàwín) sand.

âizá (pl. âizàzín) smallpox.

áajà see jà (3)

àjàgúm (pl. àjàgùmàmín) hippopotamus.

àjálâ (< K. àzálâ < Ar.) haste, hurrying. náa aajala 'I'm in a hurry'; aajala áa fəta-k vakənak bai 'haste will not (help in) picking up a (large) water pot'. See ngénépù for another proverb. cf. kàm-púwâi.

ájàp (< K. ájàbbà 'wonderful; enterprising' < Ar.) astonishment. bli-k ájàp 'what an amazing thing!'. cf. jàptú.

áakəm see kəm (3)

àkér (pl. ákéràrín; NB: from the tones, it can be seen that this plural is d.f. ákéràk (q.v.); àkér itself has no plural)(d.f. kèrú) = ákéràk thief. akər soono áa gutka bai 'a sandal thief doesn't bend over'. See flyú.

ákéràk (pl. ákéràucín)(d.f. kèrú) = àkér thief. See gəshî (2d).

ákâ (pl. ákákín) (1) fire. See flitú, jíbú (1e).

(2) heat (of things). náa ákâ 'it (a thing) is hot'. cf. áfâ (2), đăafáu.

(3) âm-k ákâ 'hot water'. cf. gèjì (b).

àkáu (1)(a) back. atu dá məstai akuu-gara 'she turned her back'. cf. gùdlèdlĩř, wûrzú (1).

(b) sáyá-k àkáu 'girdle' (a type of jewelry worn around the waist).

(2)(shortened to káu [becomes kúu medial in a phrase])(a) behind (used in locative predicate or in conjunction with a preposition). áa kuu kuku 'he's behind the baobab'.

(b) dà káu 'to the rear, backward'. áa 'yuwa-k tēka-gəri da kau 'he withdrew'.

(3)(a)(introducing time adverbial phrase) after. akuu-k mətu-k Mai Kwaana 'after Mai Kwana's death'; akuu-k yuwan řap 'after a few days'; akuu kwá ji-naakun nən, akshî dà maaki kun 'after you leave

they'll look for you'.

(b) dà kúu-gú 'afterwards'.

ákdǎ (pl. ákdǎdín) desert date (*Balanites aegyptiaca*) [H. aduwa].

ákshî they, them, i.e. third person plural pronoun form used as:

(1) Independent Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxi).

(2) Independent Associative Pronoun (see paradigm p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kákshî. cf. kshî.

áakshî see kshî (2)

áakù (pl. gàráu, gàrùwáú) goat; nanny-goat. cf. gàbábù, dáyák, gà-bùzùrú, yábzá.

áakùn see kùn (3)

àakúndùwà (pl. àakúndùwáwín) space behind compound between that and another compound. cf. wúndùwà.

ákúřnà (pl. ákúřnàín) gruel [H. kunu]. cf. bàřbàří, áagăw.

áakwáyú (pl. áakwáyáyín) boundary (of a farm, etc.). cf. dáadégérí, íyâaká.

álà jáafù "good grief!".

àl'àkòořó (< K. ? < Ar.) beseeching God. naa awayau naa alakoořo Sheehu dà ci Ngwajin 'through power and beseeching of God, Shehu conquered Ngwajin'.

àalân (pl. àalâín) (< K. àlâm < Ar.) flag, banner.

àlbásâř (pl. àlbásâřâřín) (< ?K. < Ar.) onion.

àlbútâ (pl. àlbútâtín) (< ?K. < Ar.) handkerchief, small cloth in which things are kept in pocket.

àlgítâ (pl. àlgítâtín) (< ?K. or H. < Ar.) double reed shawm.

àlíibàřàm (pl. àlíibàřàřín) (< ?K. < Ar.) (1) needle. See dáyú (1a).

(2) inoculation.

állâařó (pl. állâařâřín) (< K. < Ar.) (1) begging.

(2) "we're seeking alms" (said by Koranic students who go door to door for food).

âm (pl. âmámín) (1) water. See gàzáu (1).

(2) embarrassment, shame. gayi bar am ii gayu-w 'one got the best of the other (in vying for girl)'.

(3)(a) *ám càlám* water with flour stirred into it in suspension. See *càlmú*, *mànú*.

(b) *ám dǎrí* water in which grain from which bran is removed has been soaked in preparation for pounding into flour.

ám! "oh?!", "is that so?!".

ámâ (pl. *àmàatín*, *àmàatáu*) (1) woman. cf. *gèmsèk*; *gàamà*.

(2) wife. cf. *àbá*, *àbàacìkwìiná*, *ánàatákáu*, *àtíḡá*.

ámâi (pl. *ámámín*) hand, arm. cf. *áikwâk*.

àamán (pl. *àamámín*)(d.f. *mànú*) year.

àamân (< K. < Ar.) trust, friendship.

ám̂bài (pl. *ám̂bàbín*) black cakes made of locust beans and used to flavor sauce (*diùgwàn*, q.v.) [H. *daddawa*]. *ambai àa nyuu-gè manda maa atu aayuwa* 'the locust bean cakes are slandering the salt block saying it is black'.

ám̂bàawà (pl. *ám̂bàawàwín*) any type of stalk of which the pulp is sweet, e.g. sugar cane and certain types of sorghum.

ám̂bái (pl. *ám̂báḡín*) crested porcupine (*Hystrix cristata*).

àmmá, *àmmán* (< K. or H. < Ar.) = *átén* (q.v.) (1) but. *nà nci amma ii naa wadaata-w bai* 'I want [four wives], but I'm not rich enough'; *ná yka ssuu gayi tak amman wà da wà shi am* 'I see only one house, but let's go [there] and drink water'.

NB: Used as a conjunction in the meaning 'but', *àmmá* and *átén* (q.v.) are optional. Sentences translatable as requiring a conjunction 'but' in English are often rendered in Ngizim with no conjunction at all, e.g. *ndá zèga-naa vèji naa wura*, *ndàa tausa-w ii akuu-gu* 'one knows a monkey has a neck, (but) one ties him around the waist'.

(2) well, but (at the beginning of sentence, may give notion of insistence or may simply be a filler with no apparent semantic function). *amman kà nci-naa wunya bau?* 'but would you like a light-skinned girl [as a wife]?'.

(3) *àmmá* ... *bái* except for (excludes something as being an exception to a larger, more general class). *taṁke aarawii nèn bii-k p-tau*, *amma anyi-k paaraakuu bai* 'anything that's white is something to like, except for the juice of the Sodom apple'. cf. *sée* (B); cf. also *hář* (3), which is antonymous to *àmmá* ... *bái* in that *hář* indicates a (possibly surprising) inclusion to a set while *àmmá* ... *bái* represents a (possibly surprising) exclusion.

ámzhàrú = *ánzhàrú* tomorrow.

ánêm (pl. *ánánámín*) chewstick tree (*Anogeissus leiocarpus*) [H. *marke*].

âa(nái) me, my, i.e. first person singular pronoun form used as:

- (1) Indirect Object (see paradigm, p. xxi).
 - (2) Bound Suffix Pronoun (p. xxii) where it is always used with the associative linker g, giving -gâa(nái).
 - (3) Independent Associative Pronoun (p. xxii) where it appears in the construction kâa(nái).
- cf. íyû, na.

ànnán (pl. ànnánín) testicle(s).

ánàatàakáu (pl. ánàatàakàkín) favorite wife. For proverbs see àbàa-cìkwìiná, àtláá. cf. áamá (2).

ánáyí (pl. ánáyáyín) rubber. See mànú.

àndádí (pl. àndádín, àndádídí) guts, intestines. See ìikáu (1), wìidá (3).

àngàabà (pl. àngàabàbín) type of sorghum with sweet pulp in stalks from which sugar is extracted (*Sorghum bicolor saccharatum*) [H. ta-kandá]. cf. ámbàawà, gávérkà.

àngwàm (pl. àngwàgwín) locust. cf. gwáará.

àngwàřzò (pl. àngwàřzàzín) male agama lizard (*Agama agama*) with orange head and tail. cf. kèráagèmak.

ánkâl (< K. ángâl < Ar.) (1) good sense. See dású.

(2)(a) the mind. See dlàááu (lai). cf. ádá (2).

(b)(used as subject of tláu) become disturbed, upset. See gátíák.

(3) nàa ánkâl 'slowly, carefully'.

ànkàltú (v.n. ànkàltà)(< K. ángâl 'intelligence' < Ar.) = òkàltú

be careful; look out for. ká nkalci ad-zaci 'you should be careful' [you should look out for your head].

ánkû (pl. ánkwákwín) river. Sèku dà sèkuna am ii anku, wuriya-w dâa bi 'may God increase the water in the river so that the borrow pit may get some' [may God increase your property so that we might share in it]. cf. gúmbàk.

ánkwâk (pl. ánkwákwín) pus.

ánkwàř (pl. ànkwàřarín) white hair. ankwař áa vëra ii miya-k maayim bai 'white hair doesn't grow on the face of a boy'. cf. yàd, gúzái.

ànnàshùwá (pl. ànnàshùwàwín)(< ?K. or H. < Ar.) feeling happy, feeling of affection. lawan annashuwa, ndáa dlama ii mantau 'a look of affection, one gives it to a friend'.

ányà = nfyà well, OK (as used to indicate the end of a conversation, visit, etc., especially when taking leave [cf. H. shikenan]). anya, ná ji-ngaa 'well, I'm leaving now'; anya, kà řda bai! 'well, don't stop!'.
 ànyád lower abdomen, between navel and pubis.

ànyáamérí (pl. ànyáaméráucín) (< ?H. < Igbo nyé 'mmírí 'bring water')
 Igbo person or language.

ányí (pl. ányányín) (1) milk.

(2) any milk-like substance. See àmmá (3).

(3) breast (of woman); teat (of animal). tla-k maayim naa anyi, naa fuula bai 'a boy's cow has teats but it doesn't have butter'.

ányí-k já a weed with small edible pods, probably *Cucumis figarei* [H. tsuwawun zaki].

ánzhàrú = ámzhàrú

àapèno (pl. àapènanín) (< K. àfùnó) Hausa person or language.

ápíiwà the prickly burr-grass *Cenchrus catharticus* [H. karangiya].

ápsăw (pl. ápsăwăwín) the tree *Bauhinia reticulata* [H. kargo], the bark of which is used for rope. Səku à nci baaci-k saafəř nən, ka-kəra-geri dá gaji aa shi-k apsaw 'if God loves a trader, his loads will break loose at the foot of the a.'. See tlàatú, dləmàtú.

áptâ (pl. áptátín) (fine-ground) flour. cf. dăayí.

áarəm (pl. áar(ə)mămín) the shrub *Bauhinia rufescens* [H. matsattsagi], which has black wood good for firewood.

áarà (pl. áaràrín) ribs.

àřàhá (pl. àřàřàhín) (< H. àřàháa < Ar.) (1) adj. cheap, inexpensive. kařee-gu ařaha 'these goods are cheap'.

(2) n. cheapness, inexpensiveness. kařee-gu naa ařaha 'these goods are cheap' [with cheapness].

(3) adj. easy, simple. dlərai ařaha naa gugza 'Karekare is easy to learn'.

àràakáu (pl. àràakàkín) (1) net.

(2) trap consisting of a net. cf. kàmbúudì, kēl, kwálté.

árárfiwà (pl. árárfiwăwín) (1) spider.

(2) in a folktale text, glossed as the ant called kiyashi in Hausa; this may have been a mistake in gloss or in the word used in the Ngizim text since dúuráawà (q.v.) was also used in the meaning kiyashi.

àrás (pl. àràsàsín) red sorrel (*Hibiscus sabdariffa*) [H. yakuwa].

àaráú (pl. àaràrín) root.

áraawà (pl. áraawàwín) potash. See diàrá (1a).

àaràwàì (pl. àaràwàwín) (1) *adj.* white (including whiteness of skin due to dryness or dust, but cf. bàu (2) for light-pigmented skin). baaci-k zəgər aarawai dɛka-naa baaci bəmbəkshɪ aarawai 'someone with white feet [from walking in dust, etc.] is better than someone with white buttocks [from sitting]'. See gəzhɪ (2d), shɪitán, tiá-tlùwà, and see àmmá (3) for use as predicate adjective. cf. sól, zār, pùutəřùu.

(2) *n.* whiteness. anyi-k wuri gayi naa kə baano, bal aarawii-gu gayi 'milk for a cowrie and for 100 cowries, all of them, their whiteness is the same'. See řák.

àřdàatú, àřdìitú, àřdìyàatú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* àřdìyà: àřdìyàatà)(< ?K.) agree to, approve of. tiye ařdìitə-ngəri naa zadak jiba waařa aci jibə nda-gəri 'everyone approved of the type of control he exercised over his people'. See kàsàktú, nàmbò.

àřdùwà = ríidùwà

àřdùwà (pl. àřdùwàwín) fronds of the dum palm (*Hyphaene thebaica*) used for palm leaf mats, baskets, etc. [H. kaba]. cf. tàatàukúřàm.

àarín dye pit. ná daaw-d ii aarin 'I dyed (cloth, etc.)' [I put (it) in the dye pit]. cf. dàltú.

àrìyáapù (pl. àrìyáapàpín) turban. See dáýáidà. cf. kəlèekəlè.

àrmúusàì razor. sákà àrmúusàì 'razor sheath'.

àarô (pl. àaràřín)(< K. rô) life. àaròo-gú vèrú 'he fainted'.

àrú malicious conduct. See ngùmáú (1).

àasék (pl. àasàsín)(< ? < Ar.) market.

áasárángái (pl. áasárángágín) the tree *Cassia kotschyana* [H. marga or gama fadà].

ásásá see zónzèn

àashəř (pl. àashəřàřín)(< K. àshîr < Ar.) (a) secret.

(b) as object of cìmú 'cover' (q.v.) 'keep a secret'.

àashâm (pl. àashámçín)(< K. àshâm < Ar.) fasting; the fast of Ramadan.

át an interjection indicating sudden recognition or recollection. at! kaane náa yva-k bìi-k řa? 'what! you mean I've been missing out on food?'. cf. káanè.

átémàk bleeding by cupping with a horn. ná dlamatémak, dèdè m dà pi
'I was cupped to reduce my blood'.

átèn (? d.f. átû + -n, q.v.) = àmmá [See NB at end of àmmá (1) for use of "but" as a conjunction in Ngizim]

(1) but. nàa rama ii-kem rama atèn kà rama maa ná ram ii-kem nèn iyu bai 'I'll tell you something, but don't say that it was me who told you'; akshi dambasu goo gaaru atèn ndáa samana-k banda-w 'they were living without a town wall but they were talking about starting it'.

(2) well, but (at beginning of sentence, may give notion of insistence or may simply be a filler with no apparent semantic function). atèn ká kema maa náa dlama-k tapii bí? 'well have you heard that I have been fornicating?'.

(3) átèn ... báí except for, with the exception of (excludes something as being an exception to a larger, more general set). bee gaawa àa dayu aa veda-k garva atèn soonoo bai 'many things get lost in the area of the chief's palace, but not sandals'. cf. sée (B); cf. also háĩ (3), which is antonymous to átèn ... báí in that háĩ indicates a (possibly surprising) inclusion to a set while átèn ... báí represents a (possibly surprising) exclusion.

àatèřshàn (pl. àatèřshàshín)(< ?K.) perfume.

àatàgwàzhàm (pl. àatàgwàzhàzhàmín) hedgehog (*Atelerix albiventris*).

átákúràk the tree *Combretum verticillatum* [H. kantakara].

áatárù (pl. áatáràrín) ridge row on farm.

àtíḃá (pl. àtíḃàḃín) (1) disliked wife. aben atíḃa, ndàa ta-w naa nyanya 'the disliked wife's food is eaten (but) with displeasure'; ká kuru ká k dadaawu, anaataakau vèrè-ngara dá yvi-naa atíḃa 'like it or not, the favorite wife has departed and left behind the disliked wife'. cf. ámâ (2), ánáatàakáu, àbá.

(2) dirty, unkempt person.

átû she, her, i.e. third person singular feminine form in Independent Pronoun paradigm (p. xxi). cf. tû, rá.

áudú (pl. áudádín)(d.f. wèdú) knife. cf. kàakàrá.

àudũ (pl. àudáfín)(? related to wèdũ) (1) grave.

(2) tribe. aud-aakshi gayi 'they belong to the same tribe'.

áunâ (pl. áunánín) ashes of millet stalks, used as a flavoring in sauce. cf. dlùgwàn; bébét.

ávén (pl. àvávín) stick for stirring mush, etc. in pot.

àvéřdámú (pl. àvéřdámámín) ebony tree (*Diospyros mispiliiformis*) [H. kanya].

àvân embers, usually used in àvân-k ákâ 'embers of fire'. cf. kwán-kwáasák.

-áw third person pronominal indirect object form substituting for íi-cí 'to him', íi-tú 'to her', íi-kshí 'to them' (see Indirect Object paradigm, p. xxi), e.g. ná taatk-aw kam-gaa 'I showed him/her/them my farm'.

áw (pl. áwáwín) generic term for millet spp. and also probably sorghum. cf. dàashà, gávérkà, mǎdíyá, mǎrdú, gèzhí; vǎrdá; zádák (1b).

áawà see wà (3)

áwái (pl. àwàwín) leaves, greens.

áawâyá (pl. áawâyáyín) (1) yellow earth used to color calabashes, etc. cf. tǎftáf.

(2) adj. yellow.

áwáyáu (pl. áwáyáyín) (1) strength. nən naa awayau 'the man is strong' [has strength]. See also bàtáu (2), dǎkáu (b), tǎtǎmáawà.

(2) authority, political power. Mai Badaayo dlam awayau řankata 'Mai B. exercised considerable power'.

(3) financial ability. da dā ama shirin hař ii nya ii awayuu gə nən 'starting from two wives up to as many as a man can support'.

áwóo yes. cf. ó'ò.

áwùk (pl. áwàwín) (1) bone.

(2) pestel. See mbàsú (1).

áayàk (pl. áayáyín) the acacia-like tree *Prosopis oblonga* [H. řirya].

áyákú (pl. áyákwàkwín) turtle. See dǎarú (2).

áayǎw (pl. áayáwàwín, áayàucín) the fig tree *Ficus gnaphalocarpa* [H. baure]. See bìyú.

áyâawá (pl. áyâawàwín) (1) grains of millet, corn, peanuts, etc. áa vǎra-n azəm, dà kaci ayaawa 'it's grass that comes up, (but) then it becomes grains'. cf. shìmpéd.

(2) units exceeding X: (a) guumuu shirin naa ayaawa "twenty plus", "a little over twenty"; zənzən zaaman waaci aaman dəbu naa ayaawa waařa bəntu 'tales of olden times from more than a thousand years which have passed';

(b) (with reference marker ʔw) units with numbers 11-99. guuma ayaa-wa-w gayi '11', guumuu kwan ayaawa-w zədu '36'. From 11-99, áyâawá-w is preferably reduced to áa (see áa (4)) in rapid speech, but from 21-99, this reduction does not take place. cf. nàa (1biii); vǎré.

áyáyí ice, hail, sleet.

áayù (pl. áayàyín) red-fronted gazelle (*Gazella rufifrons*) [H. barewa]
cf. ágářè.

àyùumà (pl. àyùumàmin, àyùumàucín) a neighbor who has much grain for
beer making and to whom you take your small amount to add to his.

àyùwà (pl. àyùwàwín) (1) adj. black. See ámbàì. cf. pélék.

(2) n. blackness. See řák.

(3) dark blue, dark green, dark skin color (as opposed to bàu, q.v.).
ii gusku kaa sau náa taare naa wunya bau, amma gafa na ba-naa aayu-
wa yaaye, nà ncu 'I am now like that I am with a light-skinned girl
[wife], but even if I get a black one (in addition), I'd like her'.

(4) darkness, used in dāa àyùwà 'darkness due to clouds, a storm,
etc.'.

àzém (pl. àzàzèmin) grass, weeds, straw. See áyāwá (1), bóonê.

ázábaj clearing farm of weeds, etc. in preparation to farming. cf. á-
díyà, kām, řáabā, rúwái; zābiyú.

àzād hard rib of dum palm leaf left after stripping away part used in
weaving.

ázhémák *Acacia seyal* [H. dushe].

B

bébét (pl. bēbábít, bēbábín) ashes. cf. áunâ.

bēbá (pl. = pl. of àfék q.v.) term of reference for the father of per-
son being spoken to. See dà (1c), dāa (1a). cf. àfék, bāabá.

bēdlāmú (pl. bēdlādāmín) hyena, probably applied mainly to the spotted
hyena (*Crocuta crocuta*) [H. kura]; as well as bēdlāmú, other hyena-
like animals mentioned were dāmbāadlègúr (q.v.) and gādāmúuzái (q.v.),
one of which is probably the striped hyena, but since the animals
themselves were not seen no certain identification can be made.

bēdlú (v.n. bēdlá) dig, dig up. káa bēdla-k tam? 'what are you digging
up?'. cf. zēdú.

bēgbék side just above hip bone and below ribs.

bēgdlà (pl. bēgdlàdín) speckled pigeon (*Columba guinea*) [H. hazbiya].

bējí (pl. bējàjín) bran.

bék id. bursting out. bēdlam maa bék! da kunu vək 'then the hyena bék!

from inside the hole'.

bèlân (pl. bèlâalâmln) (< K. bèlân 'of strong virility') (1) *adj.* beautiful, nice, good. dababkin bēlan = dababkin bèlaalamīn 'beautiful women'. cf. bù'yíř; kàarák.

(2) *n.* beauty, goodness. bēlan mbiikdā, ndāa tausa-w ii wura bai 'the beauty of a snake, one does not wrap it around the neck'.

(3) bèlân báí ugly, bad.

béikēn fool. cf. kàakáábú.

béilúus *id.* smooth, clean. akshi dà makshi riyu bēluus! 'they made the place clean and smooth bēluus!'.

bèmbédā (pl. bèmbédāln) raid, raiding, highway robbery. bàací bèmbédā 'highway robber'.

bèmbèkshí (pl. bèmbèkshāshín) buttocks. ká kurè bèmbèkshí ye, káa mbas ii dā-k bèmbèkshí 'even though you reject your buttocks, you'll (still) sit on your buttocks'. See also àaràwái (1). cf. shí.

béndégí (pl. béndégágín) (< K. béndégè < Ar.) gun.

bèntú (v.n. bèntà) (1)(a) pass by. ká bēntai wakakin gaawa 'you have passed by a lot of trees'.

(b) come up to and pass on ahead of or beyond. daaci aayu dá bēntai ii kēma-k wunya-k goomak 'then the gazelle passed on ahead of the ram's daughter'. See also vègú (1). cf. nùutú.

(2) surpass. See gádāavà (3). cf. dēkáu.

bēnú (v.n. bēnà; Subjunctive has final high tone: dá bēnyí) cook in a pot. See nāanādí. cf. bàkú (2), kàuyú.

bèřéd (v.n. of bèřdú, q.v.) prosperity [H. arzikī]. maaka-k lēman naa aajala áa nii-naa bèřéd bai 'seeking riches hurriedly will not bring prosperity'. See tluwáu. cf. fáayln, lēmān.

bèram (in locative phrases) near, next to, alongside. ndá zagēm aci aa bēram kuku dagai 'he was stabbed next to a certain baobab'.

béřbèř (pl. béřbèřāřín) (< K. bērbèr) dust.

bèřdú *v.intr.* (v.n. bēřdā; bèřéd) become prosperous. cf. bèřéd.

béří (pl. bēřárín) (1) herd (of animals). bēri-k jaunānīn 'herd of elephants'.

(2) grove (of trees). bēri-k kunamu 'a stand of fan palms'.

béřkú (< K. búrgù) complaint (in court of law). ná ji-naa bēřku-k gayim ii rii-k Maarēm Pata 'I have brought a complaint against the cat to the Lord of the Bush'.

bèřkùutú (v.n. bèřkùutà; bėřkù) complain against.

bėřtėktėk (pl. bėřtėktėkàkín) (cf. K. bėřtėtėgė, H. búrdúddúgíi)
type of large, edible frog. bee təkə kəriinakau áa yva bėřtėktėk
bai 'anything which would kill a frog would not leave a bullfrog
alone'. cf. kėřlinàkáu, kóókó.

bėřtėnú (v.n. bėřtėnà) tumble; cause to tumble. ná kard aci tėnu ná
bėřtėn aci 'when I threw him down, I made him tumble over and over';
ná řaabė aci, dá bėřcin-naa yu 'I threw him down and he tumbled over
on top of me'.

bėřzėngėlú (pl. bėřzėngėlálín) large intestine.

bėřzázán rolling around on the ground.

bėzám (pl. bėzámámín) type of large granary built of clay; bėzám is
not used by the Ngizims, who use dáatėffidók (q.v.) and gádlái (q.v.).

bėzámú v.intr. (v.n. bėzámù) become quiet. amaatuu goomak dá bzami-
naakshi

bėzhėk (pl. bėzhėzhín) rubbish heap.

bėzú (v.n. bėzà) leave (in transitive sense only). cf. ìivú, which is
more commonly used in Ngizim.

bă ? = bĩ (q.v.) only the following example was found: ndá ram ii
kwaařa maa baaci-k saafėř áa řfa ii janna; aci maa, "Naa iyu damtuu-
gu bii-n ba?" 'the donkey was told that the trader was going to en-
ter heaven; he said, "It's with me close behind, isn't it?".

bà (sometimes báya) particle used with imperatives or hortatives to ex-
press insistence; when used in a series of such expressions in a
sequence, bà normally follows the first of the series (but cf. last
example given here). à taatk aa ba! 'come on and show me!'; ná da
ba náa kai 'well let me go and see'; ai ba, zəgər, áa j(i) iyu! 'well
now, feet, get me out of this situation!'; (note the use of bà in
both parts of the following exchange) A: à ram ii kak-aaja-w dá
nai ba jàa k(i) atu, B: kakancin-kəm maa kà yì ba akshì dǎa kai kəm
A: 'tell that granddaughter of ours to come so that we might see
her', B: 'your grandparents said for you to come so that they might
see you'.

báabá (< H. báabáa) indigo.

bàabá (cf. H. bàabá, K. bàvá, Ful. baaba) term by which person refers
to or addresses his own father or an older man with whom he feels a
father-like attachment. cf. àfók, bėbá; dàadá.

bàabángám (pl. bàabángáncín) younger paternal uncle. cf. bàabá, ngàan-
gám, mìí gángám.

bábí (pl. bábábín) (1) copulation by animals.

(2) burbling noises made by billygoat pursing a nanny in heat. dá ɓanji babu /babi-w/ ii tɛka-k gazgara-geri 'he (young billygoat) began burbling next to his older sister'.

bàabíilò *n.* or *adj.* (*pl.* bàabíilàucín) bastard. baabiilo-k maayim = maayim baabiilo 'bastard lad'.

bàabú form of bàací (*q.v.*) used by speakers of the Ngwajin area.

bàací = bàabú (*masc.sg.*) one who does X; one who has X; the *fem.sg.* equivalent is mài (*q.v.*), the *pl.* is ndà (*q.v.*); this word (and the *fem.* and *pl.* equivalents mentioned) are used exactly as Hausa mài, maasú except that bàací, etc. are used in many cases where Hausa would use an agentive nominal with prefix má-; bàací, mài, and ndà are nouns and hence form an associative construction, potentially marked by a form of the linker, ké (*q.v.*), to the construction which follows them. In addition, mài and ndà are dissimilated to high tone when followed by low. baaci ruwai 'farmer', baaci gaaya ii dɛsku ii karam 'one who climbs up for chopping', baaci guzɛp 'possessor of a slave', maalɛm baaci gugza-k kɛʔa 'a teacher who teaches reading'.

bádèrà (*pl.* bádèřàíń) sorcerer.

bádáwái *n.* or *adj.* (*pl.* bádáwáwín) one who is always getting into trouble; the quality of such a person. badawii-k maayim = maayim badawai 'naughty boy'.

bádê (*pl.* bádádín) Bade person or language.

bàdìjítú (*v.n.* bàdìtá)(*< K. bàdì-jín < Ar.*) begin, begin doing. = bándú, jìbú (2).

bágâ = bákâ

bái (becomes bfi medially in an utterance by regular process affecting all -ai) (1) not, i.e. general negation marker used in all types of sentences; bái usually occurs at the end of the clause it negates except for time adverbs and purpose adverbs (see gàadà), which follow bái. ná kíidě bái 'I didn't eat (it)', kà kíidă bái 'don't eat (it)', náa kíidă-w bái 'I'm not eating it'; ná jibə kwaafā bii garvaca 'I didn't catch the donkey yesterday'; Dɛmza maazam bai 'D. is not a blacksmith'; wà naa duuka bai 'we don't have a horse'; naa mařdu bai 'there's no millet'; naa bai 'there isn't any'. cf. góo as alternative for use of bái in sentences like the last two.

(2) negative compound can be formed by using bái directly following the negated word, e.g. bə̀làn bái 'ugly, bad', kàaràk bái 'bad tasting' (see bə̀llé (2) for use in context), náa bái 'there isn't/aren't any'. These can be considered compounds in that they form unitary constructions rather than functioning as in (1) where bái is used to negate a whole sentence.

(3) bfi-n. (a) otherwise, if not. dà yka gayim nən, sai rəmau; bii-n, gayim àa daama-naa akshi bal 'when they see a cat they should run off; otherwise the cat will finish them all off'.

(b) = kóo (1) = řâ or. káa mai shimped¹ bii-n aw 'bring grain (with bran removed) or guinea corn'; dà baki jaunak vaad¹ bii-n zedu 'he roasted five or six elephants'; kwà bar aa kakkadi nà yí-du ii Na-saařa-w bii-n nàa jiba-naa Maina Aaman nà yí-naa aci ii Nasaařa-w 'give me the paper so I might take it to the European or (else) I'll seize Maina A. and take him to the European'.

(c)(preceded by noun phrase or clause) unless, except for. papiya bii-n, ngalte wuř'yi fiit aka bai 'except for a lie (i.e. unless one were lying about it), a fart never fanned a fire'; goobara bai zha bii nən, kakkadi tku dà vəra da Ngwajin bai 'except for conflagration (or) war, let this paper not leave Ngwajin'. See daaru (2). cf. sée (B) and (Claii).

[Apparently the usages cited under (3) come from 'if not' (see ʼn (Bla) for 'if'), but from the freedom with which bfi-n is now used, it seems to function as a free grammatical morpheme].

(4) bíi yè 'or else'. da kun-aakshi, nən gayi kəma-du-n, áa nii, bii ye akshi shirin cam da n-naakshi 'from among them, if one person heard, he would come, or else they both would come'. See remark at end of (3) and cf. yé (3).

bàí see bàyà

bákâ (pl. bákák|n)(?< K. bágà 'covered heap (corn, grass)') = bágâ shelter made of vertical poles with cornstaks or mats over the top [H. rumfa].

bàakà (pl. bàakàk|n) (1)(a) edge.

(b) off to the side. kaayak áa baaka áa lawan-gara 'the squirrel was off to the side watching her'. See gwaafú.

(2)(in locative phrases) beside, alongside. mangiituu-ci dá bami-naakshi ii baaka-k devu 'your friends should hide alongside the road'. cf. báatâ.

báktâ (pl. báktát|n) unpatterned white cloth.

bàktú (v.n. báktà; bàkát) winnow coarse flour (daayí) from fine (áptâ) or from bran (bêjí) using a "faifai" (débâ) or strainer (ráaríyá). cf. tlàrlyú.

bàkú (v.n. bákà) (1) burn, burn up. See jìbú (1e), kálâu.

(2) roast over fire, grill. cf. bènú, kàuyú, débú (b).

bàkwatú v.intr. (v.n. bàkwatù) charge off, set out with great force. See búřùk.

bál = cákcák = cáam = déřús = mák (These words are all equivalent as far as can be determined; bál is the most frequently occurring in texts and hence the best documented; general remarks applied to bál are applicable to the other words as well, insofar as they are equivalent; consult those words for further examples.) Essentially, bál means 'all', but it is syntactically quite different from the English

word. It can be used both pronominally and as an attributive modifier on a noun phrase (but cf. NB below for remarks on syntactic categorization). In the latter function, it can be used as a *restrictive modifier* (see (1a, b)), much like English 'all (of)', or it can be used as a *resumptive modifier* (see (3)). In the latter usage it has an oppositive rather than restrictive function. In both restrictive and resumptive functions, *bál* (and the equivalent words) always come at the end of the noun phrase with which they are associated. The *pronominal* usages reflect these attributive uses. Corresponding to the restrictive use, *bál* can replace a more fully specified noun phrase (see (2)). Corresponding to the resumptive use, it can be used to "summarize" that which is being referred to (see (4)). In this case, the syntactic function of *bál* is not always clear, i.e. it does not always fill a clearly defined position such as subject or object, but rather it forms a sort of *point d'appui* for whatever phrase it is associated with. [NB: While *bál*, etc. are generally associated with noun phrases, they syntactically more closely approximate adverbs than they do other quantifying words like numerals. This is particularly evident in examples like those in (4) and (5), but note the translation of the example in (1b). More interestingly note the fact that while *bál* in the example of (2) may be translated as a direct object in English, it is not the syntactic direct object of the verb. If it were, the verb form would have to be *gən-naa*, i.e. the pre-object form (cf. *-náa* (2)). The sentence in (2) would be more strictly translated 'they beat me and took it completely'.]

(1)(as a restrictive modifier following noun) (a) all, all of. *kaa-yak dáa ngwi-naa tluwii-gu bal* 'the squirrel took out all the meat'. See also *ngwǎu* (3), *jǎptú*.

(b) whole, entire. *dá maaki gadək'yik gaawa dá lubuuci ii tēka-gara bal* 'she sought a lot of balsam apple plant and tied it all over her body'.

(2) everything, everyone, all of it, all of them. *dá gub'y iyu dá gən-du bal* 'they beat me and took all of it'. (cf. NB above)

(3)(when used at the end of a noun phrase) emphasizes unity of the preceding, e.g. that all the preceding will be affected or will act as a unit. *am naa dēm bal áa nii-du-n aci* 'both water and wood he himself was bringing'; *kaayak naa tluwii-gu bal áa vək* 'the squirrel and the meat are both together in the hole'. See also *gàtkáu*, *dá-diègà*, *bái* (3a), *yí* (1).

(4)(followed by a phrase, X) entirely X, completely characterized by the property expressed in X. *gadlǐi-gu, kunu-w bal agwai* 'the granary, inside (it was) full of eggs'; *áa ki miya-gaa bal dēdēm naa ankwak* 'look at my mouth, all full of blood and pus'; *anyi-k wuri gayi naa kə baano, bal aarawii-gu gayi* 'milk for a cowrie and for a hundred cowries all have the same whiteness'. [NB: In examples like the last two, the noun phrase referred to by *bál* is present, but in the examples in (4) *bál* seems to "look toward" what follows it, while in the examples in (3), which are similar to those in (4), *bál* seems to "look back" to that which precedes it.] See *dəbú* (a).

(5)(after negative) at all. See *cám* for example.

bàllé (? < K. or H. bàllé) = bàré (q.v. for further examples) conjunction expressing implicational relationship between two events, i.e. if one event has taken place, the other certainly has (or negatively, if one event has not taken place, neither has the other); sentences using bàllé (or bàré) always have the form "full sentence + bàllé + implied phrase"; the implied phrase may be a full sentence (two different types of events are contrasted), a noun phrase (the type of event is the same on both sides of bàllé, but the subject, object, etc. of the first event differs from that of the implied event), a nominalized verb (the actants of the two events are the same, but the action is different), and possibly other types of phrases. Examples here are divided into affirmative, (1), and negative, (2), on the basis of the English glosses, but the basic meaning of implicational relation is the same in all cases. Full sentences following bàllé are in the Subjunctive.

(1)(sentence preceding bàllé is affirmative) let alone (if), how much more (if). wiill, ndá bar ii-ci naa zhirau balle ndá daptə-d ii-ci 'beseeching, if one gives to you there's embarrassment, let alone if one refuses you'; shiidaw ngum àa dagamu balle baaci-k zəgər shirin 'a millipede falls down how much more a two-footer'. See also dāa (2).

(2)(sentence preceding bàllé is negative) let alone (that), how much less (that). zha áa nii ii damtau naa Ngwajin bai balle dá nai ii Ngwajin 'war wasn't coming close to Ngwajin let alone that it come to Ngwajin'; manda kaarak dlam sa bai balle kaarak bai 'good salt can't be drunk how much less bad'. See jíbú (1e), mègənyí (2).

bàamá (pl. bàamámín) gambling.

bámú v.intr. (v.n. bàmú; Subjunctive dá bàmú) hide, conceal oneself for any purpose (refuge, secrecy, etc.). See ábú, vèdà for examples. cf. dèbsú, ábú.

bàná (v.n. of bànúwú, q.v.) vomit, vomiting.

báaná (< K. báná-jìn) aid. bee waaŋa à nci baana 'the things he wanted help with'. cf. bàanàatú.

bàanàatú (v.n. bàanàatà; báaná)(< K. báná-jìn) help. gayim àa baanaa-ta-gəri 'the cat was helping him'. cf. tàmbáú (2), tàimàkàtú.

bángái (pl. bángágín)(cf. K. bungwoi 'black dog-faced baboon') anubis baboon (*Papio anubis*) [H. gwaggo].

báanô (pl. báanánín) a measure of money of about 500 cowries.

bànúwú (v.n. bánúwà; bàná) vomit, vomit up. á banwee-d aa 'vomit it (meat) up to me'.

báar(è)mè (pl. báar(è)mámín, báar(è)mèwcín)(< K.--cf. bàrà 'hunting') weapon.

bárá (< K. bàrà 'hunt') hunting. cf. bàrú.

bárákáu (pl. bárákákín) Ngizim festival held after crops are planted to assure a good harvest; there is a ceremony involving libations with beer and water, the cooking of a chicken without cutting it up, and the recitation of the names of ancestors; the bárákáu is considered the main Ngizim festival of the year.

bàràmbádcám *id.* sound of a large drum. náa bee-naa bee kaa gwabo ii miya-k shaab-aanai bařambadcam 'I've got a thing like a big gourd on my backside "boomity-boom"'. cf. dlèřàntém, táatáréngúdá.

bàřbàří (pl. bàřbàřàřín) gruel [H. kunu] flavored with the desert date ákda.

bárdé (pl. bárdádín) (< K. or H. bárdée) leader of a chief's cavalry.

bàré (? < H.) = bàllé (q.v. for general remarks) let alone (that), how much more (that), how much less (that). mētu ngum, ndaa mētu bare dēgadu 'death, people die how much more go lame'; dāa ngum áa tīai bare rama 'a town changes let alone one's words' [cf. Richard Nixon]; wā mbasu goo gamdaya bare dlama-k tīari 'we have settled without arguing much less fighting'; naa nēn waařa áa nīi dāa kī ama-gaa bai bare áa ram maa à nci atu 'there is no one who will come and see my wife let alone say he loves her'. See tīáu (lc).

bàřèemá (< K. bàrémá 'farmer') = dàgwànjí hired farm laborer.

bàří (pl. bàřàřín) domestic pigeon [H. tantabare].

bářkà (< K. bářgà or H. bářkàa < Ar.) blessing. àa bařk-aaci-n (said to a superior before making a request, etc.) 'with your blessing'. See also last ex. with dàmbà.

bàřkàwàatú (v.n. bàřkàwàatà) (< K. bàřgà-jīn) (1) bless. Səku dà bař-kawaata kəm 'may God bless you'.

(2) congratulate.

bàřú (v.n. báří) (1) v.tr. give. ná bar ii-ci dagwda 'I gave him money'; bari-k basa 'a loan'.

(2) v.intr. head toward, set out in the direction of. nda-k tīayi səkuř da Gogaram-gu dá barai ii dəkəma 'those who first left from Gogaram set out to the west'.

bàřú (v.n. bářà) hunt.

básà (pl. básásín) a loan. mà básà-k X 'he borrowed X'; bàré básà-k X 'he lent X'. See gàadà (ld). cf. sàařù.

báatâ used in tá báatâ ... 'to lurk nearby, to follow secretly'. iyu náa jiba-k raakan da kunu-k pata náa ta-k baat-aakun 'I will travel along in the bush, trailing you'; à tu baata-gəri naa ankaí káa kī bee aci dlama-w 'carefully sneak along by him and see what he's doing'. cf. bàakà.

bàatàrà (pl. bàatàràrín) strong spices, e.g. hot pepper, ginger.

bàtáú (v.n. báčí)(usually takes Totality Extension, -náa, -dù)

(1) reach, attain. zəgər-cí àa baci duwal bíi-n, à kaishì dāa n dà yì kàikal 'if your foot doesn't reach the stirrup, tie it up so that it is just right'. cf. zàdáu.

(2) be equal to. kuku maarem yaaye, bata məshən ii awayuu bai 'even though the baobab is big, it doesn't equal the tamarind in strength'. cf. dəkáu.

(3) suffice, be enough for. samana-w bata-naa kəm bi? 'is that enough conversation for you?;. See also kàyà, tàmtlú.

(4) be a real X. nən kwan dlam rama tla da dā-w bíi-n, nda-w bata-naa ndiwa 'if three men say something and (they all) stick by it, those men are real men'; garva-tku bata-naa garva 'that was a real chieftainship'. See also báram, ngúdì (2a).

(5) ? dare to. ndá bata ndà ram bai: gadaaguri-k wunduwa-k Baawiya 'one doesn't dare say it: (there's) syphilis at Bawiya's house' (q.v. Báawlyá).

bátó! id. bang! dá kəkəm səsau tku batol! dá vərə-ngəri 'he hit the (roof of) the hut bang! and came on out'.

bàatú (v.n. báatà) lick. cf. pàatkú.

báu (v.n. bàyí, becomes bìyúu when used in Imperfective with unexpressed object, bíi before object; Imperative áa bí or áa bì; Subjunctive dāa bí)

(1) receive, get, obtain, be recipient of (implication is that subject is passive recipient or gets thing through circumstances he does not wholly control). Mai Bundi, ká ba-naa lařdi-k Ngəzəm ii kəci 'Mai Bundi, you get the region of the Ngizims for your own'; "buwa ba-naa ja," juwak iika-naa ndāa kakar gəma-k tla '"travel has come to us," the fly sees that one is carrying off the cow's haunch'; ba kəm nən tam? 'what's the matter with you?'. See also tənnyí (2). cf. gənú.

(2)(with sháu 'shit' as object) defecate. ná ba shau 'I defecated'; shuu-k dəmaakənəm, ndāa biyuu ii madbak 'shitting at night, one does it in the "alley"' (as opposed to the bush).

(3)(with embedded sentence in Subjunctive) get to, manage to. ndá pa am ii gaaza-n, kəraagəmak dāa bí dà shi 'when one pours out water for the chicken, the lizard gets to drink'. See karmú, sée (Claii).

báu adj. (pl. bùwàwín)(becomes bùu medial in a phrase by general rule)

(1) red. See dà (2a). cf. cít, 'yíř.

(2)(with reference to light-colored skin of African—cf. àayùwà (3)—or color of European, Arab, etc.) "white", with light pigmentation. buu-k nasaařa '"white" European'. See àayùwà (3). cf. àarà-wáí (1) for reference to skin artificially whitened.

Báawlyá general name to refer to someone important. See bàtáú (5).

báyà (used alone or at the end of the clause of which it is part)

(1)(with initial clause in sentence and followed by a counterfactual clause (cf. dàa))(a)(with clause) "if it weren't for the fact that". gaadà-k kwáa yv-aaja bai baya, daa náa zəba-naa kəm 'if it weren't for the fact that you don't leave us alone, I would marry you'. cf. gaadà (1d).

(b)(alone) "if it weren't for, if it hadn't been for that". baya, daa jà naa bai 'if it hadn't been for that, we would be dead'.

(2)(with second clause in sentence) "it's just that", "if it weren't for", "if it hadn't been that". məsta bədlamu tətəa bai, nambo ku-təf baya 'turning into a hyena isn't hard if it weren't for the lack of a tail'; aa dəvu ngum ná tasə-ngaa gaadà-k lawan-ci, ná rama ii-ci bai baya 'on the road I was aroused at seeing you, it's just that I didn't tell you'.

(3) = bà (q.v.).

bàyà (pl. bàyàíń) thing. Phonologically, the following variants are found: báyà, bée, bìi, bìyú (see each of these for additional information). In the light of the normal phonological processes of Ngizim, the ee of bée should be the result of a blending a + y; moreover, bìi and bìyú should derive from a form *bài (cf. other monosyllabic nouns such as mại which have conditioned variants mii, miiyú, etc.). However, no form *[bay] to which either bée or bìi could be related is ever heard phonetically. These four forms for 'thing' can be roughly grouped with báyà and bée together on the one hand and bìi and bìyú on the other. Though there is some overlap in function, the following generalization can be made: báyà/bée are used when the "thing" itself is the focus, i.e. even where the substance or affair referred to has a modifier, that modifier is secondary to and only delimits báyà/bée; bìi/bìyú are used in a more figurative or abstract sense and generally *depend on* context or on attached modifiers for their interpretation (as a result, the vast majority of cases involve bìi + noun phrase in an associative construction). Báyà is always used in an indefinite sense to mean 'something' and is never further modified. ná dee da kuu wunduwa-n, ná vəkai baya 'when I come from behind the house, I'll throw something'; aci masə baya nən, dà yi-du ii lařdi đagai dá đəbdai 'when he bought something, he would take it to another area and sell it'. Báyà seems to always be optionally reducible to bée (q.v.) in rapid speech, even when used in sentences such as those given here. See pářák.

bàí (v.n. of bǎu, q.v.) a find, something found or gotten. See fátà-wànké

bàayí (pl. bàayàíń) boy living as part of a household but not a member of the family [H. bara]. baayi kaa kəraagemak is epithet of bàayí since he is tolerated around the house like a lizard. cf. zədái (1).

bàzàřtú (v.n. bàzàřtà; bàzàřà)(? < K.) treat contemptuously, harshly, unjustly.

bàazhí (pl. bàazhàzhíń) (1) belly (external area of body as opposed to

the internal organ). kaŋgun waaŋa ɗagai sa tɛnu ɗagai zuwa ii baa-zhi-geri-n, áa wna aa mazgai 'the medicine which one drinks, if another rubs it on his belly, he'll spend the night in heaven'. See ráú (1). cf. kúnú, máɗáú, tumbí, ànyáɗ.

(2)(a) beer dross, removed the second day of the beer-making process.

(b) the second day of beer-making. cf. dàabèkà, màtàngîzhá, sémá.

bàzìyú (v.n. bàzìyà) spray water from mouth, e.g. to moisten palm leaves for weaving, etc. cf. pùurú.

bàazú (v.n. báazà) sweep along ground (as curtain, gown, etc.); drag on ground. kaacum-gu áa baaza-k ɗaa 'their cloaks were dragging along the ground'. cf. bàagú, zàrú.

bèe (See bàyà for general remarks on the related forms bàyà, bìi, bìyú)

thing; something, nothing. Bèe is the phonologically reduced form of bàyà (q.v.); it is optionally used in place of bàyà in any environment where the latter may appear; further, it is always the form used when some attributive modifier (relative clause, adjective, etc.) occurs with it; although bèe can be used when referring to a definite referent (see examples under (2) below), it is never used when directly modified by the previous reference determiner -gú (bìyú is used in such contexts). The following uses of bèe can be distinguished (these are not really different meanings but follow from the single meaning 'thing'):

(1)(a)(used alone, without a definite referent) (i) something (= bàyà). aci à nci bee aa kunu-k ɗaa 'he wants something in town'.

(ii)(in negative sentence) nothing; anything. aci ijka bee bai 'he didn't see anything'; lakwtu kwá yka bɗlamu áa kiɗa-k bee nɛn, kwáa v(i) atu gaada dà kiɗa bee bai 'whenever you see the hyena is going to eat something, sting her so that she won't eat anything'.

(b)(without a definite referent, but with attributive modifier) (i) something (that), what(ever). á dlamina bee waaŋa kwáa dlama-w 'do whatever you are going to do'; aci bee bee belan nɛn, kaa tluwai ... 'whenever he got something nice, like meat ...'.

(ii)(in negative contexts) nothing (that), what. naa bee waaŋa ɗaa b(i) akshi da rií nd-aaja bai 'there's nothing that will happen to them from our people'; aci zega bee waaŋa atu áa kunu-w bai 'he did not know what she was up to'.

(2)(a) used alone with definite referent, usually replaced by bìyú or bìi + demonstrative, but the following example was found, where bèe seems to be definite but has no demonstrative element present: bee ii naa dabaŋ-gaa '(as for) the affair, I have my own plans'.

(b)(with attributive modifier) the thing (that), what. manga, nàa kalau naa bee waaŋa áa d-aaci tku 'my friend, I'm afraid of the thing that is on your head'; tiye áa japta-k bee waaŋa Canduwa dlamu naa maapendaawad shirin tku 'everyone was amazed at what Canduwa did to those two young men'.

béezà (pl. béezàzín)(borrowed < ?) white, granular salt. cf. mándá.

bĩ ? = bǎ (q.v.) word used at the end of questions, usually to indicate surprise, anxiety, or expectation of an affirmative answer. *kà nci bí?* 'you want it, do you?'; *ja áa yuwan bí?* 'is the dog sleeping?!'. See áton (2), áarám. cf. dà (3), ře.

bì, bĩ see bǎu

bíi (1) see báí.

(2) = bíi (q.v.) when in associative construction before a low tone.

bìi (see bàyà for general remarks on the related forms bàyà, bèe, bìyú)

(1) thing of, thing for, thing to be used for, the wherewithal for. *bíi-k tà* 'food', *bíi-k ajap* 'an amazing thing', *bíi-k vèjì* "bed-spread" [thing for lying]. See gùzàpèná, kànjfinò, lémfís.

(2) substance, thing, etc. found in or associated with. *wà baka bíi-k kunu* 'let's roast the innards'; *dá dlamai bíi kun-aakshi dá nai* 'they did what they felt like [they did the thing of their inside] and came'; *bíi-k pata* 'wild animals'.

(3) affair, matter, that which one has done. *bíi-kun tku, ai, zhi-rau ne* 'they way you acted, well, it's shameful'; *iika biyu kaarak bai tēnu, dà tli dà gaayi* 'when they saw things weren't going well, they mounted up'; *naa ja bíi-ci tēnu! ngalte aben dlam rama bí?* 'what foolishness [with your things]! has food ever talked?'; *suu bíi-cu* 'what kind of talk is that? [this your thing]'; *bíi gusku bai* translated by H. tun dāzu, lit. 'it's not a thing of today'. See kànjfinò.

(4) property, possession, that which belongs to (the particular possession indicated usually depends on context—cf. examples). *bíi-ci jí íi daraga-gəri-n* see *naa sēfa bíi nēn, àa bar íi-ci bai* 'if your thing (i.e. your animals) strays into his enclosure, unless you supplicate him, he won't give it back to you'; *ká bee bíi-ci tku da ran?* 'where did you get your "goodies" (preceding context indicates meat) from?'.
(5)(a) *bíi* + quantified noun: 'about'. *bíi-k tēřa kwan* 'about 3 months'.

(b) 'a little, a few'. *nà nci dlama-d íi-wa bíi-k rama* 'I want to have a few words with you [lit: with us (incl.)]'.
(6) used as a sort of verb complement with a possessive pronoun having the same features for person as the subject of the verb, *bíi* gives a sense of doing the action with finality, assuredness, fixedness, etc. (cf. Abraham's Hausa entry for *àbù* (7)). *é jí bíi-kēm* 'go on your way'; *wà nawa bíi-wa* 'let's just stay the day here'; *á dlabi-naa bíi-kun naa mēs-aakēm* 'just sit tight with your husband'. cf. *dlàbáu* (laii).

bìi see bǎu

bìidâl (? < K.) male donkey. cf. kwáarā.

bíigèlà (pl. bíigèlàlín) (< K. bígélá 'harvest time') harvest season, the "little hot season" following rains. cf. *dèmán, tìlèràmù*.

bíi-k tà food, anything to eat (see bíi (1)). cf. ábên.

bíi-n see báí (3b)

bíitèl(à)mân (pl. bíitèl(à)mámín)(< ? K. < Ar.) emirate treasury.

bìyú (1) the thing (in question). See bàyà, bíi.

(2) see bǎu.

bóonê (pl. bóonán|n)(< Ful.) trouble, difficulty, hardness (of work, etc.). nən sa am naa azəm nən, àa tək vɛdau naa boone 'if someone drinks water with grass in it, he will urinate (only) with difficulty'; ndà taatka ii-ci boone 'he should be given trouble' [one should show him bóonê]. cf. ngónépù, kàbífinè, kúdèrà, tótàa (2).

bùu see bàu

búucí (pl. búucác|n)(? < K. bǎjì) mat [H. tabarma] plaited (tèkú) from strips of palm fronds (usually of the dum palm). cf. gádîá, díáa-ráu, mádámá.

bùdòngàrà (pl. bùdòngàràrín)(< Karekare bùdò 'monkey' + ngàrà '?')
vervet monkey (*Cercopithecus aethiops*) [H. Kírka].

bùufú (pl. bùufáfín)(< H. bùhúu) = kwàtánkó large bag.

búugè (pl. búugàgín)(probably < K.) quilt-armor for horse. See kèmán-gàř. cf. kúmaakúmí, sùlgé.

bùukú (v.n. bùukà) (1) lack, be without, fail to find. ama mii nakwa-na áa buuka-k mäsək bai 'a loyal woman will not lack a husband'; dá buuki-naa rii waařa akshi dáa bi am dà shi 'they failed to find a place where they could get water to drink'. See also gátéř (2).

(2)(with nominalized sentential complement) fail to. baaci-k nyaw áa buuka píima bai 'a slanderer will not fail to be looking over his shoulder'. cf. bédámú (3).

bùkwàad id. with force. kaayak vɛree bukwaad 'the squirrel broke out with great force'.

bùř id. thump! ndá mbashi ii dadag bədlamu buř-buř-buř! 'they set to beating the hyena thump-thump-thump!'.

bùwà traveling, a trip. See kàkèrú. cf. ràakán.

bù'yíř id. used w. bəlân 'good, nice'. bəlân bù'yíř 'very nice'.

B

Ḃədàmú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* **Ḃədàmù**) (1) behave rebelliously (toward). *maayim Ḃədame-ngəri* 'the boy behaved rebelliously'; *kwaafa Ḃədame-ngəri ii iyu* 'the donkey behaved rebelliously toward me'. cf. *ndòrǒ*.

(2) (used with nominalized verbal complement where subject of **Ḃədàmú** is semantic object of complement verb) be impossible to, not be able to be. *kaḡgun Ḃədame-ngara ii sa-n, áa Ḃadam ii vanga bai* '(even) if medicine is impossible to drink, it is not impossible to be thrown out'.

(3) (used with nominalized verbal complement where subject of **Ḃədàmú** is semantic subject of complement verb) fall short in, not be able to, fail to. *ká Ḃadame ii jiba bil-n, kà Ḃadama ii zara bai* 'if you don't fail to catch (game animal), don't fail to pull (it home)'. cf. *bùukú* (2).

Ḃədú (*v.n.* **Ḃədà**) pinch, pinch off a bit, break off a bit. cf. *màadú*, *màdú*, *zhìibú*, *fìncèkú*.

Ḃègì the acacia-like shrub *Dichrostachys nutans* [H. *ḡundú*].

Ḃègú (*v.n.* **Ḃègà**) braid together two strands of rope which have already been braided as in *nèmú* (3) or *tèrmú*.

Ḃérák *id.* pop! *atu zuw ii miya gwabo ngum, gwabo dá vègi Ḃerak!* 'when she wiped (it) on the opening of the gourd, the gourd fell off with a pop'.

Ḃèrdú (*v.n.* **Ḃèrdà**; **Ḃèrét**) break off several, cut off in pieces, drop off (several). *aikwak aguḡdaadamak Ḃèrdè-ngara* 'the fingers of the leper have dropped off'; *ná Ḃèrdè tluwai* 'I cut off (pieces of) meat'. cf. *dàrtlú*, *dièrdú*, *gèdú*.

Ḃèřem *id.* sprawled out. *Ḃedlam áa dèmuu 'yuwa-w bai, dá vèji Ḃèřem maa aci mètè-ngəri* 'the hyena wasn't able to pull it off and he fell down all sprawled out saying he was about to die'.

Ḃèrú (*v.n.* **Ḃèrà**) (1) *v.tr.* separate a unitary thing into parts. *Ḃeru vèda aa Ngwajin* 'he separated out wards at Ngwajin', i.e. divided Ngwajin into wards; *dá Ḃeri kaa kè ndáa Ḃera-k ciizemi* 'he cut apart (the baobab fruit) as one cuts apart a henna gourd'; *dá Ḃer-du shi-rin* 'he separated it into two'. See also *gáadéří*. cf. *tàtḂú*, *řèe-tú*.

(2) *v.intr.* divide up as in (1). *akshi dá Ḃèrè-naakshi wunduwa kwan* 'they divided up into three clans'. cf. *wàayú*.

ḂàḂèrú (*v.n.* **ḂàḂèrà**; **ḂàḂár**) peel off (peeling, shell, etc.); become peeled off. cf. **Ḃèrú**.

ḂàḂét (*pl.* **ḂàḂètàtín**, **ḂàḂètàucín**) flea.

ḡàḡtíú (v.n. ḡàḡtíà; ḡàḡátí) hatch out of egg. ḡàazá ḡàḡtíá-náa ḡwái 'the chicken hatched out of the egg'.

ḡákúmák (pl. ḡákúmámín) tweezers. See ḡàýí (3c), sákà.

ḡâm point of jaw below ear.

ḡaaná (pl. ḡaanàní) accident, disaster.

ḡàndú (v.n. ḡàndà) = bàdìitú = jìbú (2)

(a) begin, start. daaci kunamu dá ḡanji niyi ii dèḡaa 'then the fan palm began bending downward'. See dàḡtíú, ḡéshí (2b), kácáu.

(b) be the first one to do. See hái (b). cf. cìḡú (1a).

(c) do first. náa ḡanda-k bíi-k ḡaa tawan? 'which town will I find first?'. cf. káwàí.

ḡáram = jáḡ mere. ja-k víida ḡaram ye bata-naa tluwii bí?! 'mere things like hares, are they really meat?!'. cf. káwàí.

ḡátíà (pl. ḡátíátíín) fermented guinea-corn used for beer.

ḡíyú, ḡíyáú (v.n. ḡíyà)(usually used with kúnú as object) gut an animal by slitting open its stomach. ndàa ta-k ayaw nən, ndàa ḡíya-k kunu-w bai 'when one eats a fig, one doesn't remove the insides', i.e. leave well enough alone. dà ziiji dá pci dà vaviyi dá ḡíyi kunu-w, naa zəḡer-gu naa adà-w cam, ndàa wda-w bai 'they slaughter it (chicken), pluck it, singe it, gut it, (but it's left) complete with feet and head, they aren't cut off'. cf. dīḡdú.

ḡúrmùwà (pl. ḡúrmùwàwín) type of wild yam.

ḡúruk id. at a run. dá jibə víida dá bakwaci ḡuruk tap-tap-tap fak naa ny-aakshi 'he caught the rabbit and charged off at a run tap-tap-tap far off going away'.

C

cə- if not found here, see cí-.

cəckú (v.n. cəckà) filter, strain. ná cəcka səma 'I strained the beer'.

cəktiàtlànú (v.n. cəktiàtlàné; cəktiàtlán) dabble in one's food without eating it.

cāa (< K. cā 'past time; at first') = cāamān and is more frequently used in this longer form; see cāamān for explanation, glosses, and more examples. caa akshi tuumaatə nii da Ngwajin 'they had previously planned to come from Ngwajin'.

cáacá (pl. cáacácín) shallow well dug in watercourse. See vègú (2).
cf. dúwá.

càacáawà (pl. càacáawáwín) twigs for fire, kindling. cf. dèm.

càcpú (v.n. càcpà) = càptú (q.v.) collect, gather. á cacpi maamau
'gather the children'; dá cacpi ja-k ciita afo naa ciita gajavəř
'he collected things like the spices c.a. and c.g.'. cf. nèbku.

càd' east.

cádák id. very sour. subana, bii tku cadak 'oh my, this thing is very
sour'. cf. còmcom, zhòomú.

càakáu (v.n. cáaká)(? < K. ságá-jìn) weave cloth. cf. gàunú, nèmú (4),
tèkú (5).

cákcák = bál = cám = déřús = mák "all". See bál for general remarks
and examples.

càaktlú (v.n. cáaktlà; càkátl) do small job quickly. já caaktlee-du
'we did it quickly and easily'.

càkwú (v.n. cákwà; càkwá) peck (hen, woodpecker, etc.).

cál id. yaanau dá vəri ii tēka aadia-k daakuya-w cal 'teeth popped out
all over the chest of the deaf person cal'.

càlám v.n. of cålímú (q.v.). See also âm (2).

cålímú (v.n. cålímà; cålám) (1) stir flour, etc. into water (water is the
direct object and the thing stirred in is the "instrument"). apta-w
jigap dá yvi gaada-k calma-k am 'some flour he left aside to mix
with water'; akshi aa calma-du am 'they mix water with it'. cf.
tàmtlú (2), zàpènú, tunkúdu; ám cålám. See âm (2).

cám = bál = cákcák = déřús = mák "all". See bál for general remarks
and further examples. cam kun 'all of them have been you' (said to
a squirrel who has been impersonating different characters)(cf. bál
(2)); akshi shirin cam dá n-naakshi 'both of them would come' (cf.
bál (3)), see also ñiyú; ná zēga bai cam 'I don't know at all' (cf.
bál (5)).

cáamân (< K. câ mân 'long ago, before, previously') = cãa (q.v.)(Usually
introducing a sentence) indicates that the event or state of affairs
which it introduces was or has been established prior to the contex-
tual situation, but often the implication is that that state of af-
fairs has now been changed or superceded some way; possible English
translations are:

(1) 'it has long been the case that', 'it was the case that', 'it is
well-known that', 'it was previously planned that'. caaman nà ncu
wà dlam tapai, nambo bii-kom baya 'before, I had wanted for us to
fornicate, it was just the failure to get ahold of you'; caaman nà
ncu dluḡun-gē garvaucin-gu 'I had wanted the names of those chiefs';

caaman ná dee ii zhaagəm bai 'I didn't really come to go to the toilet'; caaman jiiŋeewa zaniil-k jəjəm 'a well-known proverb states that truth is a gown of thorns'.

(2) already. daga tku lint aci ngum, daa dagamə-ngəri caaman gamtak 'had that arrow touched him, he would have fallen down already dead'.

càndùwà *adj.* (*pl.* càndùwàwín) beautiful.

càpàrí cheerful disposition.

cáppà (< Ful. cappa 'allegiance') alliance, ones' allies, a group. tí-ye naa cappa-gəri dambasu 'everybody and his followers were seated'.

càptú (*v.n.* cáptà, but no form *càpát)(? < Ful. cappa 'allegiance') = càcpú collect, gather, assemble. à capci gwadanu 'collect the peanuts'; ndaawa captə-naakshi gaawa 'people gathered in great numbers'; am áa capta ii riyu 'water collects there'. cf. hàdàatú, nèbku.

càapú, càapáu (*v.n.* cáapí, cáapà) (1) massage body using hot water.

(2) squeeze out (orange juice, peanut oil, etc.).

(3) press down to reduce bulk. cf. màadú, màdfú.

cí- if not found here, see cə-

cí see táu

cí him, i.e. third person singular masculine pronoun form used in Indirect Object Pronoun paradigm (see p. xxi), where it is always used in the construction íi-cí. cf. ácí, rí.

cì you (*m.sg.*), i.e. second person singular masculine pronoun used as:

(1) Independent Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxi).

(2) Indirect Object Pronoun (p. xxi).

(3) Bound Suffix Pronoun (p. xxii), where it is in the construction -áacì when added to a form ending in one of the vowels -a, -i, -u, but -cì otherwise.

(4) Independent Associative Pronoun (p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kéci. cf. ka.

cìbú (*v.n.* cìbà) (1)(a) be first one to do. duwa tku cìbə-n waane 'it was so-and-so who began (the digging of) this well'. cf. bándú (b).

(b) have ever done, have ever happened. cìbu aa rawan kaa sau, ama dà kii'yi məsə-gara? 'where has it ever been like that, that a wife eats her husband?'

(c) get something started, esp. ugly rumors, etc. bee waaŋa waane cìb aa ii adà-gaanai 'the thing that so-and-so started against me'.

(2) take something without asking the owner's permission.

cìcì worn out mat, bed, e.g. cìcì búucì/gádlâ/rákâi/mádâmbá.

cìdî (pl. cìdîdîŋ) large cricket which digs a hole in the ground and makes a high-pitched buzz [H. gyare].

cíkēp id. hard. gaudāk cíkēp 'hard as a rock'.

cíkāas n. or adj. (used as adjective, cannot precede noun) tender, tenderness (of meat).

cìkàatú (v.n. cìkàatà)(< H. cíkà; cìká) fill; become full, become complete. aaman cikaatē-ngara 'the year is over'. cf. nìyú (1).

cìkdú (v.n. cìkdā; cìkéd) (1) pick out, separate out from mass or group, pluck out one by one, e.g. peanuts from peanut vines after harvesting. à cìk'yi gwadanu da kunu-k riiduwa 'pick the peanuts from out of the beans' (peanuts and beans having been mixed together).

(2) select, elect, choose. dabaku-n, see waaŋa kà ncu, kà cìk'yi 'as for girls, just the one you want, you choose her'; ndaawa waaŋa àa cìkdā-k Mai 'the people who choose the Mai'. cf. màngàŋtú.

cìktlāaa id. well-adorned. sii tai dambasu naa kaŋee-gəri cìktlāaa 'there he is seated in his fancy clothes'; náa vərayi nən, ná vərai cìktlāaa 'when I come out, I'll come out all dolled up'.

cìkúlét-cìkúlét id. sound of guinea-fowl.

cìlāaŋú (v.n. cìlāaŋà)(borrowed < ?) enrich, become enriched.

cìmú (v.n. cìmà) (1)(a) close; cover (pot, etc.). cf. rəpú.

(b)(with àashēŋ as object) keep a secret. á cimiina aashēŋ-gaa 'keep my secret' (verb form is plural imperative with ventive extension).

(2) overturn.

cìřándú (v.n. cìřàndà) (a) wait until one is tired of waiting. cìřanda naa bai zama-n atu 'not having to wait too long, that's luck (in hunting)'.

(b) waane cìřande-ngəri 'so-and-so died'.

cìřdú (v.n. cìřdā; cìřéd) squirt out in thin stream, spurt out. dá cìř'yi cìřeed 'he spit it out in a long stream'.

cìřeed id. in a stream. See cìřdú.

cìřòomà (< K.) an official position, held by son of a chief in line to succeed him.

cít id. used with bàu 'red'. bàu cít 'bright red'. cf. 'yíř.

cìitá = shìitá (q.v.)

cìizēmí (pl. cìizēmámín) long gourd shaped like a zùngùŋú (q.v.), but

larger, in which things like charms, articles of clothing, etc. are kept. cf. ádíyú.

còmcom id. sour. bìi tkú dlàn-ngàrà còmcom 'this thing is sour'. cf. cádáak; zhoomú.

cùntú (v.n. cùntà) wash repeatedly. káa cunta kaŕee-ci bi? 'are you washing your clothes?'. cf. vîyú, kùtú.

cùwìitú (v.n. cùwìità)(? < K. shìwòl-jîn 'trouble') = dàamèetú annoy, bother, trouble. zha ye cuwìitè-naa laŕdi 'war too was troubling the district'. cf. ngèhèptú.

D

dèbès thickness, viscosity. zhabuwa tku naa dèbès 'this honey is thick'. cf. gèdèbès.

débâ (pl. débábín) round mat for covering water pot, for winnowing as in bàktú, etc. [H. faifai].

dèbábâ (pl. dèbábáucín) type of hair-do worn by Kanuri women [H. tau-ra]. zaabanu naa pampeeri-n, zèmanu naa dèbaaba 'if the guinea-fowl has the pampeeri hairdo, the ostrich has the dèbaaba'.

dèbàyú (v.n. dèbàyù) (1) v.intr. become fat.

(2)(with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) fatten, cause to get fat.

dèbínò (pl. dèbínànín)(< K. dìvínò) dates; date palm (*Phoenix dactylifera*). See vègú (1).

débú (< K. dévú) one thousand. dèbu naa gayi '1001'. dèbu kwan naa da-namak kwan '3300'.

dèbú (v.n. dèbà) (a) erect, set up, mount one thing on another, establish an organization. ká tasa dāa bal naa kutəŕ nən, à maaki awai ká dèbi ii gudlødłəŕ-ci 'if you find that everyone in town has a tail, look for some grass and mount it on your back'. See gùtú. cf. kùmú (a).

(b) roast spitted meat by placing spits in ground next to fire. cf. bàkú (2); ádèbà.

dèbúsú (v.n. dèbúsà; dèbés) hide. gafa-k viya-k tēka, ndāa dèbəs zabuu bai 'on bath day, one doesn't hide his belly button'; lakwtu ká dee-w da rii-k saafəŕ nən, ká dèbshi-naaci ii rii-gaa 'when you come back from trading, hide at my place'. cf. ábú, bà mú.

dèbú (v.n. dèbà) water animals; irrigate garden, etc. Aabuuna maa aci dee-w dá dèbi kasakaŕ-geri naa dèdēm-kun 'Abuna says he's come to

soak his sword with your blood'.

dédém (pl. dédémmámín) blood.

dédáa (used in locative constructions) under, below, downward. naa ndiwa gaawa aa dēda-k aalan-gəri 'there were many people under his banner'; Ngwajin, da dā-k baaci-k nii da Bēñi mbasu ii dēda-gē gar-vaucin guumuu shirin ayaawa-w kwan 'Ngwajin, beginning from the one who (first) came from Birni (Ngazargamo) was governed (lived) under 23 chieftainships'; kà da ii dēdaa bai 'don't go down'; aayaw-gu àa dēda-k dluwan-gu wara 'there were figs under the sauce condiments'. cf. dāa (2); shí (3).

dègēm (pl. dègēmámín) chief, emir. cf. gárvà, mǎi.

dégéná (pl. dégénánín) wooden food bowl. cf. gádákùwà.

dègà (pl. dègàgín) arrow.

dègàgèrú (v.n. dègàgèrà; dègàgár) pound (dirt floor) to harden.

dègàgár (pl. dègàrgàrín) pounded floor; action of making such a floor. kacañ gayi áa dègagar bai 'one piece of gravel does not make a pounded floor'.

dègàrú v.intr. (v.n. dègàrù) fail to get down from a high place, fail to get out of a tight place.

dègó (< K. dùgô 'first') (1)(with affirmative sentence) first, to start with, before (some expressed or implied event). bədlamu maa, "Wà da"; ja maa, "Wà səkokuya dēgo" 'the hyena said, "Let's go"; the dog said, "Let's chat a bit first"'. See kāmàatú, first ex.

(2)(alone or with negative sentence) still, not yet. dee bai dēgo 'he still hasn't come'; dēgo ndá takws aci bai? 'hasn't he been tied up yet?'.

dègzú (v.n. dēgzà; dēgēs) fuck, copulate with (vulgar term). See mádáu. cf. řènú, tàpiyú, dēngú.

dèkèmə west.

délá (pl. délááín)(< K. délá) common jackal (*Canis aureus*).

délpù (pl. délpápín)(< K. délvù) (1) road. ndiwa gaawa àa dayu aa dēl-fu-gəri 'many people will get lost on his road' (i.e. he will lead many people to a sad fate). cf. dèvú (1).

(2) way, means by which something comes about or is done. dēlfu-k gaaba-k bədlamu naa ja hař gusku '(this is) why the hyena and the dog are enemies to this day'. See sée (Claii). cf. dèvú (2).

dēm (pl. dēmámín) wood (for fire, etc.); stick of wood. See gùdlèř. cf. cāacāawà, wákà, zāwà.

démâ (pl. dēmámín) oath; swearing to. kàa ta-naa dēma? 'will you swear

to it?' [will you eat oath].

dəmán (pl. dēmámín) rainy season. See gùzép.

dəmáu (v.n. dēmú, dēmáu) be able, can (usually with reference to physical ability—in the sense of 'know how to', zègáu (q.v.) is usually used); dēmáu is most frequently used in the Imperfective with the Totality extension -náa, -dù, but cf. first occurrence in the fourth example below, where it is Perfective. káa dēmuu-naa nii-naa gēma-k jaunak gayi wa? 'won't you be able to bring one elephant haunch?'; áa dēmuu fuwa bai 'he couldn't get down'; náa dēmuu-naa miya Ngezēm 'I can speak the Ngizim language'; ká dēma-du-n, Pətəskumu bai hař ii Tliikau ká nuuci; káa dēmuu-du-n, kà ji kà ci-du 'if you can, don't (stop with) Potiskum, pass on clear to Tlikau; if you are able, go and conquer them'. See also bərēm, dukshí (2), gàada (1c), káké-rà, mátkátká.

dəmáu (v.n. dēmáu) (1) heat up (water, left-over food, etc.).

(2) cause internal discomfort. zhaagēm dēma-naa yu 'I have to defecate'; gēji dēma-naa yu 'I'm thirsty'. cf. kēmáu (1d).

dénémnēm (pl. dənémnənín) sweet, sweetness.

dəngágúđ forked pole.

dəřənkú (pl. dərənkwàkwín) ulcer. cf. dláyâ, mátlâ, vərə, gábəřzái.

dəřáu (v.n. dərí) wait for. á dər iyu 'wait for me'. cf. cìřándú, dēmìyú, zàagú, mənú (2).

dəřđú (v.n. dərđá; dərđđ) grind guinea corn slowly with water to get fine flour. cf. zàatú, nàayú.

dəřéebà (pl. dəréebàbín) (< H. díréebàa < English) driver.

dəřgèzú (v.n. dərğèzà) squash (an insect, etc.). ná dərğèzə-naa jankař 'I squashed the louse'.

dəřùup-dəřùup id. clumsily. bədlamu shaalu bai, see suwaari-gara dər-řuup-dəřuup 'the hyena paid no attention, she just kept dancing d-d'.

dəřūs = bál = cákcák = cáam = mák "all". See bál for general remarks and further examples. akshí dərūs áa rii-gu-n amaatuu-ci 'all of them at that place are your wives' (cf. bál (1a)); dərūs kəci 'all of it is yours' (cf. bál (2)). See also sée (B2).

dəskú (pl. dəskwàkwín) (1) sky. cf. səkù.

(2)(in locative constructions) above; on top of. đuatatin àa dəsku ssau 'birds are on the house'; đuatatin àa dəsku naa ssau 'birds are above the house'; nà nci ká nēm aa tən maarēm ii dəsku-k tən-gaa tku 'I want you to make me a large nose on top of this nose of mine'. cf. dá (1), ràvənú, wákà.

dəvíđ (pl. dəvávíd) (1) night.

(2) at night. *dəvid*^h *bədlamu* j ii bara 'at night the hyena went hunting'.

dəvú (pl. *dəvávín*) (cf. K. *díval* 'way, street') (1) road, path.

(2)(a) way, means. *ká* *kəma* *maa* *ndáa* *kuru-w-n*, *ndá* *ba-naa* *dəvu* *kuru-w* 'if you hear that someone refuses, he has found the means (that allow him) to refuse'; *ama* *à* *nci-n*, *da* *dəvu* *tawanke* *áa* *dlama-naa* *tapai* 'if a woman wants to, by any means whatever she will fornicate'.

(b) *dəvú* *wàařà* 'the way that, how' (indirect question form corresponding to *nàna?* 'how?', q.v.). *ná* *zəga* *dəvu* *waařa* *waatəshi* *áa* *nii* *ii* *də-gə* *nən* *bai* 'I don't know how sneezing comes upon someone'. cf. *dəlpù*.

dəzhí (pl. *dəzhàzhín*) vein; nerve.

da preverbal marker used in third person with verbs in Subjunctive or Second Subjunctive. In Subjunctive, the tone is always opposite the following tone, in Second Subjunctive it is always low. With low tone monosyllabic verbs in both aspects, the vowel lengthens, giving *daa*. This morpheme is *not* a pronoun in the sense that an Independent Pronoun (paradigm, p. xxi) may be used before it, e.g. *ácí* *dà* *dá* 'he should come'.

dá (1) *v.intr.* go, i.e. form of 'go' used in Second Subjunctive. *wà* *dá* 'let's go'. See *da*, *íkáu* (3), last ex.

(2) *v.tr.* (used only in forms *dá-náa* + object or *dá-dù*) take thing from one place to another, transport, i.e. form of 'take' used in Second Subjunctive. *nà* *da-naa* *cí* *ii* *pəðəm* *bai* 'let me not carry you far' ['to make a long story short'].

NB: See paradigm p. xxiii.

dá form of *dəu* (q.v.) used in plural Imperative and in Perfective before objects with initial low tone.

dá- prefix which can be added to virtually any verbal noun to form stative adverb or adjective; the verbal noun so prefixed takes low tone (e.g. *dábàkà* 'roasted' d.f. *bákà* 'roasting'), though the tone of the syllable following *dá-* is raised if it begins with a voiceless, glottalized, or sonorant consonant (e.g. *dákéibà* 'smeared' d.f. *kèibà* 'smearing', *dádànkà* 'sewn' d.f. *đànkà* 'sewing'). When statives are so derived from transitive verbs, the noun to which the stative is applied is always the semantic object of the action implied by the stative. See below, words with initial *dá-* for some examples.

dà (pl. *dàdín*) (1)(a) eye.

(b) sight, view. (i) *áa* *dà* 'before one's very eyes'. *ndá* *tapiyee* *yu* *aa* *d-aaci* 'I was fornicated with before your very eyes'. (ii) *sai* *dá* *dayi-ngara* *da* *da-gara* 'then it was lost from her sight'.

(c) *dá* *bbà* 'the hell with you!' [eye of your father]. cf. *bəbá*.

(2)(a) *dà-k* *áfá* 'direct sunlight'. *kwiitaawa* *tawanke* *bau* *ndá* *ji-du* *ii* *da-k* *afa-n* 'any kwitawa-tomato will be red if it is taken into the

sun'. See pátátà.

(b) dà-k àdùwáu see dàgàdùwáu.

(3) used in idioms with verb sáú 'drink', see sáú (3a) and (3b).

dà prep. (1)(a) from (time or place). wà rawa-naawa da ssau 'let's run from the hut'; bii-k ajap: wiiləwiili àa rawa da miya-k am 'an amazing thing: a duck running from near the water'; ká bee da rawan? 'where did you get it from?'; da gafa-w 'from this day'.

(b) dà dá-k X 'beginning from X'. See dá (3a).

(c) dà mỳá-k X 'because of X'. See mỳá (3b).

(d) dà kùnú-k X 'from X, out of X'. káa ki bee waaŋa káa biyuu da kunu-k agwii-gu 'you'll see what you will get from those eggs'. See dǎu (1), kùnú (3bii); see also example under dàamú (2).

(e) dà gèshí 'to oneself'. See gèshí (2c).

(2)(with time phrase) upon, on. da nya-gəri ngum, dá banji ... 'upon his arrival, he began ...'; bədlamu da lawan ja, see tək 'a hyena on seeing a dog, (does nothing) but killing'. cf. tətāa (3).

dà(a) (1) used in construction of the form X mǎa dà 'X would have said that, X believed that'. aci maa da áa nii gaada-k gətíba-gəri 'he thought she was coming to praise him'. cf. mǎa.

(2)(a)(in questions, between alternatives, often sarcastically or contemptuously) or. káa ya ii maaka-k zəba da maaka-k dayu? 'are you looking for marriage or looking for a way to destroy yourself?'; dlam-d aa maspaŋ-gaa-gu daa tam? 'has he made me my charm or what?'. See also ràvənú.

(b)(at the end of a question) "or what?". ii shi rakii-k ama-gəri da? 'so he was under his wife's bed?!'. cf. bí.

(3) well why not ...? ji-ngara? da wàa ya? 'she's gone? well why not let's go?'. See mǎakú (2).

daa see da

dàa mod.adv. (1)(a) gives conditional meaning to verb: (with Perfective) would have, (with Imperfective) would. daa dlamə-ngara bəlan 'that would be/would have been nice'; ja maadaa bəba áa yv-aakəm ká nii bai 'we thought your father wouldn't let you come'.

(b) in same meanings as (1a), clauses introduced by dàa can follow various kinds of subordinate clauses, esp. conditional clauses in Imperfective or Second Subjunctive to give counterfactual meaning (cf. (2) below). guvu áa lawan nən, daa áa lawan-naa mantuu-gəri 'if a corpse could see, he would see his (real) friends'; jagədlau áa bii-naa bii-k ta aa dus nən, daa veree ii patata bai 'if the lion had been getting food in the forest, he wouldn't have come out on the plain'; gaad-aaci bii-n, daa ná mətə naa ɲtuu-gə Zaara aa kunə-gaa 'if it weren't for you, I would have died with love for Zara in my heart'. See báya (1a, b), gəzáu (2), kǎrdú, tǎdú (1). cf. dǎbáú (3).

(2) *dàa* may optionally introduce a counterfactual conditional clause. *daa káa bíi-naa gəshí-k bədlamu nən, daa gusku adla-w áa wuna aa tək-aaci bai* 'if you were getting hyena heart, today that cough would not last the night in your body'. cf. *dàábáú* (3).

(3)(introducing sentence) 'would that, if only'. *daa áa ngestu bai* 'would that he not be late'; *daa afək-gaa naa dagwda gaawa* 'if only my father had a lot of money'.

(4) used in *dàa wánángè* 'may, it may be that, perhaps'. *daa wanange káa tasee-gaa bai* 'it may be that you won't find me'; *daa wanange áa garvaata bai* 'he may not reign'. cf. *wánángè*.

dábə̀nà (d.f. *bə̀nú*) cooked. *kalwa dabə̀na* 'cooked locust bean seeds'.

dàbàbàràk (pl. *dàbàbàràrín*) raised platform in a field from which one scares away birds, monkeys, etc.

dábàkà (pl. *dábàkàkú*)(d.f. *bàkú*) burned; roasted.

dábákù (pl. *dábábákín, dábákwàkwín*) unmarried girl of marriageable age. cf. *wúnyá* (1b); *màapə̀ndì*.

dàbāř (< ? K. < Ar.) plan, scheme. *nàa ya ná dlam dabař* 'I'll go and work something out'. See *tàwànké* (a).

dàbáú (v.n. *dábí*) (1) v.tr. push. cf. *jə̀mbə̀lú*.

(2) v.tr. send. cf. *wànáú*.

(3) v.intr. move a little to one side. *wunya-w dá dabai ii rií-gə maayim-gu* 'the girl moved up next to the boy'.

dábbà (pl. *dábbàbín*)(< K. or H. *dábbà* < Ar.) domestic animal. cf. *lè-màn, tìlùwái* (2).

dàbgú (v.n. *dàbgà; dàbák*) bury.

dàbí (pl. *dàbàbín*)(< K. *dàví* 'hoe with long handle used in destroying mud part of hut') a short handled hoe [H. *magirbi*] with blade nearly perpendicular to handle; used for cutting guinea corn stalks during harvest as well as general farm work. cf. *kùrá́m*.

dàabə̀kà (a) beer that has been cooked one day (it is not drunk at this stage).

(b) name for the first day of beer preparation.

cf. *bàazhí* (2), *màatàngíizhá, sémâ*.

dàabə̀ř (pl. *dàabə̀řàrín*) basket [H. *kwando*]. cf. *kə̀ndé, tàkàcí*.

dàací 'well', 'then', 'with that completed': used especially in narrative, sometimes indicating a switch in focus, but often apparently serving merely as a device to break up the narrative, meaning something like "with all the preceding as background we move on to note that ...". *akshi áa raakan, maayim dà ram ii-tu maa, "Gaza gaawa bai*

ná yvə-naa kəm." Atu maa, "Bəlan." Daaci maayim-gu maa, "Náa yva-naa kəm aa rii tku." Atu maa, "To." Dá yvi-naa atu dà ram ii-tu maa, "Ká ndəmi wunduwa. "Atu maa, "To." Daaci atu áa raakan ngum ... 'they were going along and the boy said to her, "In a while I'll leave you." She said, "OK." So the boy said, "I'll leave you here." She said, "OK." He left her and said, "Greet the family." She said, "OK." Well she was traveling along ...'.

dádəbà (d.f. dèbú) set up, erected, placed. daawii kaa kakshi kwan da-dəba 'pots like about three are set up'.

dáadəgérí extent (of vision, etc.), limit, end of. guru, daadegeri-n sau 'jealousy, that's the end (of it)'. cf. áakwáyú, íyâaká.

dàadá (pl. dàadàdín) (1) term of reference or address used with one's mother. suu wura-k daada bai 'that's not Mom's voice'; daada, suu tai? 'Mom, who's that'. cf. màí; bàabá.

(2) term of reference or address used with an older sister or person with whom one is close and is of approximately the age of an older sister. cf. gázgàrà (2b).

dàdgú (v.n. dádga; dàdák) (a) beat, thrash. See mbàsú (3). cf. gùbdú, kkəmú, nànmú.

(b) castrate animal by pounding cords of testicles. ná dadge-naa anan-gu 'I castrated (goat, etc.) by pounding'. cf. dǎu (3f), kkəmú (1c).

dádləgà (d.f. dləgú) slung over shoulder or under arm. mata-gəri naa madlawai-gəri bai naa jaunak dadləga '(under) both his right arm and his left arm there was an elephant slung'.

dádəmək-dádəmək id. sound of running. (said by escaping hyena) "zəgər áa ji yu!" to, dadəmak-dadəmak sharau! dà rawə-naakshi "feet, get me out of here!" well, clippety-clop zoom! they ran away'.

dàdžú (v.n. dādžhí [dā'zhí]) thatch a roof.

dàfkárâk (pl. dàfkárárín) Clapperton's francolin (*Francolinus clapper-toni*) [H. fakara]. See tənýí.

dágá (pl. dágágín) round charm worn around upper arm or forearm.

dàgà (< H. daga 'from') introducing an adverbial clause; 'when' (used only with actions understood to be completed). afək wunya, daga dee tənú, dà gaayi ii dā-k dababarak 'the girl's father, when he arrived, he climbed up on the platform'. cf. tənú (2), ngúm (a).

dàgáadáràì (pl. dàgáadáràrín) West African genet (*Genetta poensis*) [H. címola]. See vèdà (3a).

dàgàdúwáu see ádúwáu

dàgàmú v.intr. (v.n. dágàmú; Subjunctive dá dágàmí) fall from an up-

right position, topple. dagame-ngeri gamtak 'he fell dead'. See nàa (6d), bàllé (1). cf. vègú.

dàgǔú (v.n. dágǎ; dàgǎǎ) overtake; come across, meet up with. ram-aakun kə gazgəraucin, nən muwa-du-n, áa dagad-du 'as for you old men's admonitions, if somebody scorns them he'll (still) meet up with them (at a later time)'. cf. ndàagəmə, tásáu.

dàgvà (d.f. gèvú) designed, having designs. agwai waaŋa tēka-w dagva bai 'eggs that don't have designs on them'.

dàgwànjí (pl. dàgwànjájín) = bààŋemá hired farm worker.

dàgwár (pl. dàgwàràrín, dàgwàràucín) devil; spirit (evil or beneficent). dagwar-gə kunu-k Anku-k Bagaŋa-w 'the spirit from within Lake Bagaŋa'. See kúðěŋà.

dàgwdá (pl. dágwdádín) money.

dàgzú (v.n. dágzà; dàgás) feel bad, not feel well.

dài (? < H. dái) indeed! dədəm dai nà shi?! 'should I drink blood?!'.

dákélbà (d.f. kəlǎú) smeared on.

dàkúrá (pl. dàkúrárín) small cooking pot for sauce. cf. dāwàl.

dàakùya n. or adj. (pl. dàakùyáyín) deaf person; deaf (dàakùya cannot hear but can speak). cf. muuká.

dàkwándèelè lesser or Senegal galago, bush baby (*Galago senegalensis*).

dákwdā (pl. dákwdádín) type of gruel (ágāw, q.v.) flavored with the desert date (ákđā).

dákwtà (d.f. kùtú) a horse with all four feet and forehead white, remainder dark.

dálásā (pl. dálásásín)(< ? K.) track(s) left by person or thing. dala-sa-k mbiikdā/jagadlau 'snake/lion tracks'; ndā tuway-naa dalasa-gara aa wunduwa 'they forgot where she had gone at home'.

dàlǎl (pl. dàlǎlǎlín)(< K. dàlǎl < Ar.) reason.

dàltú (v.n. dàltà)(< K. dāl-jìn) dye palm leaves for mat weaving. à jì ká dalt aa arduwa 'go and dye palm fronds for me'. cf. àarín.

dáamá (< K. dāmá or H. dáamāa) used as adverb or modifier of noun only in nàa dáamá 'quite a few, quite a bit, a fairly large amount'. gə-nanu haŋaaji zəgər naa daama 'he collected the taxes quite a few times'; á viy aa rəba naa daama 'wash the clay (for pots) for me quite a bit'. See mǎnú.

dàamā (invariable for singular or plural) (l)(a) adj. another, other;

a different, different. kaayak dá pakai da rii daama 'the squirrel popped out from a different place'; kə Məsau daama 'Misau's was different'.

(b) *pron.* another one, others; a different one, different ones. zha-buwa-gəri áa kunu-k kuřtu naa daama řap 'his honey was in a jug with another one (having) a little (in-it)'; bədlamu dà y ii wunduwa dá n-naa daama 'the hyena went home and brought another one (hoe)'. cf. *dagài* (2), *jìgàp* (2).

(2) *adv.* differently, again, in another way. amzharu à yen nà dalm ii-kəm daama 'tomorrow come and I'll fix it for you again'. See *tàtǒú*.

dámáakənəm darkness of night or from storm clouds, etc. *damaakənəm-gə dəman kařgun-gə baaci-k zəlaama* 'the darkness of the rainy season is a cure for the person who wanders around from house to house (looking for something to eat)'. See *bǎu* (2).

dámáná (pl. *dámánán*) mistress (female), lover. cf. *mérən*.

dambà = *kàabì* (q.v.) before (may govern a clause or a simple noun phrase); *aspect* - when a verbal sentence follows *dambà* (or *kàabì*), the aspect is usually Subjunctive, though the Imperfective is also used with no apparent difference in meaning; *presence or absence of final -n* (q.v.) - a 'before' clause may terminate in the formative *-n* (Bl) if the events in the sentence have not yet occurred or if they indicate a general, habitually applicable state of affairs; otherwise the clause ends in *tǎnú* (q.v.), *ngúm* (q.v.), or \emptyset .

(Subjunctive, final *-n*) *wà palta-naa rai damba sauraucin-gaa dá nii nən* 'let's change our place (of residence) before my in-laws come'; (Subjunctive, no *-n*) *ndá dlam garva nawan damba ká dlamí?* 'how many reigns were there before you took over?'; (Imperfective, final *-n*) *damba kaa bíi dāa waařa naa awayau kaa kə Bəni-n, kaa ya ii pədəm* 'before you'd find a town with strength like that of Birni, you would go far'; (Imperfective, final *tǎnú*) *damba áa nii tənə, zha tlařdə-ngara* 'before he arrived, war had broken out'; (nonclausal) *aa bařka-k mēgəny-aawa, damba tēřa gayi kaa ya-naakəm* 'with the blessing of God, before one month (is up) you'll get there'.

dambáadiǝgúř (pl. *dambáadiǝgúřǎřfn*) = *dambáadiǝwùrì* wild hunting-dog (*Lycan pictus*) [H. *kyarkeci*].

dámàsù (pl. *dámàsàsín*) (d.f. *mbàsú*) (a) seated. *tiye naa cappa-gəri dambasu* 'everybody and his group were seated'.

(b) be settled, be living. *jà dambas-aaja naa aci* 'he and I were living together'.

dàamèetú (v.n. *dàamèetà*) (< H. *dàamáa*) = *cùwìitú* annoy, bother, trouble. cf. *ngənèptú*, *ràvènú*.

dámpàyi (d.f. *mpáu*) placed, set aside. *naa səsau dampayi* 'there was a (thatched) roof set aside'.

dàmtáu = *dàntáu* (1)(a) *adj.* near, nearby. *Ngwajin damtuu-k dāa* 'Ngwajin

is a nearby town'.

(b) dàmtúu nàa 'near to'. Ngwajin damtuu naa Pətəskəmu 'Ngwajin is near to Potiskum'.

(2) *n.* nearness. gaafa dagii-n áa damtau; gaafa-n áa pəðəm 'sometimes it was near [lit: it was at nearness]; sometimes at a distance'.

dàamú (*v.n.* dáamà)(usually used with Totality Extension -náa, -dù)

(1) *v.tr.* finish, finish off. See àdlídlèbá, báí (3a), kàmàatú, náu (1).

(2) *v.intr.* be finished off, completely used or consumed, be all gone. gadlɛgwadək dlugwan áa daama da daawii báí, saí wənga 'spoiled sauce will not be finished off in the pot, it can only be poured out'.

(3) 'finish doing. See kàabì, first ex.

cf. dású.

dánámák one hundred. danamak naa shirin '102'; danamak shirin '200'.

dándàfúú eight.

dángwà (*d.f.* ngwǎu) dipped out; scooped up; gathered. shau dangwa aa kunu-k fəna 'the manure is scooped up in the calabash'.

dángwái (*pl.* dǎngwáíáí|n)(< Ful. dangol) looped rope for tethering calves.

dángwánò red flower-balls of locust bean tree. cf. rùwánú.

dánkà (*pl.* dǎnkàkín)(cf. K. dǎngà) hawk, falcon (probably includes any of several large accipitral birds, though not the black kite, gázá-bì). See tlàkàtú.

dànkáíí (*pl.* dǎnkáíáí|n)(< H. dǎnkáíí) sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*).

dàntáu = dàmtáu

dàptú (*v.n.* dàptà)(< K. dǎp-cín 'prevent, refuse') (1) prevent X from doing Y (X may be the direct object and Y a nominal phrase introduced by nàa, or X may be indirect object and Y direct). gaada-k tluwii-k garva, ndaa dapta-k diishaw naa vayak báí 'just because it's the chief's meat, one doesn't prevent the vulture from circling'; Maina tawanke, ndaa rama-d ii-ci hal-geri waaŕa áa dapta ii-ci dlama Mai 'every prince, he would be told his trait of character which prevented him from becoming Mai'. See kàká (2), kàwà (1), nàmbò.

(2) lighten, lessen. Səku dà dapta kabiine 'may God lessen troubles'.

dárəptà (*d.f.* rəptú) open. See gəshí (2d).

dárágà (*pl.* dǎrágàgín) (1)(a) fence made of cornstalks or thorny bran-

ches. See gátéř (2). cf. gálàagà, dâřdâř, kàstà.

(b) a garden enclosed by such a fence.

(2) cattle enclosure.

dáragái boat.

dâřdâř fenced enclosure made with thorny brances, sticks, etc. cf. dá-rágà, gálàagà, kàstà.

dâřòotà (d.f. řòotú) held, retained. ndá jibè-naa aci, gusku dařoota 'he was arrested and now he is incarcerated'.

dâřtlú (v.n. dâřtlà; dâřátl) cut into small pieces (meat, etc.); cut off numerous small things, e.g. okra from bush. jagadlau dá gənyí dà dâřtlí dà waskí dá banji kiidà-w 'the lion took it (meat), cut it into pieces, shook on spices, and began eating it'. cf. bēřdú, dībēřdú.

dâř'yí (d.f. řěđú) standing, erect; stopped.

dàashà red sorghum (*Sorghum bicolor*) [H. jan dawa]. cf. áw, gávérkà.

dàasú (v.n. dáasà) stop up (hole, etc.), plug up.

dáatěffidók (pl. dáatěffidāđín) granary consisting of a large hole in the ground with a plaited grass liner; the space between the liner and the sides of the hole are filled with chaff to protect against moisture and the top is covered over with a water-tight covering. cf. bēzà, gādīái.

dátákwsà (pl. dátákwsàsú)(d.f. tàkwsú) tied up.

dáatì (pl. dáatātín)(< K. dátè) height; length. ndiwa nda-k daati 'tall men'; ndiwa naa daati 'the men are tall'; daati-gəri 'his height'. cf. gāzběř (2).

dău v.tr.; intr. counterpart is vèrú (q.v.) (v.n. dáyí, becomes dīyúu when used in Imperfective with unexpressed object, dīi when object is expressed; Imperative áa jí or áa jī; Subjunctive dāa jí)

(1) take out, take off, remove. dá dai zayayin da kunu-k jaka-gəri 'he took some ropes out of his bag'. See kàabì (last ex.), dībēgènú (b).

(2) save, get one out of a jam. See dādēmák.

(3) used with certain nouns, dău has the sense of extracting from deep within, usually where the thing extracted had no physical existence before that extraction.

(a) láamí 'craving' as object: 'satisfy a craving'. See láamí.

(b) máfíyâ 'breathing' as object: 'rest'. See máfíyâ (2).

(c) gādđíí 'belch' as object: 'to belch'. See řāamā.

(d) gàarú 'rampart around town' as object: 'build ramparts'. See

gàarú (b).

(e) See kùukà, kùrúwà, nàkàt (first example).

(f) ànán 'testicles' as object: 'castrate by slitting scrotum and pulling testicles out'. ná da-naa anan-gu 'I castrated it'. cf. dàdgú (b), kkémú (1c).

dáuyâ (pl. dáuyáyín)(? < H. dóoyàa 'yam') cassava (*Manihot palmata*) [H. rogo].

dàvànàngú this year. cf. máadévèn, wàyák.

-dâw = -dù (3) "with it": bound suffix on verb indicating an instrument understood from previous context. ná ziidè-daw gwamak 'I slaughtered the ram with it'. See jáb, tèrfú.

dáawâi (pl. dáawâwín) cooking pot. cf. dàkúrá, gùréf, vàkènak.

dàawàná (pl. dàawànanín) adulterer. cf. mórên.

dàa wánángè maybe, perhaps. See dàa (4).

dàawànú (v.n. dáawànù) act in a foolish way. cf. dlèbgènú (b).

dàwáu (v.n. dáwà) (1) tend animals at pasture.

(2) graze, feed (said of animals).

dáwûr cane rat, cutting grass (*Thryonomys swinderianus*) [H. gyazbi].

dáyáidâ (d.f. yàidû) wound (as in yàidû). ada-gara dayaidâ naa ari-yaapu 'her head was wound with a turban'.

dàyí see dâu

ddá (1) v.intr. (used in à ddá) 'go!', i.e. Imperative plural form of 'go'. cf. jí (1) for singular.

(2) v.tr. (used only in à ddá-náa + object or à ddá-dù) 'take!' (from one place to another), 'transport!', i.e. Imperative plural form of 'take'. cf. jí (2) for singular.

NB: See paradigm, p. xxiii for all forms of 'go' and 'take'.

dèu (1) v.intr. came, i.e. form of 'come' used in Perfective.

(2) v.tr. (used only in forms dèe-náa + object or dèe-dù) 'brought', i.e. form of 'bring' used in Perfective.

(3) dèe-náa + nominalized sentence, or potentially any other form of 'come' (cf. paradigm, p. xxiii): 'bring about, cause'. rama kaarak dee-naa guka 'pleasant talk has brought about a bow'; kawa naa ja-gadlau áa nii-naa tefa ii dus, 'familiarity with the lion causes one to enter the bush'. See gàadâu (c), gâtér (2).

NB: See paradigm, p. xxiii for all forms of 'come' and 'bring'.

dìi see dǎu

dìiná = nná (q.v.) when used in Second Subjunctive (see paradigm, page xxiii).

dìiná ventive form of dǎu (q.v.) used in Second Subjunctive and Plural Imperative.

dìinà (pl. dìinàín) (< K. dìnà) rag. dìinà búucì 'worn out mat'. See gùgùyú.

dìināĩ (< K. dínār < Ar.) gold.

díishǎw (pl. díishǎwáwín) vulture (*Necrosyrtes monachus*) [H. ungulu].
cf. zǎkwǎk.

dìyúu see dǎu

dlǎbgǎnú v.intr. (v.n. dlǎbgǎnú; Subjunctive dá dlǎbgǎnyì) (a) become spoiled, ruined. cf. dlǎmǎtú.

(b) become physically or morally deteriorated. miyaakuwa dlǎbgǎnē-n, dǎa jì gǎpta maa aci fǎfda 'when the ant becomes degenerated, he puts out wings and says he's a winged termite'. cf. dǎyú (lc), tlǎkǎtú; cf. also gǎdlǎbgǎnák.

dlǎdú (v.n. dlǎjǐ) (1) split open, break open. ndá dlǎdee-naa da-w 'his eye was cut open (in fight)'. cf. bíyú.

(2) cut through, pass through, charge through. dá dlǎji-naa am-gu dá dlǎji riyak 'he (horse) ran through the water, (then) he ran through the gamba-grass'.

dlǎgámáú (pl. dlǎgámámín) (cf. K. kǎlǐgǐmò, H. ràakúmí) = dlǎkémáú camel.

dlǎgǎyú v.intr. (v.n. dlǎgǎyù) become blind. cf. dlúgùyú.

dlǎgǎyú (v.n. dlǎgǎyù) become lodged, e.g. thing thrown into or placed in tree or bush.

dlǎgdú (v.n. dlǎgdà) ransom, redeem. See gùzǎpǎnà.

dlǎgǐd (pl. dlǎgǎdǐn) = dlúgùyú blind person. See nǎwáú (la).

dlǎgǐd (pl. dlǎgǎgǐn) wrestling. cf. tlǎrì.

dlǎgú (v.n. dlǎgà) sling over shoulder, under arm, etc. á dlǎgi kasakaĩ 'put on the sword'. See dǎdlǎgì.

dlǎgwǎdú v.intr. (v.n. dlǎgwǎdú) putrify, decompose, go rancid; smell putrid, rancid. gurb-aaci dlǎgwǎdē-n, dlǎgwǎd ii-ci 'if your finger is going to decompose, may it do so while on your body [may it decompose to you]'. cf. tǎfǎbú; cf. also gǎdlǎgwǎdák.

dlǎkémáú (pl. dlǎkémáucín) = dlǎgámáú

dlèktàtènú (v.n. dlèktàtènà; dlèktàtán) scratch repeatedly, e.g. hens feeding. akshi jlèktatəne gwadanu 'they scratched up peanuts'.

dlèktàtán pecking, scratching of hens, etc. cf. dlèktàtènú.

dlèmàtú v.intr.; tr. counterpart is dlèmtú (q.v.) (v.n. dlèmàtù) become spoiled; become ruined, become inoperative. saurak dà dlèmata yaaye, dèka-naa zayi-k apsaw 'even if meat strips are spoiled, they are better (to eat) than an apsaw-rope'. cf. tlàkàtú, dlèbgènú (a); cf. also gádlèmàták (b).

dlómáawâ (? < K. zémà < Ar.) Friday.

dlèmtú v.tr.; intr. counterpart is dlèmàtú (q.v.) (v.n. dlèmtà; dlèmt) ruin, spoil, render inoperative.

dlèp id. downward. dà ram maa, "Kunam dlèp, kunam dlèp," kunamu dá niyi-ngara ii ðaa 'she said, "Palm tree dlèp, palm tree dlèp," and the palm tree bent downward'.

dlèřàntəm id. sound of drum. sai ganga dlèřàntəm, dlèřàntəm, dlèřàntəm 'then the drum went thumpity-thump-thump'. cf. bàřàmbádcàm, táatá-réngúdá.

dlèrá (1)(a) internal bodily ache or pain, e.g. of head, stomach, etc. dlèra-k kunu-k aayu, àa bar-aw araawa-n Kaakasku 'the gazelle's stomach ache, it is God who gives it potash'. cf. tótàa (1), fèrá.

(b) being in pain as in (1a). kunu wunya-gara áa dlèra 'her daughter's stomach is aching'.

(2) being warlike, belligerent. tla tku áa dlèra 'this cow is belligerent'; nda-k dlèra 'warlike people'.

dlèrái (pl. dlèràrín) Karekare person or language.

dlèřàm-dlèřàm id. hoarsely. See dlǎu (b).

dlèràatú (v.n. dlèràatà) disturb, fluster, make one lose his senses. cf. lèvàatú.

dlèřdú (v.n. dlèřdà; dlèřét) snap off several, e.g. peppers or okra. cf. dàřtlú, dalmú (2), gèdú, ngwǎu (2), tātəmú, bēřdú.

dlàbèrú (v.n. dlábèrà; dlábár) split wood (for fire, etc.).

dlábùwàk castor oil plant (*Ricinus communis*) [H. zirman].

dlàbáu, dlàbú (v.n. dlábù or dlàbà) (1)(a) = mbàsú (i) sit, remain, stay (dlàbáu is far more restricted in occurrence than mbàsú and is perhaps obsolescent in this meaning and that of (1b)). káa dlabá aa waka 'you'll just stay up in the tree'; lakwtu tawanke anka!-kəm dlabá aa riyu 'whenever your mind settles on that place'. See ngáikò.

(ii)(used exhortatively, usually followed by bìi—cf. bìi (5c)) let things stay as they are, don't do anything. X dà dlabá bìi-gara

'just leave X alone, let X stay where it is'; á dlab̥ bii-ci 'stay where you are, don't bother to do anything'; dlab̥á same meaning as previous example.

(b) = mbàsú (2b) reside. nda-k awayau gaawa dlab̥u aa Ngwajin 'many powerful men resided at Ngwajin'.

(2) = dlámú (2) be, become (dlàbú is far more restricted in occurrence than dlámú in this meaning and may be obsolescent). tiye aa dlab̥u bai aa metu 'anyone who is no more will die'. See gágái (2). cf. kátáu (2).

(3)(optionally used to introduce conditional clauses of counterfactual sentences; it takes the form dà dlab̥á or dlab̥á) if it were the case that. dà dlab̥a aci áa vèra áa ya ii laaduwa-n, kullum aci áa bii dagwda bai? 'if he were to go to the Sunday (market), wouldn't he always get money?'; dlab̥a kwam datakwsa bii-n, daa rarka kun 'if the bull were not tied up, he would chase after you'. cf. dàa (1b, 2).

dlàdlìyú (v.n. dládliyà; dlàdlái) beseech, seek blessing. dà dladlii miya-gəri dà saanyi dluḡun maareḡamin ndiwa waaḡa mètə-naakshi 'he sought blessing in mentioning the names of great men who had died'.

dlágái field rat (sp.?) [H. ñeran jeji]. cf. gáadàḡum, kùrkúm.

dlàḡdú v.intr. (v.n. dláḡdà; dláḡát) move off road; pass off to side of road; go around or avoid place via another place, detour. ná dlagd ii pata 'I made a detour by way of the bush'; goomak áa kun-aakshi, dà dlagji-ngəri ii wənduwa-k manga-gəri, dayak 'the ram was amongst them (but) he had avoided his own house by staying at the house of his friend, the goat'; náa dlagat 'I'm going to answer a call of nature'. See gàadà (1a).

dláḡwdàrú (pl. dláḡwdàrárín) old, broken calabash. dlagwdaru ngwa-k shau, ndáa jiba-w naa madlawai 'a calabash for scooping up shit, it is held with the left hand'. cf. fənà.

dlákáká id. clucking or cawing of hens.

dlàkwái (pl. dlàkwàkwín) desire for; desire to do. wun-gəri gazgara-w dà mci-ngəri, daaci dlakwii-gə mooke dá vəri-ngara da gəshi-gəri 'his eldest son died; then desire for anything left his heart'.

dlákwâk (pl. dlákwákwín) rake for clearing farm before preparing for planting.

dlámdlám (pl. dlámdládiín) forest. cf. dùs.

dlámú (v.n. dlàma) (1) v.tr. (a) make, do. ndà dlama bee waaḡa ndáa dlama-w 'let one do what one wants to do'; á dlam səma gaawa 'make a lot of beer'.

(b)(with no expressed object, used in Imperfective) be possible, be doable. áa dlama-w bai 'it can't be done'. (cf. English 'that'll do', etc.)

(c)(i) *dlàmú* ii X + nominalized action phrase: perform action to X, to the detriment of X, for X. *dlam ii-kshi jiba-k jiiřeewa naa kunu gayi* 'he ruled them fairly and with unity of purpose'. See *nāwáu* (1a), last ex.

(ii) *dlàmú* Y-kə X: deal with X in the manner of Y'. See *kàrgūn* (b).

(d) *dlàmú* X, where X is a durative time expression: spend X. *Mai Badaayo dlam yuwan gatkaasa aa ḍa-k maḍamba* 'Mai Badaayo spent seven days on the maḍamba-mat (as part of investiture as Mai)'.
 (e) *dlàmú* can be used with many types of objects where it is the object itself which expresses the event and *dlàmú* is a pro-verb filling the verb slot required by the syntactic rules of Ngizim; some examples of this function of *dlàmú* are as follows (cf. also the uses of *dlàmú* in (2) below):

(i) *dlàmú* may express whatever action is appropriate to the object: *Maina Dabera dlam amaatau danamak naa guumuu vaad* 'Prince D. obtained 140 wives'; *dlamə kuuto* 'he worked the bellows'. (See *gàaḍa* (1c)); *dlamə dlugun* 'they performed a naming ceremony' (cf. *mpáu* (2b)); *tla dá dlam shuu gaatla* 'the cow excreted fresh shit'; *dá dlam wunduwa ii riyu* 'he set up his household there'.

(ii) suffer or undergo some state. *dlamə fəra* 'he was sick'; *dlamə guzapəna* 'he was taken into slavery' (see *gùzàpənà*).

(iii) behave in a certain way. *dlamə guru* 'he was jealous' (see *ngálkò*); *Mai Badaayo dlam awayau řankata* 'Mai B. was very powerful'.

(iv) *dlàmú* can be used with a verbal noun as object rather than the verb from which that noun is derived being itself used; the difference in meaning generally seems to be that with *dlàmú* + X (where X is some verbal noun) the sense is that the subject is an active participant, possibly subject and object at the same time, while with the verb X alone the subject is an agent acting on the object of X. *akshi dlamə ndəma* 'they exchanged greetings' (cf. *ná ndəm aci* 'I greeted him'); *akshi dlam tapai* 'they fornicated together' (cf. examples under *tàpìyú*); *dlamə zəba* 'he got married' (cf. *kàmaatú*, first ex. and cf. *mpáu* (2a)).

NB: Some other verbs which have a pro-verb function similar to *dlàmú* but with various different semantic shades are *dáu* (3), *máu* (2), *mpáu* (2), *táu* (3), *tàḍú* (2).

(2) v.intr. (a) = *dlàḥáu* (2)(q.v.) become something. *dlamee-ngəri dugdu áa nii* 'he had become a lame person and was coming along' (cf. *ḍəgàḍú*); *dlamə-ngəri Mai* 'he became Mai'. See *sóřəm*. cf. *kàtáu* (2).

(b) *dlàmú* X where X is some quality word: attain X, become X, be X, turn X, take on X. *təka-gəri dá dlamí-ngəri aayuwa* 'his body became black'; *áa dlama bəlan* 'it will be nice'; *təka daan dá dlam təluus* 'then the body will be soft'. For further examples, see *gàatlá* (2), *tétàa* (1a), *zhòomú*.

(c) followed by ii plus action nominal: do. (only example found) *ama-gəri naa muyi-gara dá dlam-naakshi ii gamas* 'his wife and her co-wife broke out laughing'.

NB: For some examples, it is not possible to say whether *dlàmú* is used as in (1) or (2), e.g. see *fáu*, *há!* (1a).

dlánâk (pl. dlánánlín) brains.

dlànjì African rosewood (*Pterocarpus erinaceus*) [H. madobiya].

dlánkôř snoring.

dlàpú (v.n. dlápf) pierce, stab (object may be either the instrument or the victim). à dlap audu 'stick the knife in'. See ðvàarú. cf. zàgè mú (1), zùktú.

dláaráú (pl. dláaráráú, dláaráucín) mat similar to búucí (q.v.) plaited from the fronds of the fan palm.

dlàřdú (v.n. dlářdà; dlàřát) cut, rip, scrape, abrade. dlařd iyu naa skwai 'he cut me with a sickle'; dlařd ii-n ðem 'it was wood which scraped me'. cf. wèdú.

dlàřtáđúwà star thistle (*Centaurea calcitropa*) [H. dayi].

dlău (v.n. dlà, may become either dlă-w or dlîyúu in Imperfective when no object is expressed, but only dlà is used before object; Imperative áa dlí, Subjunctive dăa dlî)

(a) dip out. áa dlai aa am 'dip me out some water'.

(b) ðedlamu áa rama-w nən, wura-gara dləřam-dləřam áa dla-k am 'when the hyena was about to speak, her voice was choking dləřam-dləřam gurgling with water'.

dláyâ (pl. dláyáyln) ulcer. cf. ðèřènkú, mátlâ, vèrà, gábèřzái.

dléndlèn type of flying squirrel (family *Anomaluridae*) [H. kuregen bisa].

dlí, dlî see dlău

dlîyúu see dlău

dlùgún (pl. dlùgwàgwín) (a) name.

(b) mpá dlùgún 'give a name'. wà mpi dluğun-gu Pataskamo 'let's call it Potiskum'. See mpáu (2b). cf. dlàmú (1e).

dlùgùyú n. or adj. (pl. dlùgùyàyín) (d.f. dlègàyú) = dlègíđ blind (person). dluگوی-k aapəno = aapəno dluگوی 'blind Hausa person'. See rùwàwáđ.

dlùgwám (pl. dlùgwàgumín) = zhìgóm brave man, great warrior.

dlùgwàn (pl. dlùgwàgwín) (a) sauce [H. miya].

(b) general name for the makings of dlùgwàn. For specific ingredients, see ámbàì, áunâ, gwàagunâi, dlùgwànkú, tùkùnó.

dlùgwànkú sauce (dlùgwàn) flavored with leaves of the baobab (kúkú).

đoolè (< Ful. doole 'force') introducing a sentence, gives sense of

necessity, inevitability. See *ḍāawú* (2a). cf. *sée* (A).

-*dù* (1) transitizing suffix added to lexical intransitive verbs when they are used transitively and when the verb is not directly followed by a direct object (this will be the case when an indirect object pronoun intervenes between the verb and direct object or when no overt object is expressed); otherwise the morpheme -*náa* (1) is used. *Kwaana áa kalakta-du* 'Kwana will return it'; *ná dee-d ii-ci am* 'I brought him water'.

(2) Totality Extension potentially added to any transitive verb to indicate action well or completely done; this form is used when the verb is not directly followed by a direct object (this will be the case either when an indirect object pronoun intervenes between the verb and direct object or when no overt object is expressed); otherwise with transitive verbs, the morpheme -*náa* (2) is used; with intransitive verbs, Totality is expressed by the morpheme -*n*- plus the intransitive copy pronoun. *à kii'yi-du* 'eat it up'; *ná rauree-d ii-tu atu* 'I called her for her'. See NB following -*náa* (2) for explanation of the differences between -*dù* (1) and -*dù* (2).

(3) = -*dáw* (q.v.) suffix on verb indicating an instrument or other "with" phrase understood from previous context. *kuku tiyu, atu dá jibi ii aikwa-gara dá dlam-du suwaari* 'that baobab fruit, she held it in her hand to dance with it'; *aayayin jaḅ, wàa dlama-du tam?* 'mere gazelles, what will we do with them?'.

dúgùl (pl. *dúgùlálín*) morsel of meat; muscle.

dúgùlgùl (pl. *dúgùlgùlín*) the vine *Vitis pallida* [H. *dafara*].

dúgùrú (pl. *dúgùràucín*) an old woman who has passed child bearing age without having ever born. See *páu* (2). cf. *gwàngùràk* (2).

dùgùrú (v.n. *dùgùrà*) look, look at. cf. *ìikáu*, *làunú*.

dùukà (pl. *dùukàkín*) horse. cf. *ngárgù*, *kústâ*, *wáazâ*.

dùkdú (v.n. *dùkdâ*) grunt; force on bowels to defecate. *bədlamu dá duk'yi shuu da kyar!* 'the hyena forced out shit with difficulty!'.

dùkshí (pl. *dùkshàshín*) (1) *adj.* heavy. *jaka-w dukshi* 'the bag is heavy'.

(2) *n.* weight; great weight. *áa demuu-k raakan bai da miya-k dukshi-k jaka-w* 'he couldn't walk because of the (great) weight of the bag'.

dúukù (pl. *dúukwàkwín*) drummer.

dùngún remedy for, necessary thing for a task, etc. *baya áa gərid, dūngun shashak* 'something in a hole, the way to get it out is prodding'. cf. *kàrgún* (b).

dùunfyâ (pl. *dùunfyáyín*) (< K. *dùnyâ* < Ar.) the world. cf. *láfɔ̀dì* (2).

dùunlìyàtú (v.n. dùunlìyàtà)(< K. dùnyâ < Ar.) for the world to run its course, come to an end; (*fig.*) no matter what is going to happen takes place. duuniya dà duuniyata yaaye, ja áa tapii-gè bədlam bai 'even if the world were to come to an end, the dog would not fornicate with the hyena'.

dùs (pl. dùsàsín) densely wooded area of bush. jagadlau áa bii-naa bii-k ta aa dus nən, daa vərəe ii patata bai 'if the lion were getting food in the forest, he wouldn't come out on the plain'. cf. dlámdlám.

dúwâ (pl. dúwáwín) well. cf. cáacá.

dùwâl (pl. dùwáláíín)(< K. dùwâl) stirrup.

dúwâř afternoon from about 2-3 PM. cf. ádlìyádliyá, ádùwáu.

dúuzhì (pl. dúuzhàzhín) owl. See màrwàyú.

D

ḏəbàdlú v.intr. (v.n. ḏəbàdlù) bend, get bent; be crooked.

ḏəbdú (v.n. ḏəbdà; ḏəbət) sell.

ḏədkú (v.n. ḏədkà) peek, peer into. dɛgamuu-ci ɖayi-n, ká jibi ḏədkà-k vək gaadagum 'if your camel gets lost, begin by looking in a rat hole'.

ḏəgá reconciliation (with angry wife). cf. ágwù; ḏəgáu.

ḏəgàdú v.intr. (v.n. ḏəgàdù) become lame. cf. ñúgdú.

ḏəgàdù (pl. ḏəgàdàdín)(v.n. of ḏəgàdú) lameness.

ḏəgáu (v.n. ḏəgà) follow (road, etc.), travel along on. cf. ḏəgú.

ḏəgú (v.n. ḏəgà) (a) follow (person, animal); come after. ḏəgə akuu-k Mai Zəganəsku nən Yařiima Gauzhi 'it was Yarima Gauzhi who came after Mai Z. (as Mai)'. cf. ḏəgáu.

(b) conciliate angry wife. cf. ágwù, ḏəgá.

ḏəgwáagwàk (pl. ḏəgwáagwàgwín) (1) adj. bitter, astringent.

(2) n. bitterness, astringency. cf. gářtìlà.

ḏəkáu (v.n. ḏəkàyà, but when used with an object, becomes ḏəkìi—cf. second example under (a); Imperative à ḏkí)(usually used in Perfective with Totality Extension)

(a)(used with direct object only) exceed, surpass, be more than (or if context makes compared quality clear, could mean 'be bigger than, taller than, better than', etc.—cf. *jàawású*). *mbasu kèlappiya dēka-naa mbasu garva* 'living in health and happiness is better than living as a chief'; *àa dēkii-k yuwan guuma bai* 'it won't be more than ten days'. See also *àaràwái* (1), *gátéràbák*, *kàaktlú*, *mpàyí*, *shìitán*, *táu* (1b). cf. *rémáu*.

(b) *X dēká-naa Y ii Z* 'X exceeds Y with respect to quality Z, X is more Z than Y'. *jiřeewa dēka-naa duuka-k duuyak ii awayau* 'truth is stronger than a horse of iron'. See also *gùgùyú*, *gàzbéř* (2).

(c) *X dēká-dù* 'X is preferable'; *X dēká-d ii Y* 'X is preferable for Y, Y had better do X'. *gadlii-ci gaadù-n, nya ii saaféř dēka-d ii-ci* 'if your granary is empty, you'd better go trading'.

(d) *dēkii-k X*, where X is a noun phrase: more than X, that which exceeds X. *jaunak vaad bii-n dēkii-k kaa sau* 'five elephants or more than that'.

dēkii see *dēkáu*, esp. (d)

dēktú (v.n. *dēktà*) remove clean liquid after sediment has settled. cf. *sèpú*.

dēkú (v.n. *dēkà*) thresh chaff from grain by pounding in mortar or on ground. *mii-k dēka àa aadla bii nən, zuwak məst ii dā-gara bai* 'if a thresher isn't coughing, the wind hasn't blown over her'.

dēmbà (pl. *dēmbàbín*) the pot-herb *Gynandropsis pentaphylla* [H. gasaya].

dēmìyú (v.n. *dēmíyà*; *dēmài*; Imperative *á dēmíyí*) (1) guard, protect, be on lookout.

(2) wait on, attend. "*kwá tla-n, já tli*," *maa baaci dēmii guvu* 'when you get up, we'll go,' said the attendant of the corpse'. cf. *dēřáu*, *zàagú*.

dēmáu = *dēmú* (v.n. *dēmà*) straighten out (bent or crooked thing); become straight.

dēmú (v.n. *dēmà*) train (animals, children, etc.).

dēngà ceaseless seeking of fornication. cf. *dègzú*, *řènú*, *tàpiyú*.

dēvàarú (v.n. *dēvàarà*) threaten by pointing finger, weapon, etc. *nən dēvaare ci naamazged nən, məstee miya-w nən, à dlap-aaci* 'if someone threatens you with the butt (of a spear), then he turns the point toward you, he is going to stab you'. cf. *màdēvàaràk*.

dā (d.f. *áfā* 'head'; used only with preceding preposition and following noun phrase expressed or implied)

(1) on, on top of; onto. *àa dā adā-gaa* 'on my head'; *zənzen dà gaayi ii dā-k dayak* 'let the folktale "mount onto" the goat', i.e. "here's a tale about a goat". See also *bèmbèkshí*, *màadàngó*. cf.

déskù (2), wákà (2).

(2) concerning, about. bee nà nci ná rami aa dā-k rama-k dlugun Pa-taskamo 'what I want to say about the story of the name of Potiskum'. cf. also second ex. of (1).

(3) dā is used in a number of idiomatic ways; following are some of them:

(a) dà dā-k X 'beginning from X'. For ex., see áwáyáú (2), dédáa.

(b) verb of motion + ìi dā-k X 'go, go out, etc. to see X'. à ji ìi dā dægēm Badlɛraama 'go see the chief of B.'; dá vɛri-ngɛri ìi dā-k tɛmaaku 'he went out to see the sheep'. cf. also ex. under wàayú.

(c) wà bar ìi-cí ìi dā-gɛri 'let us show honor to him' [let us give to him to over him].

dāa (pl. dāadīn; previous reference form is dāawú)

(1)(a)(i) town, city.

(ii) dāa + plural pronoun: one's home town. d-aakshi 'his/her/their home town', d-aawa 'yours and my home town', d-aaja 'my/our home town'.

(b) country, homeland, i.e. area where one is from. cf. gágái.

(2)(as locative word; never used with a following noun phrase—cf. dédáa) on the ground, floor, etc.; down, downward. zəgɛr áa dā-n, mbiikda ye áa dāa 'if the foot is on the ground, the snake, too, is on the ground'; magaaya waka ngum ba tam, balle waaŋa ndaa vɛrkee ìi-cí ìi dāa? 'the climber of the (fruit) tree, what does he get, let alone the one to whom he throws (fruit) down?'. See also sée (B5).

(3) "it", as used in various weather constructions. dāa tlanə-ngara 'it has dawned'; dāa aayuwa 'darkness (from clouds, etc.)'. See tlanú, páák, tɛlɛramú.

(4) as object of bārú 'give' and with indirect object X: to concede that X is the winner, that X has defeated'. à bar aa dāa 'admit that I've stumped you' (e.g. with a riddle).

dādām (v.n. of dālmú) repairing, repair.

dāadúkòk (pl. dāadúkwákwín) stone for shaping grinding quern.

dāafáu (1) heat (of environment). See gāawá. cf. áfâ (2), ákâ (2).

(2) perspiration.

dágài pron. or adj. Use of dágài indicates (i) that the thing referred to has not been previously mentioned in the context but (ii) that the speaker has in mind a particular referent which meets the characteristics stated in the context; this may mean either that the speaker could pinpoint and name the actual referent, e.g. nən dágài maarəm, ndāa raura-gɛri maa Bɛndɛŋkuuku 'a certain big man was called B.', or that the speaker cannot actually pinpoint the referent but can vouch for its existence, e.g. duuta dágài àa kaluu am 'certain birds fear the water', where the speaker may not be able to cite such birds

by species, but he maintains that such birds do in fact exist and could be named if necessary. Ǿágàí can be used alone in a pronominal sense or as a noun modifier, in which case it always follows the head noun. Ǿágàí can have singular, plural, or mass referents (cf. jì-gàp). The definitions given here are based on their English glosses, but semantically the characterization above holds in all cases.

(1) a, a certain, some certain; a certain person, thing, etc.; certain people or things. Ǿayak Ǿagai 'a certain goat'; nən Ǿagai waa-řa ná tuway-naa dluḡun-gu 'a certain man whose name I have forgotten'; manga-gəri Ǿagai 'one of his friends'; wunduwa-k ndiwa Ǿagai 'some people's house'.

(2) another, other; another one, others; some X else (these meanings will obtain when previous context—either the same sentence or an earlier sentence—introduces a referent with the same characteristics as a contrasting but similar referent about to be introduced; the latter is differentiated from the former by Ǿágàí). Ǿagai buukə nən, Ǿagai Ǿaa bi 'when one lacks, another gets'; tərku shaalə mətuk mii-k Ǿagii bai 'an orphan doesn't pay attention to the death of somebody else's mother'. See iikáu (1), ìivú (1c). cf. Ǿaamā (1).

NB: See NB following gàyí (2) for further remarks on semantics of Ǿágàí. cf. Ǿágàyí.

Ǿágàyí together. wà da Ǿagayi 'let's go together'; aw-kun àa Ǿagayi bii-n ye naa aci? 'isn't your guinea corn together with his?'. cf. Ǿágàí, gàyí.

Ǿalmú (v.n. Ǿalmà; Ǿadām) = Ǿanmú (1) repair.

(2) pluck peanuts from dried vines. cf. tātəmú.

Ǿambáu small potsherd.

Ǿankú (v.n. Ǿánkà; Ǿanáak) sew.

Ǿanmú (v.n. Ǿanmà; Ǿadām) = Ǿalmú repair.

Ǿaanú (v.n. Ǿaanáu; Imperative à Ǿaanyí; see also àadán 'crying')

(1) cry, weep.

(2) cry out (in pain, etc.); howl, etc. (by an animal). dà kwaatlì aǾa-k gaskam, gaskam dà Ǿaanyí 'he scratched the rooster's head and the rooster cried out'; adeeyau áa Ǿaanau ii heeřə bai 'the fox doesn't howl for good fortune' ['where there's smoke there's fire']. See Ǿaawú (2b). cf. wərdú.

Ǿarái id. full. dá zaaci baatara dà Ǿashi ii kunu-k ciizəmi Ǿarai 'he pounded spices and poured them into the gourd (until it was) chock full'; dá ngwai dagwda ii aikwa-gəri Ǿarai 'he scooped out money in his hand (so that it was) completely full'.

Ǿarí used in âm Ǿarí water in which grain from which bran is removed has been soaked in preparation for pounding into flour.

dāarú (v.n. dāarà) (1) prepare long grass for thatching by separating into bunches. cf. tǎḥsāk.

(2) cut (meat, etc.) into long thin strips. ndāa rama-w bii-n, ngalte ndāa dāara-k rēvək ayaku ii dūkwak bai 'unless one is just talking, one has never cut up a turtle hide into a bowstring'.

dāarú (v.n. dāarà) = dāurú = rāarú = raurú call.

dāsú v.intr. (v.n. dāsù) (corresponding tr. is dāmú, q.v.) be all gone, be finished. ləman dāsə-ngara-n, anka! àa dāsú bai 'even if wealth runs out, common sense won't run out'; dəga-k dāsú-k aaman, səlke áa kaḡgun-gu bai 'the arrow of fate [of the years' being finished], chain armor will not ward it off'.

dāasú (v.n. dāasà) pour liquid, powder, etc. or drop number of small-sized articles through narrow opening, as into a narrow-mouthed gourd, a small hole, etc. dá zaaci baatara dà dāashi ii kunu-k ciizəmi 'he pounded spices and poured them into the ciizəmi-gourd'. See also sée (B2). cf. páu and other words cited there.

dāurú (v.n. daurà) = dāarú = rāarú = raurú call.

dāawú (v.n. dāawà) (1) put, place. Daada àa dāaw-aakəm ii kunu-k gadi ai 'Mother will put you into the granary'; dāaw-d ii shi dluḡwan 'they put it under the condiments'. cf. mpáu (1a).

(2)(a) dāawú X, dāawú mǎa X 'cause that X'. Səku dāawa Baraya áa garvaata bai 'God caused that B. would not reign'; doole Səku dāawu Mai Agudum áa kwarya kaa gaskam, doole kwaryu 'perforce if God causes that Mai A. will crow like a rooster, he has to crow'.

(b) dāawú X ii Y (Y being a nominalized sentence), dāawú X Y (Y being a subjunctive sentence with X as subject) 'cause X to Y'. mad- ta àa dāawa kanjau ii dāanau 'squeezing makes the (hourglass) drum make noise'; ná dāaw akshì dà yai'yi-naa kaḡee-kshì 'I made them bundle up their loads'.

dāawú definite form of dāa.

dāyāk (pl. dāyáyǎn) young male goat, castrated goat. dāyāk tǐḋ cas- trated goat obtained while girl is young and kept seven years until her marriage, when it is slaughtered as part of marriage festivities. áakù, gàbábù, sùuyá.

dāayí (pl. dāayáyǎn) coarse part of pounded flour. cf. áptâ.

dāyú v.intr. (v.n. dāyù; Imperative á dāyǎ) (1)(a) get lost. aliiba- řam naa ḡəřaazan àa tən-gu àa dāyú bai 'a needle with a thread through its eye won't get lost'. See áṭən (3), pátlá (1). cf. kkè- mú (2).

(b) disappear from view, etc. See dà (lbii).

(c) go astray, end up with an undesirable fate. See délpù, màakú (2). cf. tlàkàtú, diḋbgènú.

(2)(with transitive extension -náa, -dù) lead astray, mislead.

díyí (pl. 'yáwàwín)(cf. 'yàwú 'give birth') giving birth, birth; offspring. díyí waka 'fruit'; gaada-k metu ndaa kuri díyí bai 'just because of death, one does not refuse to (go on) bearing'.

díyú (v.n. díyà) bring fire. ná díy aka 'I brought fire'; ná díy kwan-kwaasak

dúgdú (pl. dúgdàdín) (1) adj. lame. dúgdu-k aapəno 'lame Hausa person'.

(2) n. lame person. cf. dēgàdú.

dúkwák (pl. dúkwákwín) bowstring. See dāarú (2).

dúuráawà (pl. dúuráawàwín) small type of ant [H. kiyashi]. cf. áràrfi-wà; máadəvfiro̯k, miyàakùwà.

dúutâ (pl. dúutátín) bird.

dúwák udder.

dúwàtlú v.intr. (v.n. dúwàtlù) (1) become tired. ná dúwatlə-ngaa 'I'm tired'.

(2)(with transitive extension -náa, -dù) tire out (someone, an animal, etc.).

dúwàtlù (v.n. of dúwàtlú, q.v.) tiredness. ndá dúwàtlù? 'how's the tiredness?' [standard greeting, answered náa dúwàtlù báí 'there's no tiredness'].

dúwáyú (v.n. dúwáyù) sprout, become bushy (cropped tree, etc.).

dúuyák (pl. dúuyáyín) metal, iron. See dēkáu (b).

F

féláatà (pl. féláatátín)(< K. félátà) Fula person or language.

fèná (pl. fènanín) calabash. See tàtəmú. For various types see gádá-kùwà, kámí, díágwàrú, mábú; cf. also ádíyú 'gourd plant'.

fèrá (pl. fèràrín) disease. fèra waaʔa ja dlamu, dà tli; dlamu-n aa-ku-n, sai zayat 'a disease which a dog suffers, he will recover from it; if it's a goat which suffers it, there's nothing but the slaughter'. See gáafà (1a). cf. díèrá, tístàa (1), wákáfà.

fêřdà = pêřdà

fèřfèřtú (v.n. fèřfèřtà) backbite, abuse someone when he is not pre-

sent. cf. nàangú.

fàrfàrú (v.n. fàrfàrà) = pàrpàrú roll back and forth between hands, e.g. cornstalk to start fire as in tánkà (q.v.), swizzle-stick to churn milk, etc. atu pàrpàr anyi 'she churned milk'.

fàrú (v.n. fàrá) be sick. ná fàrè-du 'I was sick'. cf. fàrá.

féskà (pl. féskákín) (< K. féskà) face. cf. jámpêl.

fètàk (pl. fètàtín) trimmings from animal's hoof. cf. kùlàařám.

fètkú (v.n. fètkà) (1) v.tr. untie, loosen. See pèřtú, tàkwsú (b).
(2) v.intr. become untied, become loose.

fètú (v.n. fètà) = p' . extract, pull one thing away from another, pull thing out (of hole, etc.); pluck feathers, etc. mpa fèna-w ii miya-gara-n, áa pèta-w kađee bai 'whenever she put the calabash to her lips, she didn't pull it away quickly'. See also àajálá, ñiyú. cf. 'yùwú, zèmtú, zàrú, pàlđú.

fák at a great distance (in time or space). nàa ya-ngaa fak 'I'm going far away'; da ña-k gusku fak nàa ñlama-k guru bai 'starting from today (until) far in the future I will not show jealousy'. See ñúřùk. cf. pódém.

fàrà (pl. fàràrín) direction. nàa ya ii buwa ii fara-w 'I'm going on a trip in the (same) direction'.

fátàwàn (< áfà 'sun, daytime' + tàwàn 'which?') when?

fátàwànké always, any time, every time; (introducing adverbial clause) whenever. rii waařa maayim ñlam bayi nèn, fatawanke áa gutka ii riyu 'wherever a boy makes a find, he always bends down there'; fatawanke gaskam ñande ñlama ii-ci samana-n, gayim àa bari-k tēka-gəri bai 'whenever, the rooster began to make conversation with him, the cat wouldn't come close'. cf. kúlúm.

fáu (cf. K. fáu, ideophone used with 'sour') (1) sour, sourness; having strong, biting taste or smell (may be pleasant or distasteful). al-basař mee hal gagii bai; daa ñlam fuu bai 'the onion didn't take on the character of the ground; otherwise it wouldn't have a pungent odor' (i.e. a child didn't take on the character of his parents). See kiiđú, sáu (2). cf. fówá, fàunú.

(2) id. emphasizing something painful, harsh. See maa (lai).

fàunú (v.n. fàunà; fàwán) smell at, sniff at. bēđlamu raakan nèn, ja ña foonyi zēgər-gu 'when the hyena takes a walk, the dog sniffs at its tracks'. cf. fáu; kēmáu (lb).

fáayín (pl. fáayàyín) wealth. cf. bēřéd, lēmàn.

fíidók id. very hot with spices.

fìlîdú (v.n. fìlîdâ) poke in ribs.

fìlîfî whistling.

fìlîfîyú (v.n. fìlîfîyà; fìlîfî) whistle.

fìikà (pl. fìikàkín) Bole person or language.

fìncèkú (v.n. fìncèkà; fìncèk) cut off a little piece of meat, etc.
on the sly. ná fìncèkè fìncèk nà bar iici 'I cut off a little piece
and gave it to him'. cf. fèdú.

fìitú (v.n. fìità) blow on; start (a fire). á fiici aka 'start the
fire'. See báí (3c), kúddèrâ. cf. fîyú.

fîyú (v.n. fîyà) blow (horn, etc.). akèr maakèr áa fiya-w bai 'the
thief of a horn does not blow it'. cf. fìitú.

fóowâ (pl. fóowâwín) stench, terrible odor. cf. fáu.

fúdú four.

fúufû (pl. fúufáfín)(? < K. fúfù) lungs.

fúulá (pl. fúulálín)(< K. félá 'cream') Fula cow's butter in balls.
See ányí (3).

fúumâ yawn.

fúrdái dancing about in happiness.

fùwàk (pl. fùwàwín) horn (of animal).

fùwú v.intr. (v.n. fùwà) (1)(a) get down. See mátíkátíkà, vèrkú (1a).
cf. zèdápú (2).

(b) alight (of birds). See zàkwaták.

(2)(used with transitizing extension, -náa, -dù) unload. cf. wèrtú.

G

g form of the Associative Linker (cf. ká) in the following environments:

(1)(a) before nouns beginning in a voiced obstruent or vowel when the
first noun ends in a vowel, e.g. sésùwá-g gávèrkà 'stalks of sorghum';
mètú-g áfèk 'wearing out [dying] of a loincloth'.

(b) optionally, in place of gá (q.v.) where the first noun ends in a
vowel and the second begins in a sonorant consonant, e.g. àwíi-g ríi-
dùwà 'leaves of beans'.

(2) obligatorily used with first person singular Associative pronoun

âa(nái)(q.v.), e.g. zàýf-g-âa(nái) 'my rope'.

gé form of Associative Linker (cf. ké) in the following environments:

(1)(a) between nouns where the first ends in a consonant and the second begins in a consonant, e.g. gùzép-gé dègèṁ 'slave of the chief'.

(b) optionally in place of g (q.v.) where the second noun begins in a sonorant consonant and the first ends in a vowel, e.g. áǎǎ-gé nèn 'head of a person'.

(2) obligatorily used with third person singular Associative pronouns rî 'his' (giving gérî) and râ 'her' (where gé assimilates to the vowel of râ, giving gârâ).

gèdèbès *adj.* (d.f. dèbès) thick, viscous.

gèdén (*pl.* gèdàncín) younger sibling (brother or sister).

gèdér gifts given at a funeral to show condolences.

gèdlǎú (*v.n.* gédǎǎ; gèdlǎǎ) praise. tai yaaye gèdlǎ Sèku bii-n, áa gèdlǎǎ-naa kabílinee-gəri 'whoever does not praise God will praise his troubles'. See áǎǎ (2a). cf. máu (2a).

gèdlú (*v.n.* gèdlà) build large fire, pile wood on fire. à ji ká gdl aka 'go and build a large fire (for roasting, etc.)'. cf. rùksú.

gèdú *v.tr.*; *intr.* counterpart is gàdú (q.v.) (*v.n.* gèjǎ) snap flexible object (rope, etc.) in two by pulling; pluck (fruit from tree, etc.). cf. kètlú, dlǎǎdú, bǎǎdú.

gèdùwàn (*pl.* gèdùwàwín) type of insectivorous bat [H. birbiro]; sometimes lives in wells, from which its name probably comes (cf. dúwà 'well').

gèjǎ (*pl.* gèjàjín) handle of axe, hoe, etc. See gǎfáú (1), kùnú.

gèjǎ (a) thirst. gèji dèma-naa yu 'I'm thirsty'.

(b) áǎm gèjǎ 'cold water'. bee waaǎ am-k aka bəne-n, am gèji áa bə-na-w naa kaanaadi-n 'what hot water will cook cold water will cook if you are patient'.

gèmə (*pl.* gèməín) (a) thigh. See sàatú. cf. mètékùs, zègér.

(b) haunch (of cow, elephant, etc.). See báu (1).

gèmsək (*pl.* gəmsək, gəmsədín)(d.f. mèsək) (1)(a) *adj.* male (human or animal). maamau gamsak 'boys'. cf. gāmà.

(b) *n.* man, male human. gaadǎ-k bəlan-gara àa səkentu ii gamsak 'because of her great beauty she acted haughtily toward men'. See háǎ (1a).

(2) he-man, hero. nən gayi dà taatkə maa aci gəmsək 'one man was going to show that he was a real man'. See mǎzəmú.

gènáǎf (pl. gènáǎǎfín) gums (in mouth).

gènanú (d.f. gènú, q.v.) go around getting, get many, get a number of times. Maina ldeŋiisa gènanu haŋaaji zəgər naa daama aa zaaman-gə afku-w 'Prince. I. collected taxes a number of times during the epoch of his father'.

gènaawà (pl. gènaawàwín) likeness, representation, appearance. bədlamu ye bəndə-naa lawan gènaawa-k ja 'the hyena also began to see the shape of a dog'; áa lawan kaayak məstee-naa gènaawa 'he saw that the squirrel had changed in appearance'. dlan gènaawa naa afku-w 'he resembles his father'.

gènú (v.n. gènyí) (1)(a) take, receive, accept (implication is that subject is active agent in taking and that circumstances of taking are under his control). atu dá gənyí gərgiya-w 'she took the bowl'. See mbàsú (4), dàŋtíú, jíbú (1b). cf. bǎu, máu, tàpáú.

(b)(with Totality extension) take and remove all of (with possible implication of stealth or force). dá gən-naa kaŋee-ja dá yvi ja gaadau 'they took all our gear and left us with nothing'.

(2) fit well; suit. zanai gənə-naayu 'the gown fits me well'; tiye naa dawa waaŋa gən aci: baabəǎ baaci garau masee-naa bədlamu 'every-one has the type of (animal) tending that suits him: the neighbor of the goat owner has bought a hyena'. See rəpíllá.

gənyì (pl. gənyànyín) penis. cf. shí (2).

gèřən (pl. gèřàǎnín)(cf. K. dùnyà gègərjín 'it thunders') thunder; lightning. cf. gèřnú.

gèràbú (v.n. gèràbù) become terrified. cf. màrwàýú.

gèràdú v.intr.; tr. counterpart is gùdlàdlú (v.n. gèràdù) wake up.

gèràfiyà (pl. gèràfiyàwín) Senegal hartebeest (*Damaliscus korrigum*) [H. dari].

géráŋ id. tight shut. See gəjàgəjà.

gèráayá jaw.

gèràyú v.intr. (v.n. gèràyù) (1) become clever; (of children) show intelligence or cleverness, show reasoning powers, become wise to the ways of the world. ja yka kutlíi-gara jibə-naa gərayu 'the dog saw that her children had begun to become aware of things'.

(2)(used with transitizing suffix -náa, -dù) gərayə-du 'he did a silly thing' [H. ya yí rishin wayo].

gèràyù (pl. gèràyàwín)(v.n. of gèràyú) cleverness.

gèřàazán (pl. gèřàazàzín)(< K. gèràsán) thread. See đáyú (1a), -n (B3a).

gèřèetú (v.n. gèřèetà)(< K. géré-jín 'put side by side, compare')

(1) come alongside, come even with. akshi áa raakan dá gēřeetai ri-k waka-w 'they were going along when they came even with the place where the tree was'.

(2) arrange in rows.

gērgìyà (pl. gērgìyàyín) small bowl used for measuring. ri naa gērgi-ya-n, ndaa ngalta naa aikwak bai 'where there's a measuring bowl, one doesn't measure with the hand'.

gērî see rî (1)

gèrîd' (pl. gèràrín) cave, hollow in tree, etc.

gèřnú (pl. gèřnà; gèřèn) (< K. gērgá-jín 'become angry') scold; shout at. dà gèřnyi ii dā-k duutatin 'she shouted at the birds (to chase them off)'. cf. gèřèn.

gérúwà (pl. gérúwàwín) gourd bottle. cf. ádíyú, gwàbò.

gēshāw = gēzhāw

gēshî (pl. gēsháshín) (1) liver.

(2) heart (but usually used in figurative sense; cf. gázáfà; kùnú (2)).

(a) gēshi-gaa áa dlam aakaarak 'I will be very happy' [my heart will make pleasure to me].

(b) ama mii-k wunya gaama-w dá banji ta-k gēshi ii tēka-k mii díy gəmsu-w 'the wife who bore the girl-child began to feel repugnance toward the one who had born the male' [... began eating heart to the body of ...].

(c) dà gēshî 'to oneself'. atu àa rama-w da gēshi-gara maa ... 'she was saying to herself that ...'.

(d) gēshî àaràwái 'happiness'. gēshi aarawai-gə akərak, tasee-w mavgi darəpta 'happiness of the thief, he has found a door open'.

(e) mỳà gēshî 'pit of the stomach'. See ngálkò, dlàkwái, řé, sàapí. cf. gēzhî, which may simply be a variant pronunciation of gēshî; kùnú (2).

(3)(in locative phrase) at the very center, deep in, the innermost part of. dà yí dāa ki gēshi-k pata dá dlam wunduwa-gəri ii riyu 'he went and looked over the heart of the bush and set up his household there'. cf. pátlâ (2).

gèvàarák (pl. gèvàaràrín) = vàarák crown bird (*Balearica pavonina*) [H. gauraka].

gèvú (v.n. gùvà) (a) trace or scratch designs on. cf. nàudú.

(b) make tribal scars.

(c) write. cf. tàřnú (1).

gèzhàn (pl. gèzhàzhín)(cf. K. gújàn 'monitor') Nile monitor [H. guza].
bee waaŋa ta-naa gèzhan nən, áa yva-k mugba bai 'anything which eats
a Nile monitor will not leave a grey monitor alone'. cf. mùgbá.

gèzhǎw (pl. gèzhúwàwín) = gèshǎw star.

gèzhî (pl. gèzházhî) (a) anger. ma-naa gèzhi 'he became angry'.
(b) gèzhî-k X gádîmàták (nàa Y) 'X harbors ill feelings (toward Y)'.
See gádîmàták (b).

gèzhî (pl. gèzhàzhín) poor quality millet heads. gèzhi áa vèra aa ku-
nu-k zadak 'poor millet comes up along with the good'.

gá- (usually accompanied by suffixed -ák) can be prefixed to virtually
all intransitive and most (?) transitive verbs to derive adjectives
having a past passive participle sense; the form of the verb used is
usually the verbal noun with the final vowel replaced by -ák, though
there are many exceptions. See below, words beginning in gá- for
examples.

gá see gé (2)

gâa see âa(nái) (2)

gábáŕzái a boil. See tǝŕdú. cf. dǝŕənkú, díáyá, mátlâ, vèrà.

gàabá (pl. gàabàbín)(? < H. gàabáa) enmity. See dǝlpu (2).

gàabábù (pl. gàabàbín) = gàbùzùrú billy-goat. cf. áakù, díáyák, sùu-
yá; bábl.

gàbàgá (pl. gàbàgàgín) narrow strip of white, hand-woven cloth; the
strips are sewn together to make gowns, etc.

gàbáakúgâw (pl. gàbáakúgâwàwín)(< Gàbáakáu (man's name) + âw 'guinea
corn') earwig.

gàbàntlínáw (< K. bàntənè 'mist (in the cold season)') haze.

gàbàayí adj. (pl. gàbàayàyín)(d.f. bàayí, q.v.) having the status of
a bàayí (q.v.). áa tfu gabaayi dá vèri gagəzbu 'he enters like a
bàayí and comes out as a slave'.

gàbdú (v.n. gábdá; gábád) admonish, warn. ja dà gab'yi-naa maamuu-gara
maa ... 'the dog warned her children, saying ...'.

gàbùzùrú (pl. gàbùzàràrín)(? < H. bunsúru) = gàabábù billy-goat. cf.
áakù.

gàbđámák adj. (pl. gábdàmámín)(d.f. bđdàmú) rebellious, cocky.

gábfíwà (pl. gábfíwàwín) Indian hemp plant (*Hibiscus cannabinus*) [H.
rama]. gábfíwà àayùwà, gábfíwà àaràwái varieties of hemp. cf.
'yàŕàŕà.

gàabíyǎw (pl. gàabíyàwàwín) pumpkin (*Cucurbita pepo*) [H. kabewa].

gábshú *adj.* (pl. gábsháawín) ugly.

gácáařé just now. cf. gùsésékú.

gàcùfèràk (pl. gàcùfèràrín) measles.

gàdék'yík (pl. gàdék'yàwín) the twining plant *Momordica balsamina* called "balsam apple" [H. garafuni]. See lórgííd, lùbùutú.

gádèřà (pl. gádèřàrín) pond, lake. cf. ánkú, gúmbàk, wúfíyâ.

gàadéří (pl. gàadéřáarín) worn down hoe blade, rehafted and used for clearing new land, hoeing up grass, etc. ndà òera-naa wana-k sèkwai naa kè gaadéří 'one must keep separate the work of the sickle and that of the gaadéří-hoe'. cf. kùrám, dàbí, gàmráaríyàk.

gáadàgù (pl. gáadàgàgàwín) rat, mouse [H. òera]. See làunú (1). cf. díágáí, kùrkúm.

gàdàgúř *adj.* hard, tough, uncuttable.

gádáagùrì (pl. gádáagùràrín) syphilis.

gádákùwà (pl. gádákùwàwín) small calabash for eating mush. See jàawà-sú. cf. dógóná; fèná.

gádámúuzáí (pl. gádámúuzázín) ? possibly striped hyena (*Hyaena hyaena*); Hausa terms given were ambulí and kure. cf. bèdlámú, dàmbáadiègúř.

gádáavà (cf. K. dǎvù 'mid') (1) middle. gardè gadaava-k dèm 'he notched the wood in the middle'.

(2)(as locative word) among, between. saw Canduwa àa gadaav-aakshi 'there was C. among them'. cf. wíitâ.

(3) that which exists or is found between X and Y. munen manga! ga-daav-aawa bantè-naa kaa saw! 'oh, my friend! we are too close friends for me to act like that' [between us surpasses thus].

gádàawánák fool. cf. kàakáabú.

gàdbàyák *adj.* (pl. gàdbàyàwín)(d.f. dèbàyú) fat.

gádlèbgènák *adj.* (pl. gádlèbgènàrín)(d.f. dlèbgènú) foolish; fool. cf. kàakáabú.

gádlègwàdák *adj.* (pl. gádlègwàdàrín)(d.f. dlègwàdú) rotten, spoiled, rancid; rotten, spoiled, or rancid smelling. See dàamú (2).

gádlèmàták *adj.* (pl. gádlèmàtàrín)(d.f. dlèmàtú) (a) ruined, spoiled, irreparable.

(b) gèzhi-k X gadlèmatàk (naa Y) 'X harbors ill feelings (toward Y)'.

saapi yaaye gəzh-aakshi gadlɛmatak naa ama-w 'he and his wife would always have ill feelings toward each other'.

gádlâ (pl. gádládíín) zana-mat, i.e. a mat plaited as in gəunú (q.v.), often from the grass mādībák, and used as a screen, roof, etc. cf. búucí, díáaráu, mádāmbá, gəlāagā.

gədlái (pl. gədládíín) granary above the ground; it is formed like a huge basket plaited like a zana-mat (gádlâ), set on a wooden stand above the ground and covered with a conical thatched top; grain may be stored in the form of bundles of the entire millet or sorghum heads, or as loose grain removed from the head; in the latter case, the gədlái is smeared on the outside with cow dung to prevent leakage. See kúnú (1), nìyú (1b). cf. bəzəm, dáatəffidök.

gəadootú (v.n. gəadootà; gáadò)(< H. gəadāa, 2nd v.n. gəadò) inherit.

gədú v.intr.; tr. counterpart is gədú, q.v. (v.n. gádú) snap in two (flexible object such as rope, etc.); snap off (fruit off tree, etc.); break loose (something tied or attached by rope, etc.). tlaadin gadə-n-aakshi 'the cattle broke loose'. See ápsəw, kəmau (2). cf. tatlú.

gəadú (v.n. gáadà) (1) bite.

(2) v.intr. bark (dog). ja áa tka gaada 'the dog is barking'.

gəduukà (d.f. duukà 'horse') hobbling two side feet of animal. gəduukà náa gəkwáařá 'hobbling two side feet and two front feet of animal, leaving only one hind foot free'. cf. gəkwáařá; tərǫfú.

gádúwà (pl. gádúwəwín) Grimm's or crested duiker (*Sylvicapra grimmia*) [H. gada].

gəḍəbàdlák (pl. gəḍəbàdládíín)(d.f. ḍəbàdlú) bent.

gəadā this word is attached to whatever follows by the associative linker ké (q.v.) in one of its reduced forms (cf. -k, -g, -gé); if the complement of gəadā is understood from previous context, gəadā may simply add the previous reference marker 'w (q.v.), e.g. ndà mpi kambi gaada-w 'one sets aside a storage calabash because of that'. The division into (1) and (2) basically follows the English translations; however, the real difference is that the phrases in (1) have the entire remainder of the sentence as their scope, i.e. they explain why that state of affairs is as it is, while the phrases in (2) have only the verb or verb phrase of the main clause in their scope, i.e. they state a purpose for which the subject of the main clause performed the action. This difference in scope is seen, first, by the fact that if the main clause is negative, the negative marker báí follows the phrases of (2), but the phrases of (1) follow báí (cf. first and second examples of (1a) and first example of (2a)), and second, by the fact that the phrases in (1) can freely be brought to the beginning of the sentence (cf. third example of (1a)) while those of (2) cannot be.

(1)(a)(with full sentence of any type) because. *kwarbə gwadanu bai gaada kuram tatle-ngara* 'he didn't hoe peanuts because his hoe broke'; *ta aben bai gaada aci ngaa bai* 'he didn't eat food because he wasn't well'; *gaada degem zada-ngeri da badiici naanma ganga* 'because the chief had arrived, they began drumming'; *wa dlagda-naawa ii kunu-k pata gaada-k devu naa vayak* 'let's cut through the bush because the road makes a wide swing'.

(b)(with noun phrase) because of, on account of, due to. *ja rawa bai gaada bedlamu gayi tak* 'we didn't run away because of just one hyena'; *na teke-naa bedlamu gaada namboo nta-w* 'I killed the hyena because of dislike for it'. See *matlkatlkâ*.

(c)(often, but not always, with clause final *-n*, q.v.) just because, just because of. *nən waaŋa ndaa ziida-du, gaada-k nda karmə-naa zə-gər-gu-n, aa shaalu bai* 'a person that is going to be executed, just because they cut off his foot, he's not going to pay attention'; *gaada-k rəvək juwak nən maazam aa dlama-k kuutoo bai* 'just for the sake of a fly's skin a blacksmith will not work his bellows'; *gaada-k jaka tku kaa demuu raakan bai!!* 'just because of that bag you can't walk!?!'.

(d)(with negative clause and ending in *-n*, q.v.) were it not that, were it not for. *gaada Gankiyaw aa ngwaasa bii-n, aa bar ii-kun basa* 'were it not that Gankiyaw is miserly, he would give you a loan'; *gaada-k tla bii-n, faaŋiinok aa bii vaviŋ bai* 'were it not for the cow, the cattle egret wouldn't get ticks'. See *daa* (1b), last ex. cf. *baya* (1).

(e)(with negative clause in Second Subjunctive) lest. *na sa-naa sə-ma gaada-k ka sa bai* 'I drank up the beer lest you drink it'.

(f) for the sake of. *sadaka gaada Kaakasku* 'alms for the sake of God'.

(g) *gaada-gə mōo* 'why?' (q.v.).

(2)(a)(with sentence in Subjunctive) in order that. *veru gaada-k da shi səma bai* 'he didn't go out in order to drink beer' (implication is that he *did* go out for some other reason, or else it is a simple statement that he did nothing related to this subject; it *cannot* mean that he refrained from going out so that he might stay home to drink beer); *na dlam kaa sau gaada-k ka yvi guru* 'I did that so you would quit being jealous'.

NB: In purpose phrases in the Subjunctive, *gaada* is usually omissible, e.g. *bar aa kaŋgun na dlam 'yale* 'he gave me medicine so that I would feel better'.

(b)(with noun phrase) for the purpose of. *da yvi da-gara rap ii veda gaada-k lawan* 'she left her eye exposed a little for the purpose of seeing'. See *naanadŋ*. cf. *ii* (7).

gaada-gə mōo why? [because of what?]. *kaa dlam aa kaa sau gaada-gə mōo?* 'why do you treat me like that?'. cf. *gaada* (1).

gaadau used in constructions of the form *X gaadau* where *X* is a noun phrase

(a)(*X* is subject, *gaadau* is predicate) *X* is/was empty. *səsuu-ci gaa-*

dau 'your hut is empty'. See dākáu (c).

(b)(gàadāu is direct modifier of X) empty X, unaccompanied X. sai gēraazan gaadāu 'there was just an empty string'; aikwak gaadāu āa ma aka bai 'a bare hand doesn't pick up fire'; dà tashi awuk gaadāu 'he found a bare bone'.

(c)(gàadāu expresses the condition of X, but in terms of constituency it functions as a sort of adverbial) empty, empty-handed. iiva miya gaadāu, āa nii-naa kēmuu-k maya 'leaving the mouth empty brings a feeling of hunger'; dá yvi ja gaadāu 'he left us empty-handed'. See gátéràbák.

gāddlú v.intr. (v.n. gāddlíf) belch. dāa ji gāddli 'he let out with a belch'.

gàfà, gāafà (1) if (precedes clause; may be used with either regular or concessive conditional clauses). gaafa kwá yka-naa aci-n, kwá ndēm aci 'if you see him, greet him'; gafa ná ba-naa aaywa yaaye, nà ncu 'even if I get a dark-skinned (wife), I would like her'. (NB: gāfà is not required in such contexts and in fact is rarely used; cf. 'n, kwàya, yàayé (2).

(2) day of. gafa-k aasek talaatē-n, nàa ya 'on the day of the Tuesday market, I'll come'. cf. gāafà.

gāafà, gáfà (1)(a) day (in the sense of a point in time, a calendar date, rather than a time period of fixed length (cf. yùwàn) or the period of daylight (cf. áfà)).

(b)(used alone or with dāgài, q.v.) some day (unspecified day in the future). sée gāafà = sée gāafà dāgài 'see you later' [until someday]; maayim, suu fēr-aaci-n, gaafa kàa mtu 'my boy, if that's your sickness, someday you're going to die'; kaakənai duukakin-gu dà kalakta sai gaafa 'the rest of the horses should return only on some other day'. See 'n (Blf).

(c)(with or without gàyí) one day (specific day in the past not further specified). gaafa gayi aci dá tuway-naa tausa-w 'one day he forgot to lock up'; gaafa Berni Gazargamau āa waaya-ngara 'one day B.G. was on the point of dispersing'.

(d)(with referential marker) that day (specific day referred to). See kácáu.

(e) day. See táu (1b).

(2) day of. ndāa taana-k zhigom gafa-k tleri 'one remembers the warrior on the day of battle'; gafa-k Laaduwa gafa-k gayi naa tēfa-k Disemba '(the day of) Sunday the first day in the month of December'. See dēbsú, sùwán. cf. gāfà.

gàfáu (v.n. gáfà) (1) grasp, hold stationary object. nən maa aa nta-naa gawa-n, à gaf ii-ci gaju 'if somebody says he is going to swallow an ax, hold the handle for him'. cf. jìbú (1b), kùyú, řòotú (a).

(2)(a) hold out, extend.

(b) atu gafa-ngara 'her (pregnant) belly has begun to swell'.

gàftà used in gàftà tíyú 'the day before yesterday'.

gàgèràyák *adj.* (*pl.* gágèràyàucín, gágèràyáyín)(*d.f.* gèràyú) clever; smart alecky. taataru gagèrayak, kambuudi áa jiba-w aa wura-w 'as for a clever dove, a trap will catch her by the neck'.

gàgèzbú (*d.f.* gùzép) having the status of a slave. See gàbàayí.

gágèzhìn (*pl.* gágèzhìzhín)(*d.f.* gázáu) remainder, rest of. gaagèzhin aw-kun áa mbasu kèlappiya 'the rest of your grain will be safe' [... will sit in good health]. cf. káakénàì.

gágádák *adj.* (*pl.* gágádín)(*d.f.* gádú) snapped off, severed.

gágái (*pl.* gágágin) (1) earth, soil, the ground. ndàa tamtla-k gagai bau ndá nmamiyi 'one will mix up red clay and form a ball of it'. See fáu, gùutú.

(2) country, area. gagii-k Bauci 'the Bauchi area'; suu ye dlaɓa gagii-ci 'this too has become your land'. cf. dāa (1b), lārdì.

gàgdú (*v.n.* gágdā; gágád) chew off, e.g. corn off cob.

gàgúzbú (*pl.* gágúzbàbín) = gágèzbú (*q.v.*)

gàgwén *adj.* (*pl.* gágwvànín, gágwvànín) = gávgun short.

gàjàgàjà *id.* all snarled up. Riddle: gàjàgàjà góráŋ! 'it's all snarled up and it's closed tight', Answer: bii cima miya mavgi 'thing for closing a compound doorway' (gàjàgàjà here refers to the shrub gwágúf (*q.v.*) which is thorny and is used for fences or door closures).

gàjàvǝr (*pl.* gàjàvǝràǝín) hornet [H. rina].

gàjàawàsák *adj.* (*pl.* gájàawàsàsín)(*d.f.* jàawàsú) thin.

gájáyák *n.* or *adj.* (*pl.* gájáyáyín)(*d.f.* jàayú (2)) one who has taken potions to become invulnerable.

gàkwáaǝá (*d.f.* kwáaǝá) hobbling two front feet of animal. á tǝrpi ga-kwaaǝa 'hobble its front feet'. cf. gádùukà; tǝrfú.

gàlàadímà (*pl.* gàlàadímámín)(*< K.* gáltímà) "quartermaster".

gàlàagà (*pl.* gàlàagàgin) fence made of a zana-mat (gádla). cf. dárágà, dàrdàǝr, kàstà.

gálâp durbar, galloping of several horsemen.

gàamà (*pl.* gàamád)(*d.f.* ámà) (a) *adj.* female (person, animal, etc.). sàurák gàamà 'mother-in-law'; máamau gàamád 'girls'; gâazá gàamà 'hen'. cf. gèmsèk.

(b) *n.* woman, female human being.

gàmádliyak *adj.* and *adv.* of manner (*pl.* gàmádliyáyín)(*d.f.* mádíawàì) secretly, surreptitiously. ja áa lawan bédlamu gamadliyak 'the dog was watching the hyena out of the corner of his eye'.

gàamàná *adj.* (*pl.* gàmànàníń)(*d.f.* àamán) (used with inanimates) old (preferably used in prenominal position). gaamana-k duwa 'old well'. cf. gwàngùràk, gámánák.

gámánák *adj.* (*pl.* gámánánín)(*d.f.* mànú) a year old. cf. gàmàná.

gàmbàgàdlám (*pl.* gàmàgàdlàdlámín) giant rat (*Cricetomys gambianus*) [H. gafiya]. See mákúrl.

gàmbàrá (*pl.* gàmbaràrín) okra (*Hibiscus esculentus*) [H. kubewa].

gámàsák *adj.* (*pl.* gámàsàsín)(*d.f.* mbàsú) well-off financially, etc. cf. dámàsù.

gàmđàyá (*pl.* gàmđayáyín) arguing, contradiction, dispute (can be used as object of dlámú or táu). dlan-naakshi gamđaya 'they argued with each other'; nàa ta gamđaya kera bai 'I'm not arguing about whether there was a theft or not'. See pèrshí. cf. tíáawúrá.

gámpàaták *adj.* (*pl.* gámpàatátín)(*d.f.* ñpàatú) useful.

gàmráariyak (*pl.* gàmráariyáyín) completely worn out hoe blade. maazam áa ruwai naa gamraariyak 'the balcksmith farms with an old hoe blade', i.e. he uses an old blade traded to him for a new one in order to save money. cf. dàbí, kùrá, gàadéří.

gàmsàk *pl.* of gèmsèk 'male; man'.

gàmsú (*v.n.* gámsà; gámás) (1) *v.intr.* laugh. viida dlan gamas, dayak maa, "nana káa gamas?" 'the hare laughed (made a laugh), and the goat said, "why are you laughing?"'.

(2) *v.tr.* laugh at. "kwáa gamas-gə moo?"; akshi maa, "jàa gamas-ci" 'what are you laughing at?'; they said, "we are laughing at you"'.

gàmták *adj.* and *adv.* of manner (*pl.* gàm-tátín)(*d.f.* mètú) dead. See dàgàmú.

gán *id.* tight against. katəru wum, gwabo gan! dá jibə-naa miya vəkshigara 'when she jumped, gan! the gourd stuck fast to her anus'.

gānái see āa(nái) (2)

gándəřvú (*pl.* gándəřvávín) open space within a compound. gándəřvu-k bédlamu, ja áa ya ii səkokuya bai 'the hyena's compound, a dog won't go there to pass the time of day'. cf. pátátá.

gándàagèmək *adj.* (*pl.* gándàagèmàmín)(*d.f.* ndàagèmú) joined.

gándára used in agut-geri dlam ii-ci gandara 'he is going deaf'.

gángám *adj.* (*pl.* gángàamín) (1) small. gàskám gángám 'small rooster'.
cf. jíííííí.

(2)(used with relations) younger, junior. mii gángám 'younger maternal aunt'. cf. gázgàrà (2a).

gáanyà late morning. gáanyà màarém 'well into late morning'. cf. pé-dák.

gàn'yamm *id.* sprawled out. dà yi dá vèji ii baaka gàn'yamm 'he went and lay down off to the side gàn'yamm'.

gáptâ (*pl.* gáptátín) (1)(a) shoulder.

(b) shí gáptâ 'armpit'. cf. 'yúwâ (2).

(2) wing. See díàbgènú (b). cf. màvaktàk.

(3) branch of a tree.

gàréfka (*pl.* gàréfkaáín) = gávérkà, gávérkà (q.v.)

gàrà see rà (1)

gárádlák *adj.* (*pl.* gárádládlín)(d.f. řàdlú) wet. ama-w iika řavək gařadlak naa vèđau 'the woman saw the skin was wet with urine'.

gàráu = gàrùwáu = gàrùwàwín *pl.* of áakù 'goat'.

gàrbàcá = gárvàcá (q.v.)

gàřďú (*v.n.* gářďá; gářďá) (1)(a) *v.tr.* cut notch in. See gádâavá (1).

(b) *v.intr.* be notched. waka-w gařďa-ngeri 'the tree is cut at its base and is ready to topple'.

(2) become powerful, become prosperous.

gàarì (*pl.* gàaràrín)(cf. H. gàarè 'gown without gusset') man's gown.
cf. zánàí.

gàrmú (*v.n.* gármà; gáram) give alms to, pay homage to. kàa garma-k kak-aakem 'you will pay homage to your ancestors'.

gářtíà *id.* strong in taste, bitter or sour. ndá sa sèma aa mēduwa-g Adamu gařtíà 'beer was drunk at Adamu's house and was it sour!';
bee tku ðegwaagwak gařtíà! 'is this thing bitter!'. cf. ðegwáagwàk.

gàrú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* gáru) (1) grow old.

(2)(of things) wear out. See gátář (2).

gàarú (*pl.* gàaràrín)(< K. gáru 'wall') any mud wall, esp. wall around a town. aci da-naa gaaru ii Maamēdo 'he built the town wall at Mamudo'. cf. dáu (3).

gárvà (*pl.* gárvàvín) (1) reign, chieftainship, emirate, duties of a chief. dà ci kēma naa dlama ii-kshi garva 'he continued ruling over

them' [... doing to them reigning]. See also *dëkáu* (a), *màrwàýú*, *zègáu* (2). cf. *kěrmái*.

(2) palace of chief, emir, *mái*. See *átén* (3), *jířì* (ldii).

(3) chief, emir, *mái*. *garvaucín naa nda-k awayau* 'chiefs and (other) powerful people'. See also *dàptú* (1).

cf. *dègèm*, *mái*.

gàrvàcá = *gàrbàcá* yesterday.

gàrvàatú (v.n. *gàrvàatà*; *gàrvà*, q.v.) rule, lead, reign; become emir or *mái*. See *daawú* (2a), *sháidà*.

gáasâ (pl. *gáasásín*) hairy type of dog. cf. *jă*.

gáskâi (pl. *gáskákín*) roan antelope (*Hippotragus equinus koba*) [H. gwamki].

gàskám (pl. *gàskàamín*) rooster. cf. *gâazâ*.

gàtěr (pl. *gàtěrǎřín*) (1) impression in ground. *gàtěr zègér* 'foot tracks'.

(2) place, especially place where person or thing is settled in or accustomed to being. *mbasu gătěr gayi áa nii-naa garu-k afék* 'sitting in one place brings on the wearing out of a loin cloth'; *gătěr daraga áa buuka-k jøjəm bai* 'the place where a thorn fence enclosure is will not lack thorns'. See *máu* (1). cf. *těnyí*, *rài*.

gátěrǎbák adj. (pl. *gátěrǎbǎbín*) (d.f. *těrǎbú*) decayed, rotten. *gátěrǎbák yaanau dëka-naa miya gaadau* 'decayed teeth are better than an empty mouth'.

gàtākàs (pl. *gàtākàsàsín*) (d.f. *tākwsú*) fetters. cf. *těrřú*.

gátátlák adj. (d.f. *tátlú*) broken, smashed. See *íkáu* (1).

gátkásà seven.

gàtkáu (used with a suffixed plural pronoun)... selves, each other. *Maamēdo naa Daawura bai áa shawar ii gatkū-kshí* 'all Mamudo and Dawura were advising each other'.

gàatlégdàdǎř (pl. *gàatlégdàdǎřǎřín*) black scorpion. cf. *wũřjí*.

gàatlá adj. (pl. *gàatlàtíín*) (1) raw, uncooked. See (4) below.

(2) (of plants or wood) green, i.e. not dried up, ripe, etc. *dəm gaatla* 'green wood'; *adiyu, guvu-w gaatla-n daan dà 'yawí* 'a gourd, its stem is green, it will produce (gourds)'; *aayaw dlamē-ngara gaatla* 'the figs are green/not ripe'.

(3) moist, fresh. *tla dlam shuu gaatla* 'the cow did fresh shit'.

cf. *tłǎřót* with meanings (1)-(3).

(4) ill-considered, "half-baked". *gaatla-gaatla-k bii-k ta dëka-naa*

rama gaatl'a 'half-baked food is better than half-baked talk'.

gátlák *adj.* (d.f. tláú) standing. Mai Bəzhək kəlum ankał-gəri gatlak
'Mai Buzhuk was always upset' [... his "sense" was standing].

gátlákáták *adj.* (pl. gátlákàtátín)(d.f. tlàkàtú) ruined, deteriorated.

gátláatlàrák *adj.* (pl. gátláatlàràrín)(d.f. tlàatlàrú) swollen.

gàtlíyámák (pl. gátlíyámámín) quiver (for arrows).

gàudák *adj.* (pl. gàuđáđín)(d.f. wèđú) hard; dry.

gàunú (v.n. gáunà; gàwán) plait a zana-mat (gádlâ), a gádlái-granary,
etc. by laying stands of grass across each other. cf. càakáu, nèmú
(4), təkú (5).

gavərka (pl. gavərkakín) = garəfka sorghum (*Sorghum bicolor*) [H. dawa].
cf. ángàabà, áw; dàashà.

gávdák *adj.* (pl. gávdádín)(d.f. vèđú) lying down. cf. dāvèjǝ.

gávgún = gágwvón (q.v.)

gáwâ (pl. gáwáwín) axe. See gáfáu (1), kùmú, ràvènú.

gāawá (1)(used as a quantifier on a noun) many, much; many of, much of.
As with numerals, the plural form of the noun is not required, though
it is possible, e.g. kənasaf gaawa 'many victories'; gāawá always
follows the head noun, but it may precede or follow demonstratives,
which will affect the scope of gāawá and hence its interpretation;
daawawin tku gaawa 'many of these pots', but daawawin gaawa tku 'these
many pots'.

(2)(as predicate to nominal subject) numerous, of large quantity.
dləgamau maarem nən, kakəra-gəri ye gaawa 'if a camel is big, his
load too will be big'.

(3)(as adverb) a lot, very, in great quantity. đaafau dlame-ngara
gaawa 'it's very hot'; ndaawa capte-naakshi gaawa 'the people gather-
ed en masse'.

(4)(as noun) the majority, most. gaawa ndiwa 'most people'.

gáwáyák, gáawáyák *adj.* (pl. gáwáyáyín, gáawáyáyín)(d.f. wáyú) sated
with food; well-fed. maamau tku gawayak 'these children are well
filled out'.

gàyáimá (pl. gàyáimámín)(< K. ?) a woman who has a special relation-
ship with the boy who is to become mǎi (q.v.); she is chosen from
among his relatives while they are both children; she takes a large
part in his marriage and acts as his "double" during the first seven
days of his chieftainship.

gáyí (1) one (numeral used in enumeration). gəma-k jaunak gayi 'one
elephant haunch'; anyi-k wuri gayi 'milk worth one cowrie'. cf.

kádén.

(2)(a)(used in referring to a specific thing) one. gaafa gayi 'one day'; gayi da kunu-k kutlil-k ja 'one of the dog's children'; nenga-yi dá mbashi aa Nguru-gu, nən gayi dá mbashi aa Kayaari 'one man (mentioned in previous context) settled at Nguru, one man settled at Kayari'. See gáafà (1b).

(b)(i)(as a modifier to a noun phrase where the definite marker (q.v.) is attached either to the noun or to gàyí) one of the set which the noun refers to; the other or remaining one from the set which the noun refers to. á jib ii-wa jaka-w gayi 'take one of the bags for us'; Bəndəfkuku dá gɔj ii-ci gəma-w gayi 'B. cut off the other haunch for him'. See káakénàí.

(ii) gayu (< gàyí-w) 'the other one, the remaining one'. dá tadai gayu 'she dropped the last one'.

NB: There is some semantic overlap between gàyí as exemplified in (2) and dágàí (q.v.), e.g. gayi da kunu-k manga-gəri and manga-gəri dágai 'one of his friends' appear to be equivalent. However, they differ in that gàyí is used only to refer to members of a set which are known from previous context. While dágai could also refer to a member of such a set, gàyí gives more of a sense of particularity, e.g. nən dágai would mean 'some man, a man', nən gàyí would mean 'one man, a particular man'. Dágai and only dágai can be used in a non-specific or non-particular sense; this can be seen in the difference between gáafà dágai 'some (unspecified) day' (usually in the future) and gáafà gàyí 'one (particular) day' (usually in the past); this difference in specificity is also seen in cases like gàyí ... gàyí 'one ... the other' and dágai ... dágai 'one ... another/others'.

(3)(a) the same, one and the same. bəlamu naa ja vəd-aakshi gayi 'the dog and the hyena lived in the same quarter (of town)'; akshi aa ta-w áa fəna gayi bai 'they won't eat from the same calabash'. See àaràwái (2), àudú (2), hál (1a).

(b) X naa Y gàyí, X gàyí naa Y 'X and Y are the same'.

(c) ɓakumak, miya-w gayi-n, daan dá jibi jəjəm 'tweezers, if the two sides are correctly aligned [if the mouth is one], they will grasp a thorn'.

(d) íi míyá gàyí 'together'. See mìyá (3a).

gáyim (pl. gáyáyin) = pàatú cat.

gàayú (v.n. gáayà) (1)(a) v.tr. climb.

(b) v.intr. (i) climb, do climbing. nàa gaaya-ngaa 'I'm going to climb up'. See ràvənú.

(ii) be climbable. see naa zayi bíi-n àa gaaya bai 'unless there's a rope, it's not climbable'.

(2)(a) v.tr. mount on a horse. tiye gaayə duuka-k "nàa zəgaya-n" áa ndaagəmə-ngəri naa kabiine 'anyone who mounts the horse of "had I only known" will run up against trouble'.

(b) v.intr. do riding. nàa gaayi-ngaanai íi duuka 'I'm going riding

on a horse'.

(3) v.tr. attack. da senu fak, Daawura gaaye Patiskum wam bai 'from then for a long time, Dawura didn't attack Potiskum again'.

NB: The intransitive uses seem to be the preferred forms for each of the "meanings" above.

gázâ (v.n. of gázáu, q.v.) having one's fortune told. ká j ii gaza bí? 'did you go get your fortune told?'.

gáazá (pl. gáazádín) hen. See báu (3). cf. gaskám; káakáatèřám.

gázábì (pl. gázábàbín) black kite (*Milvus migrans*) [H. shirwa].

gázáfà (pl. gázáfàfín) heart. cf. geshî (2).

gázákáu (pl. gázákàkín) = yáabî arrow poison. cf. sorkâ.

gázáu (v.n. gázâ) (1) do fortune telling with sand.

(2)(with ventive) have one's fortune told as in (1). ná gazee-du 'I had my fortune told'.

gázáu v.intr. (v.n. gázù) (1)(a) remain, remain over, be left over, be left. am kaarak naa sa-n, aa gazu aa fena bai 'if water is good to drink, it won't be left in the calabash'; ndiwa gaza gaawa bai 'not many people were left'; gaza-n ká nkalcí ad-aaci 'that you watch out for yourself is what remains' (this example has a focussed sentential subject).

(b)(i)(used without overt subject or complement) it's not done, there's some left.

(ii)(with direct object complement) there is a remainder of. gaza raakan nawa gayi 'there is a remainder of one day's travel'. cf. gágèzhìn.

(2) gázá řáp, dàa X 'X almost happened'. gaza řap, daa ná dee bai 'I almost didn't come'. See dàa (1b), tādú (1).

gâzběř (pl. gâzbàarín) (1) adj. tall; long; deep. waka gazběř 'tall tree'; duwa gazběř 'deep well'. See pèřshí.

(2) n. height; length; depth. kunamu waařa đeka-naa kaakenii-gu ii gazběř 'a fan palm which exceeds the others in height'. cf. dāatì.

gázgàrà (pl. gázgàràucín) (1)(a) adj. old, elderly (in reference to persons). nèn gázgàrà or gázgàrà-k nèn 'old man'. cf. gāamáná; gwàngùràk (1).

(b) n. old man or woman, esp. a person who is respected because of the knowledge and experience accrued with age. náa tēka-k tabtia-w da rii-k gazgaraucín 'I have been making inquiries from older people (to learn of olden times)'. cf. gwàngùràk (2).

(2)(used with relations) (a) adj. elder, senior. mii gázgàrà 'elder maternal aunt'; wèn gázgàrà 'eldest son'. cf. gágám (2).

(b) *n.* older brother or sister. cf. dàadá (2).

gázgàyák *adj.* (*pl.* gázgàyáyín)(*d.f.* zègáu) well-known.

géegè (*pl.* géegàgín)(*< K.* gégè) side-whiskers. cf. màrí.

gíinà *adv.* lying on the back (generally used in conjunction with some form of the verb vèdú, *q.v.*). vèdè giina 'he lay down on his back'; ná tas aci davji giina 'I found him lying on his back'. See tàatkú.

góo *prep.* (1) there is/are/was/were no. mēsə-gara, goo labař 'as for her husband, there was no news'. (NB: in this usage, góo X is equivalent to nàa X báí or X nàa báí. See nàa (2b).) cf. nàa (2).

(2) without. zaaman Mai Maadi dá benci goo zha 'Mai Madi's time passed without war'; bee goo zəgər 'something without any feet'; Mai Badaayo naa duukakin kəri kaḏa-gəri goo kə nda-gəri 'Mai Badaayo had horses of his own, not counting those of his people'. cf. nàa (1).

(3) have no. ii goo duuka 'I don't have a horse' (= ii naa duuka bai). cf. nàa (3).

gòodòotú (for some speakers gòodú) *v.intr.* (*v.n.* gòodòotà)(*< K.* gòdè-jín or H. góodèe) thank. ná goodootə-ngaa naa ci 'I thank you'.

góomāk (*pl.* góomám|n) = gwámāk ram. cf. tèmàakú.

góorò (*pl.* góoràrín)(*< K.* or H. góorò) kola nut(s).

-gú see ʼw

gùbəs (*pl.* gùbàzàzín) warthog (*Phacochoerus aethiopicus*) [H. mugun da-wa].

gùbàdú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* gùbàdù) (used with nàa ráwà 'with running') rush. dá gubaji naa rawa 'he took off at a run'.

gùbàmtú (*v.n.* gùbàmtà) swell up. cf. tìàatlàrú, wùsú.

gùbdú (*v.n.* gùbdā; gùbdē) beat, hit, thrash. Riddle: wunya àa ya ii vèda mēsə-gara-n, sai gubdē miyu 'when the girl goes to her husband's house, she must beat her mother' (answer is kúnāmú because when the fruit of the fan palm falls, it hits the trunk of the tree). See řànkátà (a). cf. dàdgú, kkəmú; nàanmú.

gùbú (*v.n.* gùbà) soak (herbs, etc. to make medicine). ná guḃə kwařgun 'I brewed some medicine'.

gùdá (*pl.* gùdàdín) a type of special mush kneaded in oil and eaten on special occasions. cf. māsàná, shár.

gùdáf *v.n.* of gùdvú

gùdlèdlìř (*pl.* gù(dlè)dlèdlìrín) lower back. See dèbú. cf. àkáu, wùrzú, gùdlèř.

gùdlèř (pl. gùdlèdlèřín) bark of tree which is dry and loose. gudlèř-gudlèř-gə dəm: ká yka ci-n, ká muw-du, ká nuuci-du; mama tkə ci-n, ká taanyi-du (rhythmic song) 'old bark of the tree: if you see it, you belittle it and pass it by; (but) when the cold season hits you, you remember it'. cf. wúrzú (2a); gùdlèdlèř.

gùdlàdlú v.tr.; intr. counterpart is gèràdú (v.n. gùdlàdlà) wake up.

gùdú (pl. gùdàdín) (1) hide or gourd jug used for storing oil. See tlatlùwà.

(2) back of the head, occiput.

gúdùgùm (pl. gúdùgwàmcín) widow who is too old to consider remarriage, but who may live as a companion with another older person (? either man or woman). à nci kəm ii gudugum 'she wants you for a companion'. cf. gwàngùràk (2).

gùdvú (v.n. gùdvà; gùdáf) (a) carry baby, etc. on back. kulaaβi-k aka ndáa gudav-gu bai 'a baby of fire one does not carry on the back'.

(b) gùdáf àkáu 'support, allegiance'. aci ba-naa gudaf akau da Kuukaawa 'he received support from Kukawa'.

gùdátl-gùdátl id. guzzling, sound of drinking. duuka àa sa-k am gudátl-gudátl 'the horse is drinking water glug, glug'; Audu àa sa-k sɛma gudátl-gudátl 'Audu is drinking beer glug, glug'.

gùgùyàk (pl. gùgùyàyín) (large) rock; mountain. cf. kàcàř.

gùgùyú (v.n. gùgùyà) shake (blanket, gown, etc.). nən dɛka yu ii diina bii-n, dà p aanii jankař bai 'if someone doesn't have better "rags" than me, let him not shake his lice on me' (see nearly identical proverb cited under páu (2)).

gùgzú (v.n. gùgzà) (1) teach.

(2) learn.

gúmà ten. See áyáawá (2b), vərə for teens. cf. gùmú.

gúmaájè (< K. gèmaájè 'white shirt for men with side sleeves, worn under the gown' < Ar.) type of woman's dress.

gúmawú *Acacia siberiana* [H. farar kaya].

gúmbàk (pl. gúmbàbín) watercourse (filled by rains) [H. rafi]. cf. ánkú, gádèřà, wúríyà.

gùmbú (v.n. gùmbà) escape, slip from one's grasp, esp. by force, e.g. goat slipping from one's hands and running away. cf. rəmáu (d).

gùmcí (pl. gùmcàcín) chin.

gùmú form of gúmà 'ten' (q.v.) used to represent tens' place from twenty to ninety, e.g. gùmú shírín '20', gùmú kwán '30', etc. See á-

- yâawá (2) and àa (3) for units in numbers from 20-99.
- gúmzéď (pl. gúmzàazíď) musk shrew (*Crocidura* spp.) [H. jaġa].
- gúnáí haunch, side of thigh below hip joint.
- gùnùm (pl. gùnàmàmín) a plant (sp.?) whose wood is pounded and used as sugar in ákúřnà-gruel, etc.
- gùréf (pl. gùràfcín) large clay pot. cf. dáawàí, vàkènak.
- gùréṃ (pl. gùrmàmín) small type of stringed instrument [H. gurmi]. See kkèṃú (1b).
- gùràfú (pl. gùràfàfín) long-handled hoe used in planting peanuts, etc. (a small hole is formed, seeds are dropped in, and it is covered with the foot). cf. dàbí, kúrám.
- gúrbàk (pl. gúrbàbín) (1) finger. See díàgwàďú. cf. áikwâk.
(2) fingernail. See tlàadú (1).
- gúřdèṃí leprosy. cf. àgúřdádémâk.
- gúrgùm aardvark (*Orycteropus aethiopicus*).
- gúřjèṃ adj. (pl. gúřjàmcín, gúřjàamín)(? < K. gúrzàm 'strong, strong man') huge.
- gùrmèďú (v.n. gùrmèďà) chew on, e.g. person with no teeth.
- gùrú (pl. gùràrín) jealousy.
- gùrvú, gùrváu (v.n. gùrvà) accompany, escort. manga gurva manga-k raakan bai 'an escort is not a traveling companion'.
- gùséskú now. cf. gácâařé, gùskú.
- gùskú today. bii gusku bai 'previously'. cf. bíi (3).
- gùtkú v.intr. (v.n. gùtkà) bend over, bend down, stoop. See àkér, dëu (3), fátàwànké.
- gùtú (v.n. gùutà) scrape an impression in the ground. ndáa mai daawai ngagaamin, ndá ní, ndá guuci gagai, ndá debi 'one takes small pots, goes, scrapes an impression in the ground, and sets them up'. cf. kwàřbú, rúuyú.
- gùvà (pl. gùvávín) tribal scars. cf. gèvú.
- gùvàrú Egyptian mimosa (*Acacia nilotica*) [H. gabaruwa].
- gùvú (pl. gùvávín) (1) stem of a plant. See gàatlá (2).
(2) fever.

gùvú see gèvú

gùvù (pl. gùvávín) corpse. See dàa (1b). cf. təkà (1a).

gùzép, gùzéb (pl. gùzəpcín, gùzəzbín) slave. guzəp dəman mabəřəd tə-řa-k afa 'the slave of the rainy season is the wealthy man of the dry season'. cf. gəgəzbú, gùzəpəná.

gùzáí (pl. gùzàzín) pubic hair. cf. yəd.

gùzəpəná (pl. gùzəpənànín) (d.f. gùzép) condition of being a slave, as a slave. nda jibə mii-ci ii guzapəna-n, ci naa bii dīgda-w bii-n, àa ya daan dá dlam guzapəna 'if your mother is caught as a slave, if you don't have the wherewithal to ransom her, she will go and be a slave'.

gwàbò (pl. gwàbàbín) large spherical gourd with hole in top for beer, ákúřnà-gruel, etc. cf. áđíyú, gérúwà.

gwàdàm (pl. gwàdàmànín) (cf. H. gwàdò) hand woven blanket made in strips.

gwádánú (pl. gwádánànín) peanuts.

gwàafú (v.n. gwáafi) dodge, swerve; turn off to the side. àa gwaafi àa gwaafi àa gwaafi wel 'she was dodging from side to side'; sai maayim dà gwaafi-ngəri ii baaka 'then the boy leaned over to the side (to avoid being hit in the face by a tree while riding)'. cf. mètú.

gwàgúd (cf. K. gogud '*Gardenia Thunbergii*') quinine tree (*Gardenia erubescens*) [H. gaudé].

gwàagùnái (pl. gwàagùnànín) a flavoring for sauce (dlùgwàn, q.v.) made from baobab leaves and fruit.

gwágwáará (pl. gwágwáaràrín, gwágwáaráucín) fruit bat [H. jemage].

gwájééré (pl. gwájéeràrín) = kújééré chair.

gwámák (pl. gwámámín) = góomák ram. cf. tèmàakú.

gwámpèř (pl. gwámpápíř, gwámpéřàrín) door closure made of bamboo.

gwàngùràk, gwàngùràkáu (pl. gwàngùràucín, gwàngùràrín) (1) adj. old (used to refer only to animates). gwàngùràk nèn 'old man'; gwàngùràk tìà 'old cow'. cf. gàamàná; gázgàrà (1a).

(2) n. old man or old woman. cf. dúgùrú; gúdùgùm; gázgàrà (1b).

gwáará (pl. gwáarárín) type of large grasshopper [H. đango]. cf. àn-gwàm.

gwàayà (pl. gwàayàyín) deep canyon with steep sides.

gwàyú *Acacia albida* or *A. dudgeoni* [H. gawo].

gwéebà (pl. gwéebàbíñ)(< H. gwéebàa < E.) guava.

H

hàḍaātú (v.n. hàḍaātà)(< H. háḍaa) gather, collect. dá haḍaatai da waka-w 'they gathered (the fruit) from the tree'. cf. càptú.

hàahá hard palate, roof of mouth.

hàk (pl. hàkhàhín) pied crow (*Corvus albus*; *C. scapulatus*) [H. hanka-ka]. See nyùwáu, řák.

hàakàatú (v.n. hàakàatà; hàakà)(< K. hágá-jìn) fine, impose fine.

hâl (pl. háalálín)(< K. hál < Ar.) (1)(a) character, temperament, disposition, ways of acting. hal dlam gayi-n, mangiina dá mbashi 'if temperaments match, friendship will be established'; ama mii-k hal-gə gamsak 'a woman with the character of a man'. See fáu, kəmaú (b), zəgáu (1).

(b) bad temperament. gaaza mii-k hal dà ḡanda təfa ii ssuu bai: ta-wanke dee-n, sai dà ř'yi ii vəda 'let not the hen with a bad temper be the first to enter the hut: any other which comes will stop outside'. See řúu-.

(2) state, condition of things. aa hal-gə gusəsku 'the way things are now'. cf. mbàsù (3).

hàaptú (v.n. hàaptà) mate mare to stallion. ná nci ná haapci duuka-gaa 'I want to mate my mare (to your stallion)'.
 hář (< K. or H. hár < Ar.) ? = kápá (q.v.) hář may be followed by a full sentence, a noun phrase, or a prepositional phrase; its English translations are numerous, depending on context; unifying all its uses is a sense of inclusiveness: the thing governed by hář is the last or ultimate point on a scale of time, space, or events of the context in which the hář phrase is found. cf. sée in all its meanings for the contrasting sense of exclusivity; hář might be considered to mean basically 'until', 'up to', or 'even' while sée means 'not until', 'only after', or 'only' (or 'except', depending on context).

(1) hář with time expressions means an event continues 'until' the time or event governed by hář. cf. dàmbà (b), sée (C).

(a) followed by temporal adverb. dəlfu-k gaaba-k bədlamu naa ja hař gusku '(this is) why the hyena and the dog are enemies (even) until today'. (NB: This sentence can be translated equally well with 'until' or 'even'--see (3a) below.)

(b) followed by a prepositional phrase. hař ii nii gusəsku '(up) until today'.

(c) followed by a sentence in the subjunctive. akshì dá mbashi hař nda-k akuu-kshì dá nai 'they stayed until their followers came'; hař zaaman-gə Mai Gauzhi dá nuuci Ngwajin á kəmuu-k kaarak 'until the era of Mai Gauzhi had passed Ngwajin was experiencing good times'.

(2) hář ii + locative phrase: 'as far as', 'up to', 'even to'. Raabi tuumaatu nya hař ii Kano 'Rabi expected to go as far as Kano'. See nàanádí.

(3) hář giving perspective of things or events with relation to a context. cf. sée (B); àmmá (3), átón (3), all of which are antonymous in some sense to hář.

(a) hář + NP or S: 'even', 'and even' (sometimes with the implication that it was not expected). hař ii ngum aikwa-gaanii dāa kəm-naa tətāa 'even me, my hands hurt'; jāa kalaktayī ii mēnduwa hař ndā sa-naa am 'we are going home and one will even have a good drink of water'. See kápá (2); cf. also example of (1a) above.

(b) hář + nāa NP: 'including (even)', 'there was even'. aa kunu-k ndiwa waařa ndā ngwa-w hař naa Mai Gereema 'among the people they had captured there was even Mai G.'.

(c) hář + sentence: 'so much so that', i.e. the events surrounding the hář phrase had the event of the hář phrase as their ultimate conclusion. naa kaa senu hař Yařiima Jaaji dà yī il rii-gəri dà raab aci hař ndā tk aci 'things were going like that until Yarima J. went to where he was and knocked him down so hard that he was killed'.

hāřāaji (pl. hāřāajàjín) (< H. hāřāaji < Ar.) taxes. See gènnànú, kàawà.

hēř (pl. hēēřāřín) (< K. hēr < Ar.) (1) goodness, kindness. See tùmàn-tú.

(2) good fortune, good luck. See dāanú (2).

hèrmá (sg. and pl.) (< K. hèrmá 'benefactor') = màntáu very close friend. cf. mângá.

híjírā (< H. híjírāa < Ar.) (in dates) 'the year of ...'. gafa-k dlə-maawa guuma ayaawa-w fudú naa tēřa-k efer híjira kə dəbu naa danamak kudkuvda naa guumu vaad ayaawa-w hudú 'the day of Friday the fourteenth of April the year of 1954'.

I

fi (1) = fýú (q.v.) medial in phrase

(2) = ii (q.v.) when dissimilated to high tone preceding low

ii prep. (tone dissimilates to high before low)

(1) to, toward; into, onto (required with any phrase indicating a goal of movement, even if another position word such as kúnú 'in',

etc. is present). ndá ji ii vèda Mari 'they went to Mari's quarter (of town)'; kasakaŋ áa tefa ii saka-k ðakumak bai 'a sword won't go into a sheath for tweezers'; dà vèki zayu-w ii waka-k kuku-w-gu 'he threw the rope up into the baobab'.

(2) at, in, on (= àa (1a)). kurə-naa mbasu ii wiita-k ndiwa 'he refused to live among people'; fəna-k tatam áa mbasu ii rii gayi bai 'a calabash for (bean) picking doesn't sit in one place'; bamə-naak-shi ii baaka-k dəvu 'he hid alongside the road'.

(3) marker of indirect object; required before all noun indirect objects and all pronouns except first person singular where āa(nái) is used (see paradigm, p. xxi); noun indirect objects follow direct objects but pronoun indirect objects always directly follow the verb. ná ram laabaŋ ii nən 'I told the news to the man'; wà taatk ii-kshi kam-wa 'we showed them our farm'.

(4) (make, change, etc.) into. ngalte ndaa ðaara-k rəvək ayaku ii ðukwak bai 'one has never sliced a turtle shell into a bow strong'.

(5) as, in the capacity of. ndá yaidə-naa Ali ii Mai 'they turbaned Ali as king'; à nci kəm ii gudugum 'she wants you for a companion'. See gùzàpənà, sǝřəm.

(6) with respect to, concerning, about. kunamu waaŋa ðeka-naa kaa-kənii-gu ii gazbəŋ 'a fan palm that exceeds the rest in height'; ná jaay ii-ci ii kaarak dluwan 'I asked him about the flavor of the sauce'. See also bàtáu (2). cf. nàa (4).

(7)(a) in order to (followed by action noun or nominalized sentence). gandəŋvu-k bəɖlamu, ja àa ya ii səkookuya bai 'the hyena's compound, the dog doesn't go there to chat'.

(b) for (followed by a concrete noun with some verb understood). àa ya ii pata ii dəm 'she is going to the bush for wood'. cf. gàadà (2).

(8) after certain verbs (ḡəɖàmú, tlaú), nominalized complement sentences are introduced by ii. ná tla ii dii vək 'I determined to empty the hole'.

(9) with yá 'going' + action nominal, gives future meaning [yá + ii → yée]. See yá (1b).

(10) introduces predicate complement with dlàmú used intransitively followed by action noun. See dlàmú (2c) for only example found.

fi-cí see cí

fi-cì see cì (2)

fi-jà see jà (2)

fi-kəm see kəm (2)

ìikáu (no verbal noun; this root is virtually always replaced by làunú (q.v.) if a verbal noun is required, e.g. in Imperfective—see last example under (1) where both ìikáu and làunú are used; a rare form as in wàa kliwú 'we will see' is occasionally heard, but there seems to be no citation form for this form of the verb; Imperative áa kɪ,

Subjunctive *dáa kì*. NB: Some younger speakers now use the full *iik*-stem in Imperative and Subjunctive, giving *dá ykì*, etc.)

(1) see (in both visual and figurative senses). *áa mai aa kutlìi-gaa náa kì* 'bring me my children so that I might see them'; *à ǝ'yi káa kì* 'wait and see'; *ká yka dagai ada-w gatatlak nən, káa lawan dagai andad-gu aa aikwak-geri* 'if you see someone with his head broken, you'll see someone else with his guts in his hands'. See *bău* (1), *mántáu*.

(2) look at; watch. *áa kì da-gaanai* 'look at my eye'. cf. *dùgùrú*.

(3) look over; select by looking over, pick out. *nàa ya náa kì waka dagai ná gaayi-ngaa* 'I'll go and pick out a tree and climb up'; *ndàa ka dagai ndà bar-aw* 'somebody else should be picked and given it'; to, *nà da ba náa kai* 'well, let me go and have a look (and return)'.
(4)(followed by a sentence; the sentence may be treated as a direct object noun or as a loosely bound sentence complement with *ìikáu* taking the form it would before a Ø object) see that. *gwangurak iika-naa metu-gara dee-ngara ii damtau* 'the old woman sees that her death has drawn near'; *bədlamu dá tǝi dáa kì naa ja bai* 'the hyena entered and saw that there was no dog'. See *jìktú* (2), *kácáu*.

fi-kshì see *kshì* (1)

fi-kùn see *kùn* (2)

fi-tù see *tù*

ìivú (v.n. *ìivá*) ? = *bəzú* (1) leave. May have the following shades of meaning: (a) leave behind. *anaatakau vərə-ngara dá yvi-naa atiba* 'the favored wife has gone and left the disliked wife'. See *gàadáu* (c).

(b) leave alone, pass over. *kaane ná yva-k bii-k ta* 'so I've been passing over something I could eat!'. See *gəzhən, zəgáu* (3).

(c) omit, leave out, miss. *dawai zəbayi-n, áa yva-k rii dagai layi bai* 'when a pot boils, it doesn't leave other places cool'.

(d) cease to be with. "*nàa zəgaya*" *áa yva-k maaləm naa zəga bai* '"had I only known" does not leave a teacher or a sorceress'.

(2) quit doing. *mabədlə-k duwa-w dà kuri-naa yva-w* 'the digger of the well refused to quit (digging)'.

(3) *ìivú* X Y, where X is a noun and Y is a sentence in the Subjunctive: 'let X do Y, allow X to do Y'. *məs-aakəm áa yv-aakəm ká vər ii rii bai* 'your husband won't let you go anyplace'. See *dàa* (1a).

fi-wà see *wà* (2)

íyàaká (? < H. *íyàakáa*) boundary, the end of, limit. *Bəndəʔkuuku dá rəbi jaunənin naa iyaaka bai* 'B. killed elephants without limit'. cf. *áakwáyú, dáadégórí*.

íyû (usually becomes *íi* medially) I, me, i.e. first person singular pronoun of Independent paradigm (p. xxi). cf. *áa(nái), na*.

J

jə- if not found here, see ji-

jégèná (pl. jégènáńń) (cf. K. zégá(ì)) cheek.

jègdìàdlèřú (v.n. jègdìàdlèřà; jègdìàdlář) repeatedly jostle or touch.

jèjém (pl. jèjàjín) thorn. See gàyí (3c).

jèkwáad^í id. ? spread out. sai dāa ji zani-geri naa wando naa jakuwa-geri dà pə-du jəkwaad^í 'then he took off his gown and pants and his cap and dropped them jəkwaad^í.'

jəljəl (tones?) pointed.

jèmbèlú (v.n. jèmbèlà) (< K. tèmبال-jìn) push away (as in argument), push aside. cf. dàbáu.

jèmbí-jèmbí, jèmpí-jèmpí of different kinds, of different groups. ndii-wa áa tēka-k nī jèmbi-jèmbi da cad^í naa zēgař 'people kept coming of all sorts from south and north'.

jā (pl. jáajáj|ń) cubit, i.e. measure from elbow to fingertips.

jǎ (pl. jáadín) dog. NB: This is the only mono-syllabic word found which has lexical rising tone; it sometimes sounds like a high tone word in isolation, but compare use of the adjective bàu 'red' before zán 'Kanuri person' (a high tone word) and dà 'eye' (a low tone word): búu-g zán 'light-skinned Kanuri'; búu-g dà 'red eye'; búu-g já 'red dog'.

jà (in associative constructions with following phrase—cf. -k)

(1) used in jà-k X, where X is a noun phrase of any type: 'X and others like X or associated with X', 'X, etc.'. ja-k dēgēmdāa 'the chief of the town and others'; ja-k kwaāřa waařa masee-w 'the donkey he bought and so forth'; ja-k am 'things like water'; aa wunduw-aaja řo ja-k ngangam naa ja-k daada naa gedancin-gaa 'at our home (there's) people like aunty and like big sister and my little sisters and so on'. See kàakáakà.

(2) used in jà-k X + second person possessive pronoun: 'your silly X', 'your damned X'. naa ja-k laam-aacu-w 'you and that damned greed of yours'. See bìi (3), 3rd example, shí (2).

jà we, us, our(s), i.e. first person plural exclusive pronoun used as:

(1) Independent Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxi).

(2) Indirect Object Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxii), where it is always in the construction íi-jà.

(3) Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it is preceded by

-áa when added to nouns ending in -a, -i, -u.

(4) Independent Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kájà.

(5) Subject Pronoun of verbal or locative sentence (paradigm p. xxi); for most speakers this pronoun is always low tone, but some younger speakers give tone opposite to the following syllable.

jàa see jà (5)

jàabì (pl. jàabàbín) beans boiled in water. ndàa rama ii maatə-k jaabi maa dà shi am bai 'one doesn't tell an eater of beans to drink water'. cf. ríidùwà.

jaḅ = baram mere, merely. gaadā-k wunya-k jaka tku jaḅ ká ḡwatlə-naa-ci? 'merely because of that little bag you are tired?'; aayayin jaḅ, waa dlama-du tam? 'mere gazelles, what will we do with them?'. cf. káwàì.

jágádíáú (pl. jágádíádíín) lion (*Panthera leo*). See dëu (3).

jáagè adornment. waane dlamee-naa jaage 'so-and-so has got himself all dressed up'.

jàgják trembling, shivering. tēka-gaa dlan jagjak 'I was trembling'.

jágwálám id. hopping along, loping along. sai vaji dà ram, "kaai ḡuuta!", jagwalam, jagwalam nən, dà gaayi 'then the monkey said, "hey birds!", hoppity-hop, he climbed up'.

jàajém resting head on hand or knee in distress or thought. ká muwa-naa jaajem nən, káa lawan-naa tərakuna 'if you disdain (simply) being despondent, you'll see orphanhood' (be satisfied with what you are for being aggressive will only get you into a worse state).

jáakúwá (pl. jáakúwáwín)(cf. K. zoga) cap.

jàmâa (< K. jàmâ < Ar.) people, populace.

jámpêl face, countenance. jampel-gəri áa wiida kaa tēra 'his face was as bright as the moon'. See wiida. cf. féská.

jànkář (pl. jànkákíř) louse. See gùgùyú.

jánnâ (< K. zánnà < Ar.) heaven, the afterlife.

jàptú (v.n. jàptà)(? < K. ajap-cin 'be astonished' < Ar.) be amazed (at), be astonished (at). ndiwa bai áa tēka japta-gəri 'everyone was amazed at him'; baaci-k kēra áa japta-k nana dluḡun garvaucin Ngwajin nən na ba-du 'the reader will be amazed at how it's the names of the reigns of Ngwajin that I got'. cf. ájàp.

jàunàk (pl. jàunànín) elephant (*Loxodonta africana*). See jàawàsú, nàa-náadí, zìidú.

jàawàsú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* jáawàsù) become thin. jaunak dà jaawasa yaaye, ðàka-naa gadakuwa gayi 'even if an elephant is skinny, he's bigger than one food bowl'.

jàayú (*v.n.* jáayà) (1) *v.tr.* ask (person asked may be either direct or indirect object). jaay akshi 'he asked them'; ná jaay ii ndiwa gaa-wa 'I have asked a lot of people'. cf. tèktlú, tàbtlú.

(2) *v.intr.* take potions so as to become invulnerable. jaayə-ngəri 'he has taken potions'.

ji- if not found here, see jə-

jí (1) *v.intr.* (used in à jí) 'go!', i.e. imperative singular form of 'go'. cf. ddá (1) for plural.

(2) *v.tr.* (used only in à jí-náa + object or à jí-dù) 'take!, transport!', i.e. imperative singular form of 'take'. cf. ddá (2) for plural.

(3) phrase medial reduced form of jú (q.v.).

NB: See paradigm, p. xxiii, for full paradigm of 'go/come'.

jí, jǐ see dǎu; jú

jíbdà civet cat (*Viverra civetta*).

jìbú (*v.n.* jìbà) (1)(a) catch; seize; capture criminal, person as slave, etc. ná jibə kwaafa 'I caught a donkey'; gəji dá jibi-naa akshi 'thirst overcame them'. See dǎròotà, gágèràyák, guzàpənà.

(b) hold; grasp; take hold of. Gayaima-w áa gən-naa gagii-gu dá jibi-du 'the Gayaima would accept the (ball of) clay and hold it'; áa jiba-k gema-k jaunak aa tìətləra-w 'he would take an elephant haunch and cut it into strips'. See gáyí (3c), díágwdàrú. cf. gǎfau, kùyú.

(c) hold control over, rule. tiye aṛdiita-ngəri naa zadak jiri-k jiba waafa aci jibə nda-gəri 'everyone agreed with the type of rule that he exercised over his people'. cf. fòotú (b).

(d) touch, hit, strike, come in contact with. vərkee-n, dá jibi daa 'when he shot (arrows), they would hit the ground'; dægagin-gu áa tēka-k zanii-gəri atən jib aci bai 'the arrows were lodged in his gown, but they didn't come in contact with him'.

(e) ákà 'fire' as subject: 'fire catches to'. koo papa-gara, aka-w áa jiba-w bai balle dà bak atu 'even her cloth, fire wouldn't catch to it, let alone that it burn her'.

(f) áikwák 'hand' as object: 'give condolences for bereavement'. akshi dá jibi aikwak goomak naa mətú-k ama-gəri 'they gave their condolences to the ram for the death of his wife'.

(2) = bàdìitú = bǎndú begin; start doing; begin by doing. já jibə ma-w 'we began picking it up'. See dǎckú.

(3) keep on doing. daa jibə-naa nguubuta 'the town kept on growing'. See sée (C2).

jìcǎú (v.n. jìcǎà) sprinkle, e.g. water on grain so that it will ferment. cf. wàskú.

jìgàp pron. or adj. See ðágàì for semantic characterization of jìgàp. The only difference between ðágàì and jìgàp is that jìgàp is restricted to plural and mass referents.

(1) certain, some; certain ones. tlaadìn jìgàp 'certain cattle'; apta jìgàp 'some flour'.

(2) other, others. jìgàp bəlan, jìgàp bəlan bai 'some are nice, others are not nice'. cf. daamâ (1).

jìgwàì (pl. jìgwàgwín) small hill formed by hoeing in which grain is planted.

jìktú (v.n. jìktà) (1) v.intr. become upset, vexed. kà jìkta bai 'don't get upset'.

(2) v.tr. vex, trouble. aci iika biyu jìktə-naa aci 'he saw that the thing was great trouble to him'.

jííííí tiny. kulaabi jííííí 'tiny baby'. cf. gángám.

jìnáadì (pl. jìnáadadín) (< K. jìnáadè < Ar.) flintstone.

jíířè, jíířewá (< K. jířè) (1)(a) truth. See ðákáu (b).

(b) jíířèe-gárâ "good for her", "she did the right thing".

(c) bárf-k jíířèe(wá) ìi X 'believe in X'. gazgaraucin bar-d ìi-ci jíířeewa 'the old men believed in him (the Mai)/liked his way of doing things'.

(d)(i) nàa jíířè 'be innocent, be telling the truth'.

(ii) nàa jíířèe báí 'be guilty'. nən àa kalau nya ìi rii-k garva aci naa jíířee bai 'if a person fears going to the court he must be guilty'. cf. also example under dlámú (1c).

(2) X-ké jíířè, X nàa jíířè 'a true X', 'a real X'. zhigom-gə jíířeewa = zhigom naa jíířeewa 'a real warrior'.

jířǵí (pl. jířǵágín) (< H. jířǵí) vehicle in which one can ride other than car (see métkâ).

jíří (< K. jíří 'kind, sort; nation') = zádák (2) kind. See jìbú (1c).

jòókúlóólók in a squatting position. akshí dambasu jookulolok 'they are seated in a squatting position'; ná mbas ìi jookulolok 'I squatted on my heels'.

jú (1) v.intr. (a) went, i.e. form of 'go' used in Perfective aspect.

(b) j(ú) ìi + nominalized verbal construction: 'was about to'. ja j ìi daama-du ... 'the dog was about to finish it off'. NB: This is the construction referring to past time which parallels yá ìi (→ [yé]) (cf. yá (1b)) to form a verbal construction of future meaning.

(2) *v.tr.* (used only if the forms jí-náa + object or jí-dù) took (from one place to another), transported, i.e. form of 'take' used in Perfective aspect.

NB: See paradigm, p. xxiii for full paradigm of 'go/come'.

júwâk (pl. júwáw|n) fly.

K

k form of the Associative Linker (cf. kó) used when the first noun ends in a vowel and the second begins with a voiceless or glottalized consonant, e.g. já-k pátà 'dog of the bush', kúnú-k ðaa 'interior of the town'.

kó the Associative Linker (= H. ná/tá), translating possessives as well as numerous other relationships holding between nouns. The form kó is the form used in independent associatives, e.g. kó ðègèṁ 'the chief's', kécì 'yours', or when the "linked" noun otherwise stands apart in some way from the noun which governs it, e.g. màngá-gérí kó wáká-w 'his friend up above' [friend of him of upwards], wáná-k sè-kwái nàa kó gàadǎŕí 'work of a sickle and of a hoe' (see also sháídà). When two nouns are directly connected, the Associative Linker has a number of reduced forms: see k, g, gə, áa (l). Except when used with Associative Pronouns (cf. paradigm) and in uses requiring the "full form", kó, the Associative Linker is always optionally omisable, simple juxtaposition of the nouns being sufficient to show the grammatical relationship.

kécì see cì (4)

kédǎk here's a warning that, you'd best be advised that. kǎḍak kà nci-n á kalakci ii wunduwa 'I warn you that it would be better if you return home' (for the use of ncí here, see ncí (c)).

kédén one (used only in counting). cf. gáyí (1).

kéjà see já (4)

kékèṁ see kèṁ (4)

kèláadó *adj.* (pl. kèláadáuc|n) (cf. K. kèláda 'enemy' < Ar.) evil (said of living things).

kèlàamá (pl. kèlàamám|n) (< K. kèlàamá) = sáará peer.

kèlápíyà (< K. kèléfà < Ar.) (a) *n.* good health. kèlappiya-k tēka 'good physical health'.

(b) (in reply to greetings) "fine", "well", "OK". ndá yùwàn? 'how was your night?', kèlápíyà (sélée) 'just fine'.

(c) *adv.* áa wna kəlappiya bai 'he won't pass the night safely/in good health'. cf. ngàa-.

kəlbú (v.n. kəlbá) plaster, smear on (mud, manure, etc.).

kələ (? < K.) "if that's how things are, then ...". ká zəga bil-n, kələ à bar aa dāa 'if you don't know, (and) if that's how things are, then admit defeat (lit: give me the town)'.
 .

kələekələ (pl. kələekələlín)(cf. K. kələ-jìn 'to tie around') a white strip of cloth worn around sorceress's head. áa wna nawan kələekələ-k nyami aa ada-k bədlamu? 'how many days would it last, a band of fat on a hyena's head?'. cf. àrlyáapù.

kəm you (f.sg.), i.e. second person feminine singular pronoun form used as:

(1) Independent Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxi).

(2) Indirect Object Pronoun, where it is always in the construction fi-kəm (paradigm, p. xxi).

(3) Associative Pronoun, where it is preceded by -áa when added to nouns ending in -a, -i, -u (paradigm p. xxii).

(4) Independent Associative Pronoun, where it appears in the construction kəkəm (paradigm, p. xxii).

cf. ka.

kəma (used only as a locative word) (a) in front of, ahead. áa kəma wunduwa 'he's in front of the compound'; anku-k Bagaja áa kəma 'Bagaja lake is up ahead'.

(b) tá kəma nàa + noun phrase or nominalized verbal construction: 'continue doing, keep doing'. áa ta-k kəma naa jiba-k səsuu-gu 'they continued holding up the conical roof'; dà ci kəma naa halə-kshi 'they kept on with their ways'.

kəməngəř (? < K.) malicious injury, wickedness. gaada-k kəməngəř kaa-n kà dāki buuge 'it is for wickedness that you sew a quilt armor'.

kəmau (v.n. kəmau; Imperative áa kəma; Subjunctive dāa kəmi)

(1) experience through any of the senses other than sight (cf. ìikáu).

(a)(i) hear. lakwtu ká kəma vərək nən, iyu 'when you hear something thrown, it's me'. See àbá, kàatú. cf. kəřəmtú.

(ii) understand, grasp a thing explained. jà kəma-du 'we understand (the directions given)'.
 .

(b) smell. cf. fəunú.

(c) taste. See pàatkú.

(d) feel by touch, experience any sort of bodily sensation. aikwa-geri dāa kəm-naa tətāa 'then his hand hurt (felt pain)'; á baren ai-kw-aaci ká linci ba káa kəmi 'give your hand, touch it, and feel'; nāa kəmuu-k maya 'I'm hungry'; Ngwajin áa kəmuu-k kaarak naa mbasu
 .

kəlappiya naa səkuna-k ləman 'Ngwajin was experiencing pleasure and life in good health and increase of wealth'. See ləntú. cf. dèmáú (2), ləntú, yáu tr. (2).

(2)(followed by sentence, introduced by máa (q.v.) or not) hear that. ká kəma nən áa kaluu-k dəvid' nən, ndá tauks aci dá gají bai 'if you hear that someone fears the night, he hasn't been imprisoned and then broken loose'. See dèvú (2a) for example with máa before complement sentence; kàakáakà.

(3)(used with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) cause to feel. ká kəma-d aa tətəa ii dá-gaa 'you caused me pain on my head'.

kəmbá (pl. kəmbábín)(= H., K., Ful.) African, Guinea, or Negro pepper (*Xylopiya aethiopica*).

kəmú see kkəmú

kənásâř (pl. kənásářářín)(< K. kənásàr < Ar.) victory.

kəndé (pl. kəndədín)(< ? H., K.) basket woven from palm leaves [H. le-fe]. cf. dàabéř, tàkàcí.

kénjì (pl. kénjàjín)(cf. K. kénjì 'worm, maggot') = kàakénjì chameleon.

kəřəmtú (v.n. kəřəmtà)(< K. kəřən-jìn) listen attentively. j ii ra-wanke, áa kəřəmta-k laabař-gə zha 'wherever they went, they listened to news of war'. cf. kəmáú (1a).

kəràabèk (pl. kəràabábín) cloud.

kəràagəmək (pl. kəràagəməmín) lizard (*Agama agama*). See bǎu (3). cf. ángwàřzó.

kəřàatú (v.n. kəřàatà; kəřà)(< K. kəřà-jín < Ar.) read.

kəřbàasà! "that's amazing!, that would be hard to believe!".

kərcàciyú (v.n. kərcàciyà) do poorly or sloppily.

kəřdì (pl. kəřdádín)(< K. kəřdì) pagan.

kəří see rí (2)

kəřlìnàkáu (pl. kəřlìnàkàucín) toad. See kùyòotú. cf. bəřtəkték, kóokó.

kəřiyàatú (v.n. kəřiyàatà)(< K. kəří-jìn 'incline, turn, twist') move aside, get out of the way.

kəřmái (< K., probably kəř + mái—cf. kərməsələm 'Islam') chieftainship, position of Mai. cf. gárvà (1).

kəřú (v.n. kəřà) steal.

kəřú, kùřú (< K. kùrú 'again') (used at the beginning of a sentence,

esp. in narrative, often with no apparent meaning difference from a sentence without it; when used it indicates an event or fact which builds on the preceding and may form part of a sequence with it) moreover, and then, to continue. ~wənya-w dà 'yawī Mai Muhammadu Ibn Idəřīisa kuřu Mai Muhammadu Ibn Idəřīisa dá dlam zəba da kunu-k nda-k Ngwajin 'that girl bore Mai M.I.I. and then Mai M.I.I. again married from among the people of Ngwajin'.

kəřús *id.* wham!, splat! dá kkəm-naa aci daa kəřus 'he knocked him to the ground wham!'.
 kəsəř (pl. kəsəsəř) termite hill.

kəshák (pl. kəshəshín) worm; insect; any small pest such as a small mouse, etc.

kəshàtùwà (pl. kəshàtùwàwín) scabies.

kətlú *v.tr.*; for *intr.* counterpart, cf. tàtlú (*v.n.* kətł)

(1)(a) break into pieces, shatter. à ktlī daawai 'smash the pot'.

(b) break something which makes a popping sound, esp. used in kətł jànkář 'crushing lice'. dà ram maa wənya dà ktlī ii-ci jankař 'he (monkey) said he'd like the girl to pick (and crush) his lice for him'.

(c) with zhìráu 'modesty, shame' as object: 'put one in an embarrassing position, humiliate'. ndá ktlai zhiruu-gaa ii vatku 'I would be humiliated for nothing'.

(d) with kərà 'theft' as object: 'get compensation for a wrong suffered'. nàa ya ii maaka-k kətlī kəra-gaa 'I'm going to seek compensation for the wrong done to me'.

(2) break something stiff (stick, etc.) in two, snap in two.

cf. gəďú.

ka(a) you (*sg.*), i.e. second person singular (*m.* or *f.*) used as Subject Pronoun in verbal and locative sentences (see paradigm, p. xxi for remarks on tone and vowel length). cf. cì, kəm.

kâa see âa(nái) (3)

kàa *prep., conj.* (tone dissimilates to high before low; may be followed directly by noun phrase or full sentence) (1) followed by noun phrase:

(a) like. áa məsta kaa kənji 'he changed (colors) like a chameleon'; bee áa daawa-w, wara — kaa tam? 'there is a reason for it — like what?'.

(b) kàa sáu = kàa sən(ú) 'like that, in that way, thus, this manner of activity'. nàa yva-du kaa sau 'I'll leave it like that'; àa ya ii maaka-k am nən, kaa sau 'when he went to look for water, (he did it) in this way'; ndáa kunu kaa senu 'they were engaged in this activity'.

(c) kàa X: 'someone like, something like, a thing equal to'. kaa aci naa bai 'his equal does not exist'.

(d) Y kàa X (where Y is some quality word): 'as Y as X'. ndá ba wunya canduwa kaa atu bai 'one would not find a girl as beautiful as her'. See jámpêl.

(2) kàa kó + sentence, expressed or implied: 'as, like'. nàa ya nà viyai ii-kəm kaa kə ká viy aa kaanai tēnu 'I'll go wash it for you like you washed mine for me'; wà wam wà tfee duuniya bai wà maaki kaa kə tiike? 'us too can't we go out into the world and seek like everybody else?'.

(3) kàa followed directly by sentence (Subjunctive for incomplete or potential action, Perfective for completed action): 'as if, it's as if, that is to say'. à nci atu kaa ada-gəri dá gaji 'he loved her as if his head were going to snap off'; dlame-ngəri kaa zuwa baaba ii tēka-gəri 'he became as if he had rubbed indigo on his body'.

(4)(beginning a narrative or sentence) well. kaa kaayak tla-w dee ii rii bēdlamu 'well a squirrel set out and went to the hyena'.

Kàa affectionate term of address prefixed to name (often used in narrative when an animal character is addressed by its name). Kaa bēdlamu, kaa bēdla-k tam? 'Friend hyena, what are you digging for?'. (Example under kàa (4) may be a case of this as well.)

kàabì, kàabèn (cf. H. kàaffn and similar words in many other Chadic languages) = dàmbà (q.v.) before (may govern clause or simple noun phrase). See dàmbà for general remarks on aspect in clause and clause final elements—the facts are identical for kàabì and dàmbà. (Subjunctive, final 'n) kaabə atu dà daame ta-w nən, Muusa dà yi-ngə-rì pədem 'before she had finished eating it, Musa had gone far away'; (Subjunctive, no final 'n) kaabə nà y ii oofis, ndaawa tla-naakshi 'before I got to the office, the people had left'; (Imperfective) kaabə atu áa kalaktayi tēnu, sai dāa ji zani-gəri 'before she returned, he removed his gown'.

kàbíinè (< K. kàvéni 'blow, damage, sorrow') troubles, difficulties (esp. arising from lack of means of support). gwangurak tku áa ka-biine 'this old woman is suffering from lack of means of support'. See also dàptú, gàyú (2a), màrwáyú. cf. bóoné, ngénápù, kúdèrà, tètāa (2).

kàcállà (pl. kàcállàlín)(< K. kàzállà 'high military officer') chief of a quarter, ward head.

kàcār (pl. kàcàcír) small stone, piece of gravel. See dègàgár. cf. gúgùyàk.

kácáu expertise. ká yka-w nən naa kacau nən, Bāndə suwaari gafa-w bai 'if you see that someone has expertise, he didn't start dancing on that day'.

kàacúm (pl. kàacúmám|n)(< K. kázúmù) clothing. See sàarùutú.

kàadú (pl. kàadádín)(*< K. kádú-jìn 'chase, pursue'*) pursuit, help in pursuit. Yařiiima Jaaji naa ndiwa dà yi iì kaadu 'Yarima Jaji and his people went in pursuit (of cattle thieves)'.

kàadúgù, kàadúkù (pl. kàadúgwágwín)(*< K. kádúgù 'descendant'*) ancestors; descendants.

kádê adv. (intensive form kádêe-kádê) (a) quickly; with quick movements. áa rakan kádê 'he walks fast'.

(b)(with time expressions) early; soon. pédêk kádê 'early in the morning'.

káfá (pl. káfáfln) python.

káfái (pl. káfáfln) black-hooded cobra [H. kumurci].

kàagálâ (pl. kàagálâucín)(*< K. kàgálâ 'instruction, advice, rank, office, title'*) crier.

kágò (pl. kágwàgwín)(? *< H. kágò*) round mud hut with thatched roof. cf. kúdèmdè, sésàù, wéndùwà.

kàigámâ (pl. kàigámámín)(*< K. kàigámâ title of the highest military officer; today he is District Head of Gaidam*) an important subordinate official to the Mai.

kàisú (v.n. kàisà; kàyás) tie into a knot. See bàtáu (1). cf. tàkwsú, yàidú.

kàakénàì (pl. kàakénàìnl) remainder. wàa kiida-naa kaakenii-k matkam-gara gayu-w 'we will eat up her last remaining child'.

kàakénjì = kénjì (q.v.)

kákérâ (pl. kákérárln)(v.n. of kàkèrú) load, i.e. things which are to be carried or are being carried by person, animal, etc. See ápsáw, gâawá (2). cf. kářê, léptâ.

kàkèrú (v.n. kákérâ; kàkár) carry load on head or back. saw jaka tku, à kaker ii-wa 'here's this bag, carry it for us'; kakera dagai áa kakar-gu-n dlogemau, kwaařa á demuu-gu bai 'some loads, a camel carries them, but a donkey can't'. See bâu (1). cf. jú (2), mau.

kàká (pl. kàkàucín)(cf. K. kàgá, H. kàakáa) (1) grandparent. cf. kàa-kàakà.

(2) grandchild. nen daptè-naa ci naa zèba nen, áa lawan ci naa kaka '(even) if somebody prevents you from getting married, he'll (still) see you with grandchildren' (i.e. someone who treats you ill will feel small when someone else treats you well).

kàakáaŋú n. or adj. (pl. kàakáaŋúucín)(*< K. kàgávù 'stupid'*) fool; foolish. cf. bólkên, gádàawànak, gádìlèbgànak.

kàakáakà ? *pl.* of kàká (q.v.) náa kəmuu-k ja-k kaakaaka àa rama-w maa ... 'I hear your grandparents and the others are saying that ...'.

kàakàrá large knife fitted into wooden handle, used around house and not kept in sheath. cf. áudú.

kàakáskù = sèkù God. See kànəmú, kàanáadí, pǎř.

kàakáatəřàm (*pl.* kàakáatəřàmámín) (cf. K. káká-jìn 'cackle') hen that has begun laying (kàakáatəřàm is described as a chicken that makes cawing sounds). cf. gâazá.

kákkádì (*pl.* kákkádádín) (< K. kákkádè < Ar.) paper, either blank paper or some paper document. See sháidà.

kákshî see ákshî (2)

kàaktíú (*v.n.* kàaktlà; kàakátì) measure length, quantity, etc. ndà kaaktla bai yaaye, liijam dēka-naa miya-k gaaza 'even if one doesn't measure, (one knows) a bridle is bigger than a chicken's mouth'. cf. ngàltú.

kàktú (*v.n.* káktà; kàkát, or kàktà) cool off.

kàlàktú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* kàlàktà) (< K. kálák-cìn) (1) = kàtáu (1a) go back, return.

(2) (with transitizing suffix -náa, -dù) = kàtáu (1b) return thing, take back.

kálâu fearing, fear. aka bakə ci-n, kàa kaluu bəbət 'if fire burns you, you will be afraid of ashes'. See kəmáu (2), jífířè (ldii). cf. mārwaí, sàaktú, sàltú.

kálkál (< K. kálkál) exact, exactly, in exact proportion to. kàa kaaktla-w kalkal naa kutlii-ci tku 'you measure (grain) in exact proportion to (the number of) your children'. See bàtáu (1). cf. gàyí (3), řák.

kàm (*pl.* kàamín) farm. cf. ádíyà, ázábái, yáamáncí.

kámâncì (*pl.* kámâncàwádí) (< K. kámâ-nzè 'his companion'; in K. -nzè is a possessive suffix, required with this root, but in Ngizim it has been reanalyzed as part of the stem) companion. cf. mângá (b).

kámàndén then.

kàmàatú (< H. kàmáatà) (apparently used only as an impersonal verb in the Perfective, usually with a sentential complement in the Subjunctive) it is fitting that, "should". kamaatu ná dlam-naa zəba dēgo 'I should get married first'; kamaatu wà dlam kaa suu bai 'we shouldn't act like that'; "kamaatu" daamə-naa aw aa sapto "one should" finished off the grain in the storage pile'.

kámbí (*pl.* kámábábin) small calabash bowl used especially to store grain:

in a polygamous household each wife is allotted a kámbí of grain from which to prepare meals; in this way the master of the house can be assured that each wife is using the same amount of grain and not using some for personal or other use. See mpáu (1b). cf. fèná.

kàmbúudì trap. matuutu-k kambuudi áa saata-k sēsewa bai 'one who sets a trap doesn't (have to) lift a stick'. See tūtáu, gágèràyák. cf. àràakáu, kēl, kwálté.

kàmpóoyí = kàmpúwái

kàmpúwái = kàmpóoyí (related to K. kàmbàí-jín 'to hurry up') haste; speed; quickness. See páu (2). cf. àajálá.

kàmsàràakí (pl. kàmsàràakákín) hooked instrument for retrieving a well bucket which has been lost in a well.

kànémú v.intr. (v.n. kánmà; kánám, q.v.) come up (of a storm) (sometimes used with kàakáskù as subject). laku ye kaakasku kanemee-ngara 'at that moment as well a storm had come up'.

kàanáadí (< K. kánádí) patience. (the following is a standard greeting and response) nda kaanaadi? 'how's tha patience?' - kaanaadi ka kaakasku 'patience is God's'. See gèjì (b).

kàanáí see áa(nái) (3)

kánám (v.n. of kànémú) storm.

káanè (1) interjection indicating mild surprise or incredulity. manga, kaane, aka bai? 'my friend, you mean it's not fire?'. See át.

(2) in narrative, informs the listener of some element not heretofore mentioned but which is about to play a role in the story. kaane dayak zēga-naa rii kuku dagai naa gerid 'now the goat knew of a place where there was a baobab with a hollow in it'.

kánjâu (pl. kánjájín) large drum of variable pitch like hourglass drum, but held between legs.

kànjínò (< K. kánjínò) pity, compassion. dà kuu-gu biyu dà kaci-ngara bii kanjiino 'after that the affair turned into something to arouse pity'.

kàntàfòotú (v.n. kàntàfòotà; kàntáfò)(? < K.) (used with sèkù 'God' as subject) bring good luck. sèku kantafoot iyu 'I had good luck'. [H. Allah ya kafarshe ni].

kàntí (pl. kàntàtín)(< K. or H. kàntí) shop.

kápá = hář (q.v.) (1) until. maaku kapa dāa bi-naa akshi 'he searched until he found them'. cf. hář (1).

(2) as far as, up to, clear to. gaabiyaw dá vèri dá jibi rawa kapa ii dā-k dā-k ssuu mii-gara 'the pumpkin came up and kept growing

clear to the roof of her mother's hut'. See *mìyá* (2). cf. *hář* (2).

(3)(a) even. *riyu*, *kapa dlamə-ngara gumbak gusəsku hař am áa capta ii riyu* 'the place has even become a pond now and water even collects there'. cf. *hář* (3a).

(b) so much so that. *kəma-naa tətəa kapa dà mci-ngəri* 'he was injured so badly that he died'. See *tótəa* (1a). cf. *hář* (3c).

káptú (v.n. *káptà*; *kàpát*) (< K. *kàp-cín* 'meet; catch up (water, etc.); assail') (1) go to meet; intercept.

(2) assail. *Shuwawin dà kapci akshi dá ngwi akshi dà yi dà dēbji-du* 'Shuwa Arabs would assail them, capture them, go, and sell them'.

kárâ see *râ* (2)

kàarák (pl. *kàaràrín*) (1) *adj.* (a) pleasant to touch, taste, smell (essentially those senses perceived through the verb *kəmáu*, q.v.). *dlugwan kaarak* 'good-tasting sauce'. See *bàllé* (2), *gàzáu* (1).

(b) *kàarák báí* bad tasting, etc. See *bàllé* (2).

(2) *n.* pleasantness, pleasure (resulting from any of the senses covered by *kəmáu*, q.v.). *kaarak dlugwan* 'deliciousness of the sauce'. See *pàatkú*.

cf. *bəlân*.

kářám (pl. *kářámámín*) (< K. *kářám*) crocodile.

káaràrà (pl. *káaràràrín*) (a) *adj.* new.

(b) *n.* new one.

kàràrăw (pl. *kàràràwàwín*) red-flowered silk cotton tree (*Bombax buonopezense*) [H. *gurjiya*]. cf. *rímí*.

kàřdú (v.n. *kářdā*; *kàřád*) = *kàřbú* knock over, throw down (as in wrestling). *dà dēka-naa yu awayuu-n*, *daa karbē-naa yu* 'had he been stronger than me, he would have thrown me down'.

kářê (pl. *kářářín*) (< K. *kářè*) goods, things, baggage, gear, stuff; appurtenances associated with some type of activity. *ká ta-naa kařee-ci* 'you're looking a little overweight' [you've eaten up your goods]. cf. *kákérâ*, *léptâ*.

kàřgún (pl. *kàřgwágwín*) (< K. *kùrgún*) (a) medicine; charm. See *bàazhí* (1).

(b) any sort of remedy or remedial measure. *ndá dlam-naa kařgun-gəri* 'he was appropriately dealt with'. See *dasú*. cf. *dùngún*.

kàrmú (v.n. *kàrmà*; *kàrám*) chop, cut down, chop off. *ná karmə dəm* 'I chopped wood'; *baaci kumaakumi, kasakař áa bíi dà karm aci bai* 'a wearer of quilt armor, a sword won't manage to slash him'. See *ádí-yà*, *gàadā* (1c), *tíáatíóráadā*, *ràvènú*. cf. *tlàptú*, *wèdú*, *zìidú*.

kàsákâř (pl. kàsákâřk\ń, kàsákâřář\ń)(cf. K. kàshágàr) sword. See sákà.

kàsàktú v.intr. (v.n. kàsàktà)(< K. kàsàc-c\ń 'agree') consent; be in agreement with; be content. ngalko ká kasakcí wà kalakta-naawa ii kunu-k ndiwa wà mbashi 'you had best consent that we return among people and settle'; ná kasaktə bai see ká viy aa 'I won't be content until you wash it for me'. cf. àřdiyátú, màřtú.

kàstà (pl. kàstàt\ń) cornstalk fence. cf. dárágà, dâřdâř, gâlàagà.

kàstú (v.n. kàstà)(< K. kàs-sh\ń 'pull; saddle a horse; wean') saddle an animal. ná kastə sərđi 'I put on the saddle'; á kastiina aanai duuka-gaa 'saddle my horse for me'. cf. tàusú (b).

kàasú (v.n. káasà) sweep.

kàtəřú v.intr. (v.n. kàtář; NB: an expected v.n. *kátəřà is not used) jump; leap; hop.

kàtáu v.intr. (v.n. kác\ń) (1) = kàlàktú (a) go back, return.

(b)(with transitizing suffix -náa, -dù) return (thing), take back.

(2) turn into, metamorphose into, become. ká řd ii waada-n, kàa kaci waada bai 'if you kneel down to a dwarf, you (still) won't become a dwarf'; wənya-w dà kaci-ngara ama vəji-gu 'the girl became the wife of the monkey'. See kànj\ńò, zùwàk (2). cf. d\ábáu (2), d\àmú (2), mèsťú (2b).

(3)(with transitizing suffix) repeat thing said, make verbal response to something. náa lawan-gu náa kaci-du bai?! '(you think) I'd be seeing that and not say anything?!'; miy-aaci ngum, kà kata-du bai 'watch your mouth, don't say anything about (what I've told you)'. See kùrú (2a).

kàatú v.intr. (v.n. káatù) feel relieved, at ease; feel safe. agut kəma-du-n, ada kaatə-ngara 'if the ear hears, the head feels relieved'.

káu see àkáu (2)

kàuyú (v.n. káuyà; kàwái) fry (usually in oil). cf. bènú, bàkú.

kàawà (pl. kàawàw\ń) game; play; playing. aci áa kaawa naa nya-naa hařaaji ii Kuukaawa bai 'he didn't play around with transporting the taxes to Kukawa'.

káwài (? < H. káwài) just, only, only for that. kkəmə gayi tak kawai 'they hit just once'; kawai áa masa-k səma 'for no other reason than that they were going to buy beer'. cf. řárám, jář.

kàwáu v.intr. (v.n. kàwà) (1) become fond of. akshi kawa-naakshi 'they became fond of each other'; kawa naa gaaza áa dapta-k ziida-gara bai 'fondness for a hen doesn't prevent slaughtering it'. See dëu (3).

(2) be used to, be familiar with. kaawa-k aada kaa kə waaŋa ndá kawa dlama-w 'traditional games like those that one was used to doing'. See nli (3).

kàya (with topicalized noun phrase) as for, indeed. anyi kaya, kaa ngum bata-naa akshi 'as for milk, well mine is enough for them'. cf. ngúm (b); kùwá, mèn.

kàayák (pl. kàayàŋín) ground squirrel (*Xerus erythropus*) [H. kurege].

kée (1) -ever: suffix used on question words to make indefinites corresponding to English 'whoever', etc. cf. kóo (4), yàayé (1); fà-tàwànké, -mòoké, ràwànké, tàmké, tàwànké, tìiké.

(2)(with negative) never, not yet. gaamana-w tēnu, ndá yva-naa aci amma aci mēte kee bai 'the old one (road), it has been abandoned but it isn't worn out (died) yet'; pēdēm kee bai? 'isn't that kind of far?'. See wál-wál-wál.

kèeké (pl. kèekàkín)(< H. kèekée < Yoruba) bicycle.

kél (pl. kélálín)(< K. kél) metal spring trap. cf. àràakáu, kàmbúudì, kwálté.

kí, kì Imperative and Subjunctive form of ìikáu (q.v.)

kìidú (v.n. kíidá) eat something which requires chewing, such as meat, kola nuts, etc.; this verb is normally used for eating things of the type mentioned, though táu (q.v.), which is the more general word for 'eat' can also be used with such objects—see first example under 'yùwú. tiye kiidə albasar, foo-gu aa miya-gəri 'whoever eats an onion, the smell is on his breath'. See cìbú (1), dàftlú, káa-kénàí, 'yùwú.

kìilàkìilá (pl. kìilàkìilálín)(cf. H. kíííkííí) zorilla (*Ictonyx senegalensis*) [H. baudari].

kkémú (v.n. kkēmà) (1)(a) beat, hit, strike. cf. dàdgú, gùbdú; mènú.

(b) beat drum, play any musical instrument which requires striking, strumming, etc. sai ndá kkēm ganga taatarənguda-taatarənguda 'then they beat the drum bangity-bangity-bang'; aa kkēma-k gūrum aa ruwa 'he was strumming the "banjo" and singing'. cf. nānmú.

(c) castrate animal by pounding cords leading to testicles. cf. dàdgú (b), dǎu (3f).

(2)(with kúřtēm as subject) 'stumble'. See kúřtēm.

(3) v.intr. ad-aaja kkēmə-ngara 'we're lost'.

kóo (< H. kóo) (kóo is apparently a very recent borrowing from Hausa, not frequently used among older speakers and sometimes used redundantly along with better integrated structures—see first example under (1) and under (2))

(1) = bíi-n (cf. báí (3b)) = řâ: or (can be used to join two noun

phrases, prepositional phrases, or sentences). kaa tla bii-n koo aaku 'like a cow or (or) a goat'.

(2) introduces question. too, koo naa laabař dagii waařa àa d-aakun waařa řap yaaye? 'well, is there any news from your town that is not too extensive?'.
 (3) isn't that so?, i.e. tag on question where affirmative response is expected. kaakasku à nci wa bii ko? 'God doesn't like us, huh?'.
 (4) even. koo suwan naa zha ndá dlam bai 'not even a dream about war did one do'. cf. kée , yàayé (1).

kóókó small frog. See tàpáu (1). cf. bəřtəktək, kəřinàkáu.

kòókúyòk (pl. kòókúyáyín) comb of chicken, guinea fowl, etc.

kshî them, i.e. third person plural pronoun used as:

(1) Indirect Object Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxii), where it is always in the construction fi-kshî.

(2) Associative Pronoun (paradigm, p. xxii), where it is preceded by -áa when added to nouns ending in -a, -i, -u.

cf. ákshî.

kúu see àkáu (2)

kúdèmdèm (pl. kúdèmdèmmámín) square room or house with flat roof. cf. kágò, səsàu, wéndùwà.

kúdèřà (pl. kúdèřàřín) misfortune. dagwař fiit aka-n, kudèřa dāa yi 'if the devil fans a fire, then misfortune will enjoy (its heat)'. cf. bóonè, ngénəpù, kàbínè, tətāa (2).

kúdkúvdà nine.

kùfú (pl. kùfàfín) knee. pa kufu-gara 'she knelt' (see páu).

kújéeré (pl. kújéeràřín)(cf. H. kújèerāa) = gwájéerée chair.

kùukà (pl. kùukàkín) spitting of cat, hissing of snake or monitor, snorting of bull. gayim dāa ji kuuka 'the cat spit'.

kùkkú (v.n. kùkkà) = kùpkú (q.v.)

kúkú (pl. kúkwákín) baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) [H. kuka]. cf. mātá-kùwà; diùgwánkú.

kúkùn see kùn (4)

kúkútəřəm (pl. kúkútəřàřmámín)(< K. kútəřəm) mirror.

kúlāabí (pl. kúlāabàbín) baby. See gùdvú (a).

kùlāařám (pl. kùlāařàmámín) animal's hoof. cf. fètàk.

kúlúm (cf. H. kúllúm < Ar.) = fàtàwànké (q.v.) always (usually introduces sentence of which it is a part. kulum mēse-gaa áa dēga-gaa 'my husband is always following me'; kullum ndá wn aa rakii bai 'it's not always that one sleeps on a bed'. See dlabáu (3).

kùmàgádédâ (pl. kùmàgádádín) prayer.

kúmàakùmí (pl. kúmàakùmámín) quilted armor worn by a man. See karmú.
cf. búgè, sùlgé.

kùmú (v.n. kùmà) (a) plant stake or pole in ground. cf. dèbú.

(b) stretch hide by attaching it to stakes planted around its perimeter.

(c) haft by inserting blade into shaft. ná kum gawa ii miya gēji 'I hafted the ax (blade) into the hole of the handle'. cf. shiyú.

kùn you (pl.), i.e. second person plural pronoun used as:

(1) Independent Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxi).

(2) Indirect Object Pronoun (p. xxi).

(3) Bound Suffix Pronoun (p. xxii), where it is preceded by -áa when added to a noun ending in -a, -i, or -u.

(4) Independent Associative Pronoun (p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kúkùn,

cf. kwa.

kúnámú (pl. kúnámámín) deleb or fan palm (*Borassus flabellifer*) [H. ginyiná].

kùndú (v.n. kùndâ) postpone; decide against.

kùnkùdú (v.n. kùnkùdâ) rinse (mouth).

kúnò (pl. kúnànanín) (< K. kúnno 'joy') happiness.

kùnú (pl. kúnànín) (1) stomach, i.e. the internal organ. See mpàyí.
cf. bàazhí, mádáu, tumpí.

(2)(a) desires, feelings, that which is felt within one. dá dlamai bii kun-aakshi 'they did what they felt like'. See dàa (1b) last ex., dlamú (1c). cf. gēshí (2).

(b) as object of tàdú: 'relax'. See tàdú (2b).

(3) as locative word: (a) inside, into. jàa ya ii kunu-k pata 'we are going into the bush'; aci à nci bee aa kunu-k áa 'he wants something in town'.

(b)(i) within, among. See gēzhí, dlagdú second example.

(ii) dà kùnú 'from, out of; of'. dá nai naa řap da kunu-k nda-geri 'he came with a few of his followers'; gayi da kunu-k mainaucin Ngwajin 'one of the princes of Ngwajin'.

(4)(used with Imperfective pronouns—paradigm p. xxi—followed by action noun) be engaged in. *jàa kunu tləri* 'we were engaged in battle'; *Mai Dəmza á kunu-k dlama-k garva* 'Mai D. was engaged in the duties of chiefdom'. cf. *təkà* (4).

kùpkú (v.n. *kùpkà*) = *kùkkú* (a) v.intr. come unhafted. See *ràvènú*.

(b) v.tr. unhaft.

kúptâ (pl. *kúptátín*)(cf. H. *kúftaa*) coat-sleeved, short, embroidered gown, worn by men.

kùráám (pl. *kùràràámín*, *kùrààmámín*) short-handled hoe [H. *fartanya*] with blade set at an angle to handle; used in preparing farm for planting, weeding, harvesting peanuts, etc. cf. *dàbí*, *gùràfú*, *gàadéří*, *gàm-ráarìyàk*.

kùřbá acting in an ill-considered or foolish way. See *ngè*.

kúřdúđú (pl. *kúřdádádín*) a little beer cooked at home for personal use.

kùrkúm type of mouse or rat (sp.?) [H. *beran gida*]. cf. *dlágái*, *gáadà-gùm*.

kúřnà (pl. *kúřnàín*)(cf. K. and H. *kúrnà*) a thorny tree with a nut-like fruit (*Zizyphus spina-christi*). cf. *kwàyú*.

kúřpák (pl. *kúřpápín*)(cf. K. *kárvè*) cane switch. cf. *làkóodì*.

kúřpí (< K. *kárbí*) well-bucket.

kúrsâasíyá (pl. *kúrsâasíyáyín*) kidney.

kùřtèkú (v.n. *kùřtèkà*) dislocate, sprain. *ná kuřtèkè-ngaa* 'I got a sprain'.

kùřtèm stumbling. *kuřtèm kkəm iyu* 'I stumbled' (stumbling hit me).

kùřtú (pl. *kùřtátín*)(cf. H. *kùrtúu*) small, spherical gourd used as a receptacle for various liquids or seeds. cf. *ádíyú*.

kùrú (v.n. *kùrí*) (1)(followed by noun phrase) revile, dislike. *gaada-k ná 'yawu wənya gaama, kurə-naa yu* 'just because I bore a girl (instead of a boy), he (my husband) dislikes me'. See *bəmbəkshí*.

(2)(a)(followed by a sentence in Subjunctive or nominalized phrase where subject of *kùrú* and that of complement are different) refuse to allow. *rama kurə kaci: rəvək juwak kurə makas* (epithet of proverbs) 'words which refuse to be answered: the skin of a fly cannot be smoothed out (for tanning)'. See *təřfú*.

(b) followed by a nominalized construction where *kùrú* and complement have the same subject (i) refuse to do. See *livú* (2).

(ii) refrain from doing; put off doing. *ká bəntai wakakin gaawa ká kurai-naa kətí kuku-ci?* 'you passed a lot of trees and you held off

smashing your baobab pod (against them)?'. See *dīyí*.

kùřú = kèřú (q.v.)

kùřùm *id.* hidden, huddled up. náa rii tku dai, kuřum; ii dambasu naa nda-gaa 'I'm here kuřum; I'm settled with my people'.

kúruwâ (*pl.* kúruwáwɪn) shouting. dà kuruwa 'he shouted' (he brought out shout). See máa (lai), ráu (l). cf. àdán.

kústâ (*pl.* kústátɪn) (< K. kústà) colt. cf. dùukà.

kùtóř (*pl.* kùtátíř) tail.

kùtőřú (*pl.* kùtőřàřín) (< K. kùtùrú) puppy. cf. jă.

kùtàsú (*pl.* kùtàsàsín) shea nut tree or fruit (*Butyrospermum parkii*) [H. kaďanya].

kùtləm-kùtlém ghost.

kùtləptú (*v.n.* kùtləptà) pound wet grain in mortar to make fura, etc. cf. zàatú.

kùtlái (*pl.* of wən, mətíkám (1); wényâ (2), or any combination of these) = māmáu (2) (q.v.) one's children, offspring. á nkalci ii-wa kutlii-wa 'take care of our children for us'.

kùtlpěř (*pl.* kùtlpàpíř) louse found on fowl.

kùutó (*pl.* kùutátín) bellows. See gàadā (lc).

kùtú (*v.n.* kùtā) wash lower legs, arms, and face, esp. in water without soap. ná kwē tka-gaa 'I bathed' (as described). cf. cùntú, vīyú; dákwā.

kúwà see wà (4)

kùwá (? < H. or K. kùwá) (with topicalized noun phrase) as for, indeed. ii kuwa, ná zga bai. 'as for me, I don't know'. cf. ngúm (b), kàyà.

kùyàngí (*pl.* kùyàngàgín) small pan for measuring corn, peppers, etc. cf. gėrgiyà.

kùyòotú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* kùyòotà; kùyó) (? < K.) get drunk. sa səma-n kə-rīnakau, áa kuyo-n vənaakau 'it's the frog that drank the beer, but it is the fish that gets drunk'.

kúyú (*pl.* kúyáyín) ring.

kùyú (*v.n.* kùyà) (1) grasp tightly in hand. cf. gáfáu, jìbú.
(2) crouch, huddle up (from cold, etc.).

kwa(a) you (pl.), i.e. second person plural pronoun used as Subject Pronoun in verbal and locative sentences (see paradigm, p. xxi for remarks on tone and vowel length). cf. kùn.

kwàbshí (pl. kwàbshàshín) carrier's head pad.

kwàabú (v.n. kwáabà) not go well, come out badly. wana-w kwaabè-ngara 'the work went badly'.

kwákúnù just inside. cf. kùnù.

kwáakúrài (pl. kwáakúràín) metal throwing weapon used to hunt small animals like hares and guinea fowl [H. kere].

kwàkúríyáakwàk id. sound of rooster crowing. cf. kwàryú.

kwákwaná (pl. kwákwanáucín) courtier. See màrwàyú.

kwákwàk wind, esp. cold wind. cf. zùwàk.

kwáité trap consisting of a hole in the ground into which game falls. cf. àràakáu, kàmbúudì, kêl.

kwàm (pl. kwàamín) bull. cf. tlà.

kwán three.

kwànkòorí rapping (a child's) head with knuckles. See páu (2).

kwáankwáasák (pl. kwáankwáasàsín) charcoal. cf. àván.

kwàptú (v.n. kwàptà) join, bring together. cf. nèbku.

kwáařá (pl. kwáařářín) (< K. kóró) donkey. cf. bìidâl.

kwàràkwàntà bohor reedbuck (*Redunca redunca nigeriensis*).

kwàřbú (v.n. kwàřbà; kwàřáb) dig up, hoe up. cf. gùutú, rùuyú.

kwàřkwàřtú (v.n. kwàřkwàřtà) turn around and around.

kwàryàk bucking of donkey, etc. kwaařa áa kwaryak 'the donkey is bucking'.

kwàryú v.intr. (v.n. kwàryà) crow (of a rooster). gaskam waařa áa kwarya, ndaa gayim, ndaa gazabi, sai kwaryu 'as for a rooster that is going to crow, there can be a cat, there can be a hawk, (but) he'll still crow'. cf. kwàkúríyáakwàk.

kwàtànkó (pl. kwàtànkàkwín) (< K.) = bùufú large bag.

kwàatlíú (v.n. kwàatlà) scratch, claw (so as to give pain, inflict wound). See dāanú (2). cf. tlàadú, zàzgú.

kwàyà (< K. kwoya) if (not commonly used; 'if' normally expressed by

ín, q.v.). cf. gàfà (1).

kwáayàk (pl. kwáayàín) small earthenware bowl. See vǎu (1b).

kwàyú (pl. kwàyàín) jujube tree (*Zizyphus jujuba*). cf. kúrǎ.

kwìifàafènú (v.n. kwìifàafèná) wrinkle. zanai kwìifaafe-ne-ngara 'the gown wrinkled'.

kwìitáawà (pl. kwìitáawàín) the bitter tomato (*Solanum* spp.) [H. gauta, yalo]. See dǎu (2a).

L

lǎbǎd-lǎbǎd id. soft. dǎa kǎmi lǎbǎd-lǎbǎd 'he felt it [rooster's comb] was soft'. cf. lǎfíid, lǎglók, lǎmíis, tǎlúus.

lǎfíid softness of skin or hide products, ground, but not meat; ideophonic word which can be used following noun (but not preceding) as an adjective. rǎvǎk lǎfíid 'soft hide'. cf. lǎbǎd and other words cited there.

lǎglók id. softish. cf. lǎbǎd and other words cited there.

lǎmǎn (pl. lǎmǎmín) (< K. lǎmǎn < Ar.) wealth, in the sense of physical property, esp. animals. See bǎrǎd, dǎsú, ngǎfǎrǎk, tǎtǎa (2). cf. bǎrǎd, fǎayín.

lǎmíis (cf. K. lǎmít ideophone used with 'soft'; H. limas same usage) soft, as a cushion; ideophonic word which can be used following, but not preceding a noun as an adjective. bii sukta-k adǎ lǎmíis 'soft pillow'. cf. lǎbǎd and other words cited there.

lǎmú = nǎmú (for some speakers, n dissimilates to l in the environment of an m—cf. also dǎnmú)

lǎntú (v.n. lǎntà) (cf. K. lǎ-jǎn 'touch') touch. Mai Ganjuwa áa lǎnta bai; kǎ lǎntǎ-n, kǎa kǎmuu kaarak bai 'Mai Ganjuwa wasn't touchable; if you touched him, you wouldn't feel pleasantness'. See kǎmǎu (1d). cf. kǎmǎu (1d).

lǎptǎ (pl. lǎptátǎn) (< K. lǎp-cǎn 'to load') load placed on animal's back, in truck, etc. See ngǎnǎpǎ. cf. kǎkǎrǎ, kǎrǎ.

lǎrgíid id. very dense. Riddle: lǎrgíid mǎnjǎu; answer: gǎdók'yík '(it's) very dense and leaves no open space; the twining plant *Momordica balsamina*' (refers to the way this plant climbs a wall and densely covers it).

lǎvǎatú (v.n. lǎvǎatà) (? < K.) deceive. cf. dǎlǎatú.

l'àabâř (pl. l'àabâřář|n)(*< K. l'avâr < Ar.*) news; story: account.

l'ádàp (? *< K. < Ar.*) etiquette, protocol.

l'áadùwà (*< K. l'âdè < Ar.*) Sunday.

l'agòotú (*v.n. l'agòotà*)(? *< K.*) (1) *v.tr.* appease; persuade. lagoot iyu ná deř akshi 'they persuaded me to wait for them'; maguru dá jibi lagoota-k ama-gəri dà ram ii-tu maa ... 'the jealous man began to coax his wife saying to her ...'.

(2) *v.intr.* be patient, be appeased.

l'àkítà (pl. l'àkítáuc|n)(? *< H. l'íkítà < E.*) (modern) doctor.

l'àkóodì (pl. l'àkóodàdín) hide whip. cf. kúřpák.

l'ákwù (pl. l'ákwùtátín)(*< K. l'óktù < Ar.*) time, i.e. moment in time. See ngùbùutú.

l'ákwù used to introduce a time adverbial clause in the meaning 'when': the clause of which l'ákwù is the head may be interpreted as a relative clause, i.e. '(at) the time that ...', though the relative marker wàařà is rarely used in this grammatical context; a Perfective verb in the clause indicates the event in the l'ákwù clause is completed prior to the main clause, an Imperfective indicates incompleteness; 'n or nén (cf. 'n (Bl)) indicates that the events of the sentence have yet to occur or if past time is referred to, that the events were recurring or habitual; ténú, ngùm, or Ø (cf. ténú (2), ngùm (a)) at the end of the clause indicate a single, completed act. (Perfective, final 'n) lakwtu ndá badiite am nèn, já dlama-naa zəgəm 'when it starts to rain, we will do the planting'; (Imperfective, final 'n) lakwtu nà nci kəm nèn, nà taanyi kəm 'when I want you, I'll remember you'; (Perfective, Ø) lakwtu zayi gadə-ngara, kwaarfa ji-ngə-ri ii pata 'when the rope broke, the donkey ran away to the bush'; (Imperfective, final ténú) lakwtu wunya-k bədlamu à rama-w tənə, goomak aa kəmuu-gara 'while the hyena's daughter was talking, the ram was listening to her'. See tlèrú.

l'áalé (*< K. l'álé* 'greeting between two persons of equal rank') hello.

l'amâr (pl. l'amâřář|n)(*< K. l'amâr < Ar.*) affair, event. cf. wújəř.

l'ámbe (pl. l'ámáb|n)(*< K. l'ámǃ* 'concern; scarcity of provisions, neediness') need, requirement. lambee tasee-w bee waařa dá lambeeci bii-n, naa lambee bai 'when a necessity doesn't come across something that might require it, there is no necessity'. cf. l'ambó; l'amí.

l'ambèetú (*v.n. l'ambèetà; l'ámbe, q.v.*)(*< K. l'ámǃ*) need, require. See l'ámbe.

l'ambó (*< K. l'ámǃ*, which Lukas (1937) says = l'ámǃ, cf. Ngizim l'ámbe) concern, when used in expressions such as the following: lamboogaa-n tam? 'what the devil do I care?' [what is my concern?]; lam-

boo-ci-n tam? 'it's none of your business!'.

láamí (pl. láamámín) (related to K. lámbí, cf. Ngizim lámbé) craving, esp. for food. ii naa laami = naa laami 'I crave (food, etc.)'; áa ji laam-aaci! 'satisfy your cravings!' (cf. dǎu (1)). See tlàtú. cf. lámbé, ndèlám, zèlámá.

làamísùwà (< K. làmísà < Ar.) Thursday.

làamtú (v.n. làamtà)(? < K. làn-jîn 'abuse') (usually with Totality suffixes -náa, -dù) come away from eating, drinking, working, etc. with unsatisfied feeling. jà ji jà laamci-du 'we went but we were not satisfied with it'.

láancíidò immature locust bean fruits (eaten by children). cf. rùwánú.

làap id. in a swooping motion. dee laap tən, dá jib-naa zəgər-gu gayi dá wji-du 'when she swooped down, then she grabbed one of his feet and cut it off'.

lárábà (< K. lárávà < Ar.) Wednesday.

lǎrdì (pl. lǎrdàdín) (< K. lǎrdè < Ar.) (1) country, area, region. ta-see dǎa bai aa lǎrdì Ngəzəm see Ngwajin 'they found no town in the Ngizim area other than Ngwajin'. cf. gǎgái.

(2) the world. cf. dùuníyâ.

lǎuláu (cf. K. lǎu = fǎu) thin, watery.

làunú (v.n. lǎunà; làwán) (this verb replaces ìikáu (q.v.) when used in the Imperfective or as a verbal noun; làunú can also be used in other aspects, but rarely is since ìikáu is normally used there)

(1)(a)(used with object in the sense of 'have in view') see. gaa-dagum áa lawan vək, aka áa ta-gəri bai 'the rat sees a hole, the fire won't get him'. See jàajəm, kàkà (2), tiùwá.

(b)(with no object in the sense of 'have use of the eyes') see. saw náa lawan bai 'note that I can't see (I've gone blind)'. See dǎa (1b).

(2) look at; watch. See gámádlìyàk.

(3) look over; select through visual perusal.

(4)(followed by sentence, which may be treated like direct object noun or as loosely bound sentence juxtaposed to verb) see that. ndiwa áa lawan bǎrbǎr tařnee-naa dǎa 'the people saw that (a cloud of) dust was moving toward town'. See tǎdú (2b).

láyí(-láyí) cool, cold; coolness, coldness. am layi = layi-k am 'cool water'. See ìivú (1c).

làayfǎmâ (pl. làayfǎmámín) (< K. lǎimà 'tent' < Ar.) umbrella.

léebèrà (pl. léebèràucín) (< E. 'laborer' ? via H.) laborer.

lèemên (pl. lèemàmín)(< K. lèemûn < E. 'lemon') citrus fruit.

lífíí (pl. lífífáíín)(cf. K. {íúú} pocket. See nàwáú (1a).

lìijâm (pl. lìijàmíín)(< K. {izâm < Ar.) bridle. See kàaktíú.

lódòì (< E. 'loading' ? via H.) loading (truck, etc.).

lùbùutú (v.n. lùbùutà) entwine, wind around and around. ja dà yì dà
maaki gadək'yik gaawa dá lubuuci ii tēka-gara bal 'the dog went,
looked for a lot of gadək'yik twiner and wound it all over her body'.

lùnkùdú (v.n. lùnkùdà) dip (thing) into liquid.

M

médíyà (pl. médíyàyáín) the millet *Pennisetum spicatum* [H. malwa]. cf.
áw; mǎrdú.

mèdú (v.n. mèdà) tie in a bundle, tie up load. Riddle: tēmtem-gaa
kwan: ii maa ná m'yi naa zayi, áa mda bai 'my logs are three: I
said I would tie them up with a rope, but they weren't tiabable' (an-
swer: agwai 'eggs'); ná mda-naa kaʔee-gaa 'I tied up my load'. cf.
tākwsú.

mègènyí (pl. mègènyàucín)(d.f. gènú) (1) receiver, one who receives.

(2) owner. zani-k jəjəm, mēgənyu-w ngum tadə bai balle baaci-k
saaʔu-w 'a gown of thorns, its owner doesn't put it on, let alone
the one who borrows it'. cf. bàací, and see sàaʔuutú for example
of bàací used in a similar context with identical meaning.

(3) = sèkù (usually with a first person possessive pronoun) God.
See dàmbà, last example.

mégìyá ratel (*Millivora capensis*).

mènáafêk n. or adj. (pl. mènáfkáucín)(< K. múnáfèk < Ar.) hypocrite;
one with evil ways. magəraf mēnaafək kə nən gayi bai 'a hypocriti-
cal visitor does not belong to just one person'.

méndùwà = wéndùwà (q.v.)

mènú (v.n. mènà) (1) knock down with a blow, hit something, e.g. a
rabbit as it runs by. cf. kkəmú, řàabú.

(2) wait for. cf. dèřáu.

mérên (pl. méráncín)(d.f. řènú) paramour, (male) lover. cf. dàmánà,
dàawánà.

mèràk (pl. mèràríín) oil.

mèrgèdú (v.n. mèrgèdà) wring out.

mèrməsú (v.n. mèrməsà) rub lightly, rub with circular motion, e.g. rub peanuts in hands to remove skins. ná merməsə mərak ii tēka-gaa 'I rubbed oil on my body'; ná merməsə aci ada vənyi 'I rubbed corn (lightly with circular motion) on top of grindstone (to remove last bits of bran, etc.)'. cf. yàikáu, zàzgú, zùwáu.

mèrtəkú (v.n. mèrtəkà) twist. dá mērtēki-naa wəra-g gaskam-gu 'he wrang the rooster's neck'.

məsək (pl. məsəskín) husband. cf. gəmsək, nən.

məshónú (pl. məshónán|n) tamarind (*Tamarindus indica*) [H. tsamiya].

məstú (v.n. məstà) (1)(a) turn. məstee miya-w 'he turned the point of it (spear) this way'. See àdlídləbá, dēkú, dēvāarú. cf. gwāafú.

(b) tilt. dá məstai zhabuwa-w řap 'he poured out a little of the honey (by tilting the jar)'.

(2)(a) change some aspect of one's person. áa məsta kaa kənji 'he changes like a chameleon'. See gənāawā.

(b) change into, metamorphose into, turn into. məsta bədlamu tētaa bai, nambow kutəř baya 'turning into a hyena isn't so hard, if it weren't for the lack of a tail'. cf. kàtáu (2).

métókùs, mótókùs (pl. mótókùsàsín; mótókùsáuc|n) lower leg, including calf and shin. cf. gèmə, zègər.

métká (pl. mētkák|n) (< E. 'motor car' ? via K.) car.

mètlkíď = mètíkíď wùrá necklace made of couries and beads sewn on a piece of cloth.

mètú v.intr. (v.n. mètú) die. See nàa (5), yāawāi. cf. rəbú (2).

mèzəmú v.intr. (v.n. mēzəmà; mēzəm) groan, grunt. ká kəma gəmsək áa mēzəm nən, nàa tētaa aa tēka-gəri 'if you hear a man groaning, there must be pain in his body'.

mèzám (pl. mēzámčín)(d.f. zámá) hunter. cf. mēzámək.

mēzbà hole in zana-mat, cornstalk fence, etc. gadla dlam-naa mēzba 'the zana-mat has a hole in it'.

máa (1) introduces a direct (ai below) or indirect quotation (aii below), or follows a direct quotation (b below); máa is required after any verb which may take a speech act or thought as a complement, e.g. rāmú 'say', jàayú 'ask', kəmáu 'hear that', ngùmú 'answer', etc.; in the context meaning "X said ..." máa alone may be used with no overt verb (see last example under (ai) below) but a verb is always required if an indirect object is present; máa is also used before pro-forms standing in place of a quotation, e.g. when questioning what was said

(see last example under (aii); in (b) where the phrase with *máa* follows the quotation, the quotation apparently must be direct and no verb or indirect object can be used. NB: The complement introduced by *máa* cannot be taken as a direct object noun phrase of the verb as can be seen in the last example of (aii), where the mark of a deleted direct object, *-w*, is present.

(a)(i) preceding direct quotation. *dà ram ii-ci maa*, "manga, baaba maa kà yi" 'he said to him, "my friend, Dad says that you should come"; *dá jibi kuruwa fau maa*, "náa ma-k rawan?" 'he began to scream pitifully, "what will happen to me?"; *bədiamu maa*, "to" 'the hyena said, "OK". See *dàaci*.

(ii) preceding indirect quotation or thought. *ndáa samana maa ndá mpa dluḡun Yaŋiima Nyaabee-gu* 'they say that the name Yarima Nyabe was given'; *ná kema maa gwamna áa bənta gusku* 'I hear that the governor is passing through today'; *ii maa avan-k aka áa patla-k ad-aaci* 'I thought that it was hot embers on your head'; *náa rama-w maa tam?* 'what will I say?'. See *jàab*, *təpkú* (1).

(b) following a direct quotation. See *dəmiyú* (2), *zədáí*.

(2) preceding a proper name; *máa* is virtually obligatory preceding a proper name in a sentence like 'the name of X is ...' (a below) or 'they call X ...' (b below).

(a) *dluḡun-gə áaa-cu-w maa Kuřəmci* 'the name of your town is Kurumci'; *dluḡun-gaa maa Tambai* 'my name is Tambai'.

(b) *ndáa raura-gara maa Canduwa* 'they called her Canduwa'.

mábədi (d.f. *bədiú*) one who digs. See *ivú* (2).

máabədi (pl. *máabədiáŋ*) neighbor; more especially, a neighbor who brings his grain to someone else's house to be brewed together with that person's grain into beer. See *gənú* (2).

mábəřədi (pl. *mábəřədiáŋ*; *ndá bəřədi*, *ndá bəřədiáŋ*) (d.f. *bəřədi*) wealthy person. See *guzəp*.

mábáři (pl. *ndà-k báři*) (d.f. *bəru*) one who gives.

mábu (pl. *mábəbín*, *mábəucín*) large calabash. cf. *fəná*.

máćákùwà (pl. *máćákùwəwín*) giraffe (*Giraffa camelopardalis*). See *ngál-kò*.

màadəbəř (pl. *màadəbəřəřín*) corpulence, pot belly, "spare tire".

máadəvən last year. cf. *wəyák*, *dəvənəngú*.

máadəyfiròk (pl. *máadəyfirəřín*) type of biting ant [*H. cirnaka*]. cf. *duuráawà*, *mìyàakùwà*.

máadàngó (pl. *máadàngwəgwín*) an herb of the family *Asclepiadeae* [*H. lo-jiya*], with milky juice and edible tubers. *zəgaya naa bai: vəji raakən aa đà-k maadango* 'it's just ignorance: a monkey walked on top

of the maadango-plant (which he could have eaten)'.

mádáu (pl. mádádín) pregnancy, pregnant stomach. dɔgʒə aa ɗa madau 'he had intercourse with a pregnant woman'. cf. bàazhí, kùnú.

màdbák (pl. màdbàbín)(? d.f. dèbísú 'hide') dark, out of the way recess, e.g. narrow space between compounds. See dāmáakènm.

mádlàwàì left; left hand. See dádìlògà, díágwdàrú, màtá.

màdìbák (pl. mādìbàbín) the tall, heavy grass *Andropogon guyanus* [H. gamba]; it is often used for plaiting zana-mats (gádlà) and the granary gádlái.

màdḡvàaràk (pl. mādḡvàaràrín)(d.f. ḡvàarú 'threaten by pointing finger') = māsàaudàk (q.v.) forefinger. cf. zhègwèt, áikwàk (2).

mádāmbá (pl. mādāmbàbín) mat [H. tufaniya] woven like zana-mat (gádlà), used as a door closure or to sit on.

máḡāawà (pl. mādāawàwín)(? d.f. ḡāawú 'put') dew. See bádāwàì.

màḡtú (v.n. mādḡtà) compress. See ḡāawú (2b). cf. bḡḡdú, càapáu, mādḡḡ, tāmḡḡ, zhìibú.

mādḡḡ (v.n. mādḡḡ) squeeze, squeeze out. cf. bḡḡdú, càapáu, mādḡtú, tḡḡḡḡ, tāmḡḡ, zhìibú.

máfíyâ (d.f. fìyú 'blow') (1) breathing.

(2) ná da mafiya 'I took a rest'.

máḡèràf (pl. mágèrèwàvín, mágèràfín)(? d.f. gùrvú 'accompany') guest; visitor; stranger. See mēnāafàk.

máḡáḡḡ (mà-k áḡḡ—cf. máu (2a)) praise, boastful epithets.

máḡāají (< H. mágāají 'heir') first-born son of any wife.

mágàná (pl. mágànàvín) term of address or reference to a sorceress (zḡḡḡḡ).

máḡāayú (pl. mágāayáyín)(d.f. gāayú) one who climbs.

máḡḡḡ (v.n. mágḡḡ; mágḡḡ) make pelvic thrusts, as in sexual intercourse.

māagì (pl. māagàgín)(< K. mágè) week.

māagíířâ (pl. māagíířářín)(? < K.) leader of the women in a town. See yāayé (1).

máḡùrú (pl. mágùràucín)(d.f. gùrú) jealous person.

māgván (pl. māgvàvín)(d.f. gùvú 'corpse') carrion, body of an animal.

magvan vəji 'dead monkey'.

mâi (< K. mâi 'king') Mai, i.e. a chief who descends from the line of the Mais of Birni Ngazargamo. cf. dègè̀m, gárvà.

mâi (pl. miiwád, miiwàwín) (referential form is miiyú 'the mother (in question)'; medially in a phrase, mâi becomes mii by a general rule affecting any -ai)

(1) mother. cf. dàadà.

(2) female of around the age of one's mother with whom one has a special attachment or relationship. See mii gázgàrà, mii gángám. cf. dàadà.

(3)(f.sg.) one who does X, one who has X (the m.sg. equivalent is bàací, the plural is ndà; see bàací for details of usage). gawa mii kukka 'an ax which comes unhafted'; mii-k diyi-k maayim-gu 'the one who gave birth to the boy'; gaaza mii-k hal 'a chicken with a bad temper'. See dèkú.

(4) mii-k X: 'feminine person or thing taking feminine agreements which is associated with X'. See mii wúndùwà, mii gáw, zùwàk (2). For compounds formed with mâi, see below, entries beginning in mii-.

máinà (pl. máinaucín)(< K. mâinà 'prince', i.e. son of king of Birni Ngazargamo) prince, son of a Mai (q.v.).

màajiyà (pl. màajiyayín) first or principal wife of household. ama-w maajiya 'his principal wife'. cf. àbá, áamá (2).

mák = bál = cákcák = cá́m all. See bál for general remarks and further examples. aba-gaa ji ii Anku-k Bagaja, mak dèka tēra gayi bai dá ka-laktai-ngara 'my co-wife went to Lake Bagaja and the whole (trip) did not exceed a month before she came back' (cf. bál (4)).

màakəm (pl. màakàkəm (1); màakàmcín (2)) (1) horn blown in hunting to call other hunters. See fiyú.

(2) trumpeting with horn or making trumpeting noises with mouth. baa-ci maakəm 'the "trumpeter" at bárákáu (q.v.) ceremony'.

màkàlàu (pl. màkàlàucín)(d.f. kálàu) fearful person.

mákàs (< K. mágàsè < Ar.) scissors.

màksú (v.n. máksà; màkás) flatten out, squash, smooth with rubbing motion, e.g. with heel of hand; massage. See kùrú (2a).

màakú (v.n. máakà) (1)(a) look for.

(b) seek out and find. See dèbú, lùbùutú, tétàa, zègéégé. cf. tək-tlú.

(2)(followed by nominalized action phrase) seek to do, try to do. kàa ya ii maaka-k zəba da maaka-k dayu? 'are you trying to get married or trying to do yourself in?'.

mákúrl (pl. mákúràrín)(d.f. kùrú) enemy. "makur-aaci áa tək-aaci," gambagadlam ram ii kutər-gəri "'your enemy is on your body," said the giant rat to his tail'.

máalēm, máalām (pl. máalámcln)(< K. málēm or H. máalām < Ar.) (a) malam, teacher.

(b) sorcerer. See ìivú (ld). cf. zégá.

màmà (pl. màmàmín) (a) coldness.

(b) the harmattan; cold season. See gùdlèř. cf. tièràmù.

mâamáu (1)(a)(pl. of máayim, sometimes mâamáu gamsàk) boys; young men.

(b)(pl. of wényâ, usually used in mâamáu gàmád) girls; young women. Canduwa, canduwa-k maamau gaamad, bee ntuu maamau gamsak naa maapən-daawad (epithet of a girl named Canduwa) 'Canduwa, the most beautiful of young women, something loved by the boys and young men'.

(2)(pl. of wèn, màtkám, wényâ) = kùtlái (q.v.) one's children, offspring. nana maamau-wa-w? 'how are those children of ours?'.

mámàsú (pl. mámàsàsín)(d.f. mbàsú) one who sits, one who resides.

màmđú (v.n. màmđá) be crowded, be hemmed in.

mànàmín (pl. mənəməmín) term for Hausas, Kanuris, Fulanis used in order to conceal their commonly known names when speaking to other Ngizims.

mànànú (d.f. mánú, q.v.) spend several years. See mánú.

mànàwá (cf. K. mánà 'word, speech; intention') opportunity, thing to take advantage of, time spent in leisure. manaw-aacu-w gaawa-n, nà ya-ngaa 'if you're too busy, I'll leave'.

mándá (pl. mándádín)(< K. mándá) salt in molded blocks for use by both people and animals. See ámbàì. cf. béezà.

màngá (pl. mǎnglītáu) (a) friend. See səkəntù. cf. múyî, hěrmá, mǎntáu.

(b) one who shares in some activity. See gùrvú, nàa (lbii). cf. kámâncì.

màngàřtú (v.n. mǎngàřtà; mǎngàřá)(? < K. mǎngàr-jîn 'covet') choose, elect. ná mǎngàřtə ama 'I chose a wife'. cf. cìkđú.

mǎnglīnā (pl. mǎnglīnànín)(d.f. mǎngá) friendship. See hāì (la).

mǎntáu (pl. mǎntātín)(d.f. ħtùutú) = hěrmá intimate friend. á vji kà mci káa ki mǎntuu-ci 'lie down, die, and see who your real friends are'. See ànnàshùwá, dàa (lb). cf. mǎngá.

mànú v.intr. (v.n. mǎnú) spend a year. aagaw-k anayi, ndàa manu àa ða-k tamtla-w, naa am calam bai 'as for gruel made of rubber, one can

spend a year stirring it and it still won't go into solution' (cf. am calam); akshì dá nàì ìì dèkèma-k riyu wam dá mbashì dá manyanyì naa daama 'they came to the west of that place, settled down, and spent several years'.

màapéndì (pl. màapéndàwád) young man. See màamáu (1b). cf. máayim (b), zèdái (2); dábákù.

máptà (pl. máptàtín)(d.f. pètú) one who extracts, pulls out.

màarém (pl. màarèmmàín)(? d.f. rêmáu) (1) adj. (a) big, large. See gâawá (2).

(b) important, prominent. maaremin ndiwa 'important people'.

(2) n. (a) big person or thing.

(b) important or prominent person. maaremin pata 'lord of the bush'.

márákí (pl. márákákín)(d.f. ràkáu) one who chases, drives along.

màaràyá (< H. màaràyáa) Western or buffon's kob (*Kobus (Adenota) kob*).

márfú (pl. márfádín) the millet *Pennisetum typhoideum* [H. gero]. cf. áw; médíyà; vèrdá, gèzhí.

màrí (pl. màràrín) beard. cf. géegè.

màaríirì (< H. màaríirìi) scimitar horned or white oryx (*Oryx dammah*).

màrnliwà sarcasm. dlam aa màrnliwa 'he treated me sarcastically'.

màrnyí (pl. màrnyànyín) (1) tongue. See tètàbú.

(2) branch of a tree.

màrtú (v.n. màrtà)(cf. K. màrtógéskín 'be pleased') be patient; (as imperative, in supplication) "please!". maayim, á màrci 'my boy, please!'; náa màrtà bai 'I won't be patient'. cf. kàsàktú, kàanáadí.

màrwái (v.n. of màrwàyú) fear. tiye dà dlama marwai bai 'let no one be afraid'. cf. káláu.

màrwàyú v.intr. (v.n. màrwái) be afraid, manifest fear; (with following nominalized complement) be afraid to. garva-k duuzhi kabiine: áa marwai-naa kwakwanaucin-geri 'the chieftainship of the owl is a troubled one: he is afraid of his courtiers'; gwangurak dá marwayi-ngara rama ii Canduwa maa ... 'the old woman was afraid to say to Canduwa that ...'. cf. gèràbú, káláu, sàaktú, sàltú.

màasàná (< K. màsàná) mush. cf. gùdú, shár.

màsármì (pl. màsármàmín)(< K. màsármì) maize, corn (*Zea mays*) [H. masara].

màsàaudák (pl. màsàaudáucín)(d.f. sàaudú 'clean bowl with finger') = mà-

dèvàaràk (q.v.) forefinger. cf. zhègwèt.

màsàuyù (pl. màsàuyà'ín)(d.f. sáyà) lazy person. See n'iyú (1b).

máshâalú (pl. máshâalàlín)(d.f. shàalú) one who cares for, watches over.

máshásháawà (pl. máshásháawàwín) the bush *Guiera senegalensis* from which medicine for various ailments is made from leaves, bark, or roots [H. sabara].

màshíídì (pl. màshíídàucín)(< K. màshíídì < Ar.) mosque.

màskàlàatú (v.n. màskàlàatà; máskálà)(< K. máskálà 'a smack in the face') slap.

máskâĩ, máspâĩ (pl. máskâarín) charm for most any purpose, e.g. making one attractive to women, worn around waist or in small leather pouch.

màsú (v.n. másà) buy; v.n. may be used to mean 'trading'.

máték (d.f. táu) one who eats. See jàabì.

màtá (pl. màtátín)(d.f. táu 'eat') right; right hand. mēduw-aaja áa mata kakshí 'our compound is the right of theirs'; aikwak mata viyu madlawii nēn, madlawai dá viy mata 'if the right hand washes the left, so does the left wash the right'.

mátákùwà (pl. mátákùwàwín) small baobab tree (*Adansonia digitata*) [? H. gatsika]. cf. kúkú.

màatàngîizhá (a) beer after three days of cooking (it may be drunk at this stage but is not as strong as sémâ, q.v.).

(b) name for the third day of beer preparation. cf. dàabèkà, bàazhí (2), sémâ.

màtkám (pl. kùtláí) (1) = wēn (a) son. màtkám gèmsèk 'boy child'. cf. wényâ (2).

(2)(followed by noun in associative construction) small one. matkam kē vèji gangam 'small little monkey' [H. ðan karamin birì]. cf. wén-yâ (3).

mátlâ (pl. mátlâtíín) wound. See náu (1). cf. dèřènkú, díáyâ, gábèřzáí, vèrà.

mátíkátíkâ trembling. gaadâ-k matíkátíkâ aci áa dēmuu fuwa bai 'because of trembling he was not able to get down'.

mátùutú (pl. ndá-k túutàtín)(d.f. tùutáu) one who sets a trap or cocks a gun. See sàatú.

máu (v.n. mà; Imperative áa mĩ, Subjunctive dáa mĩ) (1) take, take up, pick up, take thing up as a load. kwà ma tēma-w da gatēř-gu bai don't take this mortar from its place'; jàa ma-k dēm-gu 'we were picking up

wood'. See gàadǎu (b), ìikáú (1) first example. cf. gènú, kàkèrú, jù (2), tǎpáú.

(2) mǎu used in idioms with the following objects:

(a) áǎ as object: 'praise using epithets'. gwanguraucín áa ma-k adǎ-k Canduwa maa ... 'the elders praised Canduwa saying ...'. cf. gèdǐbú.

(b) básâ as object: 'borrow'.

(c) náa ma-k rawan? 'where can I possibly go?'.

(d) gèshî as object: 'become angry'.

màvèjǐ (pl. mǎvéjàjín, ndá véjàjín)(d.f. vèdú) one who lies, is lying. See tàatkú (1).

màvǎktàk (pl. mǎvǎktàucín, mǎvǎktàtín) forepart of a bird's wing. cf. gǎptá.

mǎvgǐ (pl. mǎvgàgín)(d.f. vègú) doorway, usually used in mìyà mǎvgǐ (cf. mìyà (1c), but see gèshî (2d)).

mǎwú (pl. mǎwáwín) the tree *Spondias* spp., which has yellow, plum-like fruit [H. danya].

máyà hunger.

màayá or màyǐ (1) pride; showing off.

(2) strutting, swaggering. duuka-k mayi, àa tu-w-n gèji 'a swaggering horse, it's thirst that will kill him'.

(3) reliance. náa maaya naa ci 'I'm relying on you'.

mǎayim (pl. mǎamáu (gàmsàk)) (a) boy.

(b) young man. See tàpìyú. cf. màapéndì.

For singular, cf. wèn, màtkám; wényâ; for plural cf. kùtlái.

mǎazám (pl. mǎazàmǐn)(d.f. zèmaú) blacksmith, smithing as a profession. See gàadǎ (1c).

màzàmàk (pl. mǎzàmàmín)(d.f. zámâ) skillful hunter or one who has good luck in hunting. See zǎkwâták. cf. mèzám.

mǎzgài the next world. See bàazhí (1).

mǎzgedǐ (pl. mǎzgèedǎdín) ring at the end of spear or stick to keep hand from slipping off. See dèvǎarú.

mbék the tree *Sterculia tomentosa* [H. kukuki].

mbàsú v.intr. (v.n. mbàsù) (1) = diàbǎu (1a), q.v. sit down; sit; remain. See tàtèmú.

(2)(a) settle at a place (to live there).

(b) = dɪàǎú (1b) live, abide, reside. See dǎǎa second example.

(c) become settled, established, set. See hǎl (1a).

(3)(followed by ǐi + nominalized construction) set to. ndǎ mbashi ǐi dadak bǎdlamu buř, buř-buř 'they set to beating the hyena wham, wham-wham'.

cf. mbasu, dǎmbàsù, gǎmbàsák for derived forms and examples.

mbàsù (v.n. of mbàsú) (1) sitting (down). nǎn ɲtə-naa awuk nǎn, kaakə-nii-k mbasu naa bai 'if somebody swallows a pestle, there won't be any more sitting down'.

(2) living, inhabiting, settlement. nǎa ya-ngaa ǐi dǎkəma nǎ maaki rii-k mbasu 'I'm going west to look for a place to live'; atu nee dǎvu-gən kə Pataskamu 'this was the way Potiskum was settled' [it was the way of the settlement of Potiskum]. See dǎkǎu (a).

(3) conditions, the way things are, e.g. mbàsú-k dùuníyà 'the way of the world'. See řák. cf. hǎl (2).

(4) mbàs ǐi dǎa 'squatting (to defecate)'. baaci nya ǐi mbas ǐi dǎa ǎa gənyí-k sakwtu bai 'somebody going out to go to the bathroom doesn't take messages (for delivery)'.

mbíikdǎ (pl. mbíikdǎǎín) snake.

mbùudǎ (pl. mbùudǎǎín) dung beetle; stag beetle.

mbùudǎi charm or potion which makes one invisible. See sǎu (1d).

mèn (with topicalized noun phrase) as for, indeed. ǐi men nǎ ncu 'me, I want it'; can follow other words without affecting the construction. akshí kawa-naakshí hař men wənya-w dǎ kaci-ngara ama-gəri 'they were fond of each other and the girl even became his wife'. cf. ngùm (b), kǎyà.

mǐ, mǐ see mǎu

mǐi = mǎi (q.v.) medially in phrase

mǐi gǎngám younger maternal aunt ('junior mother'). mǐyúu gǎngám 'the aunt previously mentioned (cf. mǐyú). cf. ngǎangám.

mǐigǎw (pl. mǐigǎawǎwǎn)(i.e. mǐi-k ǎw 'mother of guinea corn') West African pygmy mouse (*Mus minutoides*).

mǐi gǎzgàrà older maternal aunt ('elder mother'). mǐi-kun gǎzgara 'your aunt'. cf. mǐi gǎngám.

mǐiksàù (pl. mǐiksàsǎín)(i.e. mǐi-k sǎsàù 'mother of hut') gecko [H. tsaka].

mǐiwà (pl. mǐiwàwǎwǎn)(? d.f. mǐi-wà 'our mother') suckling a baby. ǎmǎ-k mǐiwà 'nursing mother' (pl. is ǎmǎ-k mǐiwàwǎwǎn). viya-k am-k aka kə ama-k mǐiwa 'washing with hot water is for a suckling mother'.

mìyá (pl. mìyáyín) (1)(a) mouth. miy-aaci! 'watch what you say!'. See kàtáu (3).

(b) language, speech, (native or foreign) tongue. mìyà ngézém 'the Ngizim language'.

(c) any opening. miya mavgi 'doorway'; miya-k sau 'door of a room/hut'; miya-k vèda 'outside door of compound'. See gàyí (3c), pállà.

(d) point of spear, etc., the "business end" of. See dèvàarú.

(2)(as a relational word with temporal or locative expressions) next to, the edge of, just before or in front of, on the verge of. miya-k tlanu-k dāa 'very early morning (just before dawn)'; miya gēshi 'pit of the stomach (see gēshí (2e)); bii-k ajap, wiiləwili àa rawa da miya-k am 'an amazing thing, a duck running from before the water'; kapa ii miya saalam-gara, dà mpi aikwa-gəri dāa mi-naa wera gaskam-gu '(he follows) until just before taking leave of her, there he puts out his hand and takes the rooster's neck'. See ráu (1).

(3) idiomatic uses:

(a) (fi)mìyà gàyí 'together, at the same time'. tamke akshi áa dlam-w nən, áa dlama ii miya gayi 'everything they did, they would do together'.

(b) dà mìyá-k X 'because of X'. tək-aakshi ndāa lawan-gu bai da kaacum-kshi 'their bodies were not visible because of their clothes'. See dà (2c), dūkshí (2).

(c) mpá mìyá 'invite'. See mpáu (2c). cf. wètú (2).

(d) mìyá tlèrì 'in the midst of battle'.

(e) mìyá gènyí 'foreskin'.

mìyàakùwà (pl. mìyàakùwàwín) type of black ant which stores corn. [H. tururuwa]. See dlə̀bgə̀nú (b). cf. dūuráawà, máadèvíròk.

mìyú see mòi

mìi zhábùwà bee ("mother of honey").

-mòò what? (form of the interrogative pronoun used when in associative construction with preceding word; always preceded by -gé). wə̀nduwa-gə moo? 'whose house?'; kwáa gamas-gə moo? 'what are you laughing at?'; gàadā-gé mòò? 'why?'. cf. tām, yēe.

-mòóké everything, whatever (form used in associative construction with preceding word). ja-gə mooke dlam-naakshi bəlan? 'is everything all right?'. See dlə̀kwái. cf. tāmke, yēeké, -mòc. NB: While the question word -mòò is obligatorily used in place of tām, the word -mòóké is not obligatorily used in place of tāmke; thus sentences like akshi áa ta-k tamke 'they are eating everything' are possible.

ṁpàatú (v.n. ṁpàatà)(< K. àmbà-jīn 'be useful; feed') (1) be useful, benefit. bee waaṛa áa mpaata-naa kəm 'something that will be useful for you'. cf. páyída.

(2) feed. ná mpaate-naa goomak-gaa 'I fed my ram'.

mpáu (v.n. mpàyí, becomes mpíyúu when used in Imperfective with unexpressed object, mpíi before object; Imperative à mpí, Subjunctive dà mpí) (1)(a) put on, put in, put to. àa mpíyuu ii ña-k baatara áa nta-w 'he was putting it onto the spices and swallowing it'; mpa fëna ii miya-gëri 'he put the calabash to his mouth'. cf. ñaawú.

(b) put away, store, set aside for future use. ká mpa-naa kambi-k nyaw nën, à mpi-naa kambi-k piima 'if you set aside a calabash of slander, set aside a calabash of looking over the shoulder'. See nli (3). cf. tìèkú.

(2) "perform", esp. some sort of social function (the implication seems to be that one acts in an official capacity in performing the task for a third party, whereas dlàmú (q.v.) when used as a pro-verb in a similar way expresses a more direct connection between the agent and the activity).

(a) mpíi-k zèbà 'performing a marriage ceremony' = tákwsá-k zèbà (cf. tàkwsú (b)). cf. dlàmú (leiv).

(b) mpá dlùgùn 'give a name'. ndá mpa dlugun Yařiiima Nyaabe-gu 'one gave the name Yarima Nyabe'. See dlùgùn (b). cf. dlàmú (lei).

(c) mpá (ii X) miya Y 'invite Y (on X's behalf), solicit Y (on X's behalf), convey to Y (that X loves him/her)'. áa zhirau naa wanyu-w ii rii-gara gaada-k ndá mpi ii-ci miya-gara 'he was embarrassed to send to her someone to tell her he loved her'; kà ram ii jaunak dà mpi miya-w tiye naa tiye dá nai 'tell the elephant to issue an invitation that absolutely everybody should come.'

(d) ndá mpa-naa kaawa 'they set to playing'.

mpàyí (v.n. of mpáu) deposit, thing deposited or stored. mpayi-k kunu ñaka-naa mpayi-k gadlai 'something deposited in the stomach is better than something deposited in a granary'.

mpí, mpíi see mpáu

mpíyúu see mpáu

mùgbés warmed up mush.

mùgbá (pl. mùgbàbín) land monitor [H. damo]. cf. gèzhàn.

mùukà n. or adj. (pl. mùukàkín) (< K. mògá) deaf and dumb person; deaf and dumb, i.e. a person who can neither hear nor speak. cf. dàakùyà.

mùnnèn interjection indicating dismay. A: "kaaka bēdlamu naa bai!", B: "munen!" A: 'the hyena's grandfather is no more(i.e. is dead)!', B: 'alas!'. See gādāavá (3).

mùwànak (pl. mùwànanín, mùwànaucín) (d.f. wànáu 'send') messenger.

mùwáu (v.n. mùwà) despise, scorn. suu muwa! 'that's arrogance!'. See dàgđú, gùdlàř, jàajám, tìùwáu.

múyí, múyì (pl. múyáyín, múyàucín) female friend. See yàikáu. cf. mân-gá.

N

-n- morpheme used with intransitive verbs in conjunction with the Intransitive Copy Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxii) to indicate action well or completely done; with transitive verbs -náa (2) or -dù (2) is used. garwa zuktə-n-gara, am dǎa yi-n-gara 'the can was pierced (through) and the water (all) ran out' (cf. am ya-w ii ssau 'water leaked into the house'); ji-n-gəri 'he left' (cf. ju 'he went'). With certain verbs which by their very meaning are "total", e.g. 'die', 'be all gone', this construction is virtually always used. See "NB" following -náa (2) for further remarks.

n = nì Subjunctive form of 'go/come', 'take/bring' (see paradigm, p. xxiii) when nì is in an environment where -i may be deleted without creating an impermissible consonant sequence, e.g. dá n-n-áakshî 'they went', dá n-dù 'they took it', but dá nì-n-gárâ 'she went' (deletion of -i would result in three consonant sequence). cf. -n.

‘n, nén The following statements apply to both (A) and (B) below: ‘n is suffixed to the final word or phrase of which it is a part if that word ends in -a, -i, -u, -ə, and the syllable to which ‘n is attached is raised to high tone, e.g. cì + ‘n → [cí-n]; nén is used if the phrase ends in a consonant, -e, -o, or a diphthong (-ai or -au), and it has no tonal effects; nén is occasionally used after -a, -i, -u, -ə, but ‘n is never used after consonants, diphthongs, -e, or -o.

(A) when the *subject* of a sentence is questioned or focussed, it is shifted into the predicate, normally directly after the direct object if there is one (immediately after the verb if there is not), or sometimes to the end of the entire sentence if any constituents follow the direct object; when subjects are questioned or focussed in this way, they must be immediately preceded by ‘n (or nén). (questions) tamba ci-n tai? 'who helped you?'; waakatə-n tam? 'what happened?'; dləmtə aw-ci-n garuu-g-ee? 'whose goats ruined your guinea corn?'; (focus) ná tamba aci-n iyu 'I helped him'; karmə dəm waafa wà dee-du tən nən Audu 'Audu chopped the wood that we brought'. See also kùyòotú.

(B)(1) when used at the end of an adverbial phrase or clause, ‘n/nén indicates that the event in the clause has either not yet taken place or that it takes place or has taken place repeatedly or habitually (this contrasts with clauses terminating in tǎnú (cf. tǎnú (2)), ngúm (a), or Ø, which are usually applied to phrases or clauses indicating a single, completed event; ‘n/nén may be used with phrases or clauses of the following types:

(a) conditional clauses or more general clauses translated in English as beginning in 'if', 'when', or 'whenever'; usually, the clause final ‘n/nén is the only indication of the conditional status of such clauses, though occasionally gǎfà (cf. gǎfà (1)) may introduce such clauses. yuwan ma kunu bií-n, áa ma-k da bai 'if sleep doesn't take the stomach, it won't take the eye'; maayim iika lakoodi-n, sai dá

rami-ngəri 'when(ever) a boy sees a switch, then he runs away'.

(b) counterfactual conditional clauses nearly always end in *ʼn/nén*. See *dàa* (1b) for examples.

(c) 'before' clauses meeting the general semantic requirement above take *ʼn/nén*. See *dàmbà* and *kàabì* for examples.

(d) *ʼn/nén* is used with adverbial clauses introduced by other words, e.g. *àkáu* 'after'. See *àkáu* (3a).

(e) clauses introduced by *lákwtù* 'time' meaning 'when ...'. See *lákwtù*. (NB: This is actually a subcase of the usage described in (3) below, but since it is semantically akin to the other uses listed under (1), it is included here.)

(f) sometimes after simple time adverbs, especially *gáafà* (*dǎgàì*). *gaafa dàgàì nən áa damtau*, *gaafa-n áa pədəm* 'sometimes it was near-by, sometimes it was distant'; *dəvu-gu bəlan bai dəman nən* 'the road is not good (during) the rainy season'.

(2) after phrases or clauses introduced by *gàadǎ* in the meaning 'just because (of) ...' or, in the negative, 'if it weren't for ...'. See *gàadǎ* (1c-d).

(3) phrases of the following types have final *ʼn/nén*:

(a) phrases introduced by one of the indefinite words *tìyé*, *tàmké*, *fàtawánké*, *ràwánké*, *tawánké* (q.v.). *tìye tləmpiy-naa zani-gəri-n*, *zəga-naa rii gəřaazan* 'anyone who tears his gown knows where the threads are'; *tamke ama-w à nci-n*, *áa nii-d ii-tu* 'anything his wife wanted, he would bring it to her'. See *hài* (1b).

(b) nouns used in an indefinite sense, especially the words *nən* 'person', *bèe* 'thing', *lákwtù* 'time', *rài* 'place' (q.v.), at the beginning of a sentence and modified by a relative clause. *nən waařa ndǎ jib aci ii guzapəna-n*, *ndagəmə-ngəri naa kabiine* 'a person who has been taken into slavery has met up with trouble'. See *gəzhən*, *tàkw-sú* (b), *fàtawánké*, *ràwənú*; *lákwtù* in (Ble) above. (NB: Ngizim does not require that the relative marker *waařa* be present; it is therefore possible to construct sentences grammatically analyzable as in (B3b), e.g. *nən ntə-naa awuk nən*, *kaakənii mbasu naa bai* 'as for a man who swallows a pestle, there is no further sitting' or 'if a man swallows a pestle, there is no further sitting'.)

(c) occasionally, *ʼn/nén* appears with a simple indefinite noun not further modified (cf. *ngùm* (b) which is usually used with definite noun phrases). *dabaku-n*, see *waařa kà ncu kà cik'yi* 'as for girls, just those you want you (can) choose'.

(d) in a rare usage, perhaps unrelated to the others here, *ʼn/nén* is sometimes found after definite noun phrases at the beginning of a sentence, apparently for emphasis. *amma Mari nən tfə-ngəri ii shi rakai* 'but Mari had gone under the bed'; *ci-n ká jibi* 'you caught it'.

ʼn used in conjugated forms *nâa-n*, *kâa-n*, *dâa-n*, *ndâa-n* and always directly followed by Subjunctive verbal phrase in the same person. *nǎ kəma gayim tənə*, *naa-n nà rarki-naa aci* 'when I heard the cat, I chased it away'; *áa ya ii ta-w daa-n dà ram maa*, "bəsəmella" 'he was

going to eat and he said, "bismilla". See also gáyí (3), kámángàǎ, tǎǎfú, vǎgú (1). [Historically, this construction probably derives from the Subjunctive of the verb nì 'come'(q.v.).]

nǎbókú (v.n. nǎbókà) join, bring together, consolidate. viida guzǎp jau-nak bai: nǎbók akshí-n pata 'the hare is not the elephant's slave: it's the bush which brought them together'; ná de-w gaada-k wana-k nǎbók-k laǎdi 'I have come for the purpose of consolidating the district'.

nǎdǎu see ðǎdǎu

nǎmǎmíyú (v.n. nǎmǎmíyà) form into balls, e.g. áagǎw, balls of mud to be plastered on by mason, etc.

nǎmǎmú (d.f. nǎmú) do action of nǎmú with repeated movements. See gǎ-gái (1).

nǎmíyú (v.n. nǎmíyà) (a) v.tr. fill to brim. cf. níyú.

(b) v.intr. be in flood. anku nǎmíyǎ-ngara 'the river is in flood'.

nǎmú (v.n. nǎmà) = lǎmú (1) construct using mud and/or mud bricks. cf. páu (3).

(2) mould pottery; form from clay. See gǎgái (1), nǎnǎadǎf. cf. yǎikáu.

(3) braid hair, twist two strands together to make rope. cf. bǎgú, tǎrmú.

(4) weave net (ǎràakáu). cf. càakáu, gǎunú, tǎkú.

nǎn (1) phonologically conditioned variant of 'n (q.v. for conditioning, uses, and examples).

(2) form of nǎn (q.v.) when in associative construction before a low tone.

nǎn (pl. ndǎiwà, ndǎawà; the most commonly used singular previous reference form is wǎǎǎ-w, though nǎn-gú and nǎn-àngú are heard; the most commonly used plural previous reference form is ndǎ-w, though ndǎiwà-gú or ndǎawà-gú are heard)

person. cf. bàacǎf, áamá, ndà (2).

(a)(i) used alone without a definite referent, nǎn can be translated 'someone, a person'. nǎn maa áa nǎa-gawa-n, à gǎf íl-cí gǎju-u 'if someone says he is going to swallow an axe, hold the handle for him'.

(ii)(in negative sentence) no one, anyone. na yka nǎn bai 'I didn't see anyone'; naa nǎn bai 'there was no one'. See páǎák.

(b) without a definite referent, but with an attributive modifier:

(i) someone (who), he who, whoever. See 'n (B3b).

(ii)(in negative sentence) no one who, anyone who. naa nǎn wǎǎǎ áa níí dǎa kí ama-gaa bai 'there's no one who will come and see my wife'.

nèngú in that direction, this way, that way. áa yki nengu! 'look over there!'; meste nengu nen, meste nengu nen, sai ... 'he turned this way and that and finally ...'.

nénúwâ (pl. nénúwáw!n) (1) shade, shadow. See yáu (2).

(2) soul, spirit. tadē-naa nenuwa-gəri 'he became natural and unconstrained'. See tādú (2d).

na(a) I, i.e. first person singular pronoun used as Subject Pronoun in verbal and locative sentences (see paradigm, p. xxi for remarks on tone and vowel length). cf. íyû, áa(nái).

-náa (1) transitizing suffix added to lexical intransitive verbs when they are used transitively and when an overt direct object *directly* follows the verb; in other contexts -náa is replaced by -dù (1). ná wayə-naa garuu-gaa 'I fed my goats' (cf. garuu-gaa wayu 'my goats are sated'); dee-naa am bai 'he didn't bring water' (cf. dee bai 'he didn't come').

(2) Totality Extension potentially added to any transitive verb to indicate action well or completely done; this form is used when the verb is *directly* followed by an overt direct object, but otherwise it is replaced by -dù (2); with intransitive verbs, Totality is indicated by a morpheme -n- + Intransitive Copy Pronoun (see full paradigm, p. xxii). ná kiidē-naa tluwai 'I ate up the meat' (cf. ná kiidē tluwai 'I ate meat'). With certain verbs, especially those indicating states such as 'know', 'exceed', and those indicating an action which by its nature is "total", e.g. 'kill', the Totality Extension is virtually always used.

NB: (1) differs from (2) in that (a) the meaning which the suffix gives is different in kind, (b) the Totality Extension is never a syntactically obligatory feature of a verb while a basic intransitive verb cannot be used transitively without the transitizing suffix, (c) the Totality Extension cannot appear in a negative sentence (thus *ná kiidē-naa tluwai bai 'I didn't eat up the meat' is ungrammatical) while the transitizer remains in all syntactic environments. These remarks apply to -dù (1, 2) as well.

nàa prep. (tone dissimilates to high before low)

(1) with. (a) instrument. ná karmə dēm naa gawa 'I chopped wood with an axe'. See mādú, vèrkú (1b, 2b).

(b) comitative. (i)(when used to join noun phrases) and. mǎfdu naa gavərka 'millet and sorghum'; iyu naa aci 'I and he'.

(ii) comitative phrase in predicate. ndàa sa-k aagaw naa manga-k zaata-w 'one drinks gruel with a pounding companion'; jà shawartə-du naa atu 'she and I discussed it (lit: we discussed it with her)'.

(iii) in numbers, to link tens to hundreds and hundreds to thousands. dēbu naa danamak kədkuvda naa guumuu zədu '1960'. cf. áyāawá (2).

(c) in manner adverb. maayim dá gubaji naa rawa 'the boy took off at a run (with running)'; jà ma dēm naa anka! 'we picked up wood slowly/carefully (with caution)'.

(d) X nàa áǎǎ-pron. 'X himself, herself, etc.'. atu naa áǎǎ-gara 'she herself'.

cf. góó (2).

(2)(a) there is, there are, i.e. there exist(s). naa beeza 'there is salt'. cf. wàrà.

(b)(i) nàa X báí 'there is/are no X'; X nàa báí 'there is/are no X'; nàa báí 'there isn't/aren't any'. kaa aci naa bai 'there is no equal to him' (like him there is none). See máadàngó. cf. góó (1).

(ii) nàa báí may be euphemistically used to mean 'he is dead'. kaka bédlamu naa bai 'the hyena's grandfather has passed away'. cf. góó (1).

(3) "have" ("have" sentences in Ngizim are syntactically a noun phrase subject and a nàa phrase predicate). cí naa kwaaǎa 'you have a donkey'; íí naa duuka bai 'I don't have a horse'; Kwaana naa tam? 'what does Kwana have?'. cf. góó (3).

(4) "in relation to, with respect to": nàa is used in a large variety of constructions where the complement of nàa somehow delimits what precedes the nàa phrase or expresses in what sense that which precedes the nàa phrase is true; íí (6) (q.v.) is used in a similar sense, but with nàa phrases, the phrase seems to modify that which it follows, while with the íí phrases in question, it seems to be the complement of the íí phrase which is central while that thing which the íí phrase follows delimits the class of things which could be referred to by it; following are some of the usages of nàa in the sense given:

(a) with modifying phrases to the locative words pǎǎm 'far' and dǎm-tǎu 'near', optionally with the compass points áǎǎu, càǎǎ, dǎkǎmǎ, zǎǎǎǎ, and perhaps a few other locative words. Yǎǎwa pǎǎm naa Pǎ-tǎskemu 'Maiduguri is far from Potiskum'.

(b)(with some time words) at, during, in. laaduwa gafa-k gayi naa tǎǎǎ-k díǎǎǎ 'Sunday the first day in the month of December'. See áǎǎǎǎǎǎǎǎ, híǎǎǎǎǎ.

(c) before complements modifying adjectives. aayu tǎǎǎ naa vayi 'a gazelle is hard to shoot'; akuǎna kaarak naa sa 'gruel is good to drink'; díǎǎǎí áǎǎǎ naa gugza 'Karekare is easy to learn'.

(d) nàa X: "on X", "X first". sai dá dagami naa baazhi-gara dá jib áǎǎ 'then she fell face down (lit: with her belly) and began crying'; dá vgai da áǎ-k suu-gu dá vgai naa wura-gara dà mǎí-ngara 'she fell from on top of the hut, she fell on her neck, and died'.

(e) followed by nominalized complements of certain verbs; the only verb taking such a complement structure which has so far been identified is dàǎǎǎ 'prevent' (q.v. for examples).

nàí (1) v.intr. come, came, i.e. form of 'come' used in Subjunctive (but cf. nǎí in meaning 'come'). wǎ pǎǎǎ-naa ráí damba sauraucin-gaa dá nǎí nǎn 'let's change our place of abode before my in-laws come'. See yí (1).

(2) v.tr. (used only in forms nǎí-nǎa + object or nǎí-dù) bring, brought,

i.e. Subjunctive form of 'bring' (but cf. *nì* in meaning 'bring').

See p. xxiii, for all forms; see *dëu* for further remarks.

nákàt introducing a sentence, implies that the event in the sentence is a repetition of a previous event, is an event meant to complete that which was started earlier, or is an event similar to or done with the purpose of having the same effect as a previous event (generally translated into Hausa as *har yanzu* or *har wa yau*). *nakat aci dāa ji rau-ra* 'again he called out'; *daaci Mai Gauzhi maa, "nakat kwāa kalakta wam kwā n-naa Maina Gauca"* 'Mai Gauzhi said, "you're going to go back again and this time (*nákàt*) you'll bring Prince Gauca"'.

nákwáná (pl. *nákwánán*|n) obedience, loyalty. See *bùukú* (1).

nàmbò lack of, shortage of. *nambo-k ambai daptè-naa ii naa bēna* 'lack of locust bean cakes prevented me from cooking'; *gaada-k nambo-gē ta'yi-k kunu řa gaada-k nambo-gē ardiya bi?* 'is it because of being ill at ease or because of disapproval?'; *mii nambo gēdēn* 'the one without a little brother'. See *gàadā* (1b), *mèstú* (2b).

nàà *int.adv.* (a)(predicate final) (i) how? *ká jibē kwaarfa nana?* 'how did you catch the donkey?'.

(ii)(with *diamú* as main verb) what?, in what way? *wāa dīama nana?* 'what will we do?'.

(iii)(as predicate of equational sentence) what?, what sort of thing? *suu nana?* 'what's that?'.

(b)(at beginning of sentence) why is it that?, how is it that? *nana kāa gamas?* 'why in the devil are you laughing?!'; *nana sau?* 'what the devil is that?!'.

(c)(in inquiries about health) how? *nana maamau-wa-w?* 'how are those children of ours?' (NB: in standard greetings such as 'how's the family?', 'how's the work?', etc., the word *ndá* (q.v.) is used.)

(d)(alone as a greeting) how are things going? (the answer is *kāa sūu* 'like that'—probably a play on the meaning 'how?').

nàanāadī especially for, purposely (precedes phrase which it governs). *naanaadi ndāa nēma-k dawai gaada-k bēna-k jaunak bai* 'one doesn't make pots especially for cooking elephants'; *nāa ya naanaadi hař ii Kuřemci nāa bi laabař-gu* 'I'm purposely going clear to Kurumci to get its history'; *dee naanaadi gaada-w* 'he came purposely because of it'.

nāanām (d.f. *nāanmú*) drumming; playing a musical instrument. *āa naanam ganga* 'he's beating the drum'; *baaci naanam* 'drummer'. cf. *kkēmú* (1b).

nāangà (pl. *nāangàgín*) insults, abuse.

nàangú (v.n. *nāangà*) abuse, berate, insult. *à ji kà naangai aani ak-shi* 'go and abuse them on my behalf'. cf. *fèřfèřtú*.

nàanmú (v.n. nánmà; nánám) beat; do drumming. cf. nánám, dàdǵú, gùbǵú, kkəmú (1).

nàsáařá (pl. nàsáařáucín; nàsáařářín) (< K. nàsárá < Ar.) European.

náu (v.n. nà; Imperative áa nyí, Subjunctive dǵa nyí) count. tǵeri daame bíi-n, ndǵa na-k matla bai 'if the fight's not over, one isn't going to count the wounds'.

náu (v.n. nà; Imperative áa nyí, Subjunctive dǵa nyí) flay, skin. Dəmza na goomak 'D. flayed the ram'.

nǵuǵú (v.n. nǵuǵá; nǵawǵ) draw, trace designs on (a calabash, etc., with colored earths, etc.). cf. gèǵú (a).

nǵwék (pl. nǵwǵwín) saliva.

nǵwǵ (v.n. of nǵwǵu) day (in the sense of the daylight hours), period of daylight. gaza raakan nawa gayi 'there remained one day's travel'. cf. gǵařá, wèǵǵ, yǵwǵn.

nǵwǵn how much?, how many? kǵ nci goǵǵo nawan? 'how many kolas do you want?'. See kèlèekèlèe.

nǵwǵu v.intr. (v.n. nǵwǵi) (1)(a) get ripe, mature (all kinds of plants, fruits, etc.). yaamadú-k dǵegid áa nawai aa líifi-ǵeri 'a blind man's fruit ripens in his pocket' (i.e. he won't let his property get out of his sight); aayaw, á dǵam aa nawai ba 'figs, ripen for me please'.

(b) get done (cooking food).

(2) get well, recover. cf. ngǵatú.

(3)(used with transitizing suffix -nǵa, -dǵ) cure from illness.

nǵwǵu (v.n. nǵwǵ) pass the day, spend the day.

nǵayú (v.n. nǵayǵ) grind on grinding quern (vènyí). cf. dèřǵú, zǵatú.

ncí (related to ñtùutú and related verbal nouns—see under ñtùutú; is invariable in form and aspect; as subjects, pronouns identical to those used in the Imperfective are used, but the vowels are short (the tones are low); as objects, the independent pronouns are used, i.e. nǵ nci aci 'I like him', not *nǵ nci-ǵeri; ncí cannot take the Totality suffixes -nǵa, -dǵ or the ventive extension)

(a)(followed by a noun) want; like. kǵ nci tam? 'what do you want?'; à nci tǵuwai 'he wants meat'; nǵ ncu 'I want it'; nǵn sǵku à nci aci-n áa kabiinee bai 'a person who God likes has no trouble'.

(b)(i)(followed by sentence in the Subjunctive) want X to do à nci kǵ nai 'he wants you to come'; nǵ nci nǵ taatk íi-ci dǵař 'I want to show him a plan'.

(ii)(if subject of ncí is the same as sentence complement, the complement may be nominalized) want to do nǵ nci vǵřk 'I want to shoot'.

(c) *kà nci-n* "please". *kà nci-n, kà ɾ'yi* "please wait". See *kédák, pàltú*.

ndèlám (*pl. ndèlámámín*) (cf. *K. lámí*; *q.v.* *Ngizim lámbé*) meat hunger; great desire for. cf. *lámí, zèlámâ*.

ndémú (*v.n. ndèma*) greet. *akshi dlam ndema* 'they exchanged greetings'. See *zègéégé*.

ndónà (pointing out, offering) here/there (they) are. *ndena agwai* 'here are some eggs'. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

ndónú dem.pron. those (being pointed out) from among others. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

nda(a) indefinite subject of verbs in all aspects (= Hausa *an, a*, etc.). See paradigm, p. xxi, for remarks on tone and vowel length. cf. *ndà, ndìiwà*.

ndá (< *K. ndâ*? 'where?') (used only sentence initial and followed by a noun phrase) (1) where? *nda beeza*? 'where's the salt?'. cf. *ráwân (a)*.

(2) how? (esp. in greetings). *ndá yùwàn*? 'good morning' [*H. ina kwana*?]; *ndá nàwàn*? 'good afternoon' [*H. ina wuni*?]; *ndá dúwàtìù*? 'how are you?' [*H. ina gajiya*?]; etc. cf. *nànà*.

ndà (1) (*pl. of bàací, q.v.* for remarks on usage) those who do X; those who have X. *nda-k ruwai* 'farmers'; *nda-k nya ii dèkèma ii Leegas* 'those who go to the west to Legos'; *nda-k lèman* 'possessors of wealth'.

(2) (*pl. of nèn (m.sg.), áamá (f.sg.), q.v.*) people from. *nda-k Ngwajin* 'the people of Ngwajin'. cf. *ndìiwà*.

(3) see *nda(a)*.

(4) being related, the state of being relatives. *nda-k Ngwajin naa kè Fiiika naa nda aa wiit-aakshi* 'the people of Ngwajin and those of Fika, there are blood ties between them'.

ndáfâk (*pl. ndáfáfín*) a cold, stuffiness, phlegm.

ndàagè mú v.intr. (*v.n. ndàagè mà; ndàagám; Imperative á ndàagè mí*)

(a) meet, meet up with, meet face to face. cf. *dàgdú, tàsáu*.

(b) have a run in with, "cross swords" with. *jàa ndaagè-naaja naa atu* 'she and I will have a run in' [we will meet up with her]. See *gàayú* (2a).

ndàkám (*pl. ndàkàm cín*) a type of large duck [*H. agwagwan ruwa*].

ndáu dem.pron. these. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

ndá-w see *wàařáw*

ndàw (pointing out, offering) here (they) are. ndaw bii-k sadak-aakshi 'here's something for alms for them'. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

ndîi (pointing out or referring to) there (they) are. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

ndíyú *dem.adj.* those. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

ndòořó (? < K. ndór-jìn 'shout, cry very loudly') rebelliousness. dlam aa ndoořo 'they behaved rebelliously toward me'. cf. bēdāmú.

ndúřúndúřú making mischief by spreading rumors, etc. baaci nduřunduřu 'mischief maker, gossip'.

ndúu yê (? < K. ndú 'who?') "absolutely not", "I won't possibly agree to that".

ñdǎu (*v.n.* ñdǎ) = nēdǎu sharpen.

ngènèptú (*v.n.* ngènèptà; ngénépù)(< K. ngènèp-cín 'worry') trouble, annoy, importune. dëgem maa, "kai, sam bařka! ná ngènèptə-naa kun!" 'the chief said, "Oh, thank you! (But) I've importuned you!"; kaa-yak naa bēdlamu maa, "naa ngənəfu bai" 'the squirrel and the hyena said, "There's no imposition"'. cf. cùwilitú, dàamēetú, ràvənú.

ngénépù (*pl.* ngénépàpín)(< K. ngéněvù) trouble, difficulty, imposition. "aajala ngənepu" kwaafa ram ii ləpta-gara '"haste is trouble" said the donkey to its load'. See ngènèptú. cf. bóoně, kàbífině, kúdèřà, tətàa (2).

ngézém (*pl.* ngézámčin) Ngizim people or language.

ngàa- (< K. ngà 'living; healthy; cunning') in good health (can be used only as a predicate, not as an attributive modifier, and is nearly always used with an associative pronoun suffixed except in negative sentences; cf. řúu- for similar syntactic behavior). cì ng-áacì? 'are you well?', íi ngàa-gàa 'I'm quite well'; ng-áakshî 'they're in good health'; íi ngàa báí 'I'm not well'. cf. ngè, kèlápíyâ.

ngàbàràk (*pl.* ngàbàràrín)(*d.f.* bárá) hunter. cf. mēzám, mēzàmàk.

ngádàř (*pl.* ngádàràrín)(cf. K. ngádár-jìn 'calumniate' < Ar.) = pápíyâ lie.

ngàfèràk (*pl.* ngàfèràrín)(*d.f.* fèrá) patient being treated for illness. ləman ngaferak ka baaci kařgun 'the sick person's wealth belongs to the one who has the medicine'.

ngàalé = ngàlté

ngáìkò (< K. ngáìwó 'better') it would be better that (followed by a sentence in Subjunctive or a nominalized verbal construction, or,

in the negative, by Second Subjunctive). ngalko ná dlabi goo ama 'I had best remain without a wife'; ngalko kà dlama guru wam bai 'you had best not be jealous anymore'; "wən baaba naa gəshi bii-n, ngalko mətə," macakuwa ram ii dləgamau "'if my brother doesn't have good instincts, he might as well be dead," the giraffe said to the camel'. See kàsàktú.

ngàlté (< K. ngàlté 'ever') = ngàalé (a)(followed by affirmative sentence, usually in Perfective or Imperfective) to have ever done, to have done before. See bii (3), third example.

(b)(followed by negative sentence) to have never done. ngalte ná kəma bai 'I have never heard that before'. See daaru (2), bái (3c).

ngàltú (v.n. ngàltà)(< K. ngál-jìn) weigh, measure. See gərgiyà. cf. kàaktú.

ngàmò (pl. ngàmàmín) Ngamo person or language.

ngàangám (pl. ngàangàncín) younger maternal or paternal aunt. cf. bàabàngám, mii gàngám.

ngàapəcátí (pl. ngàapəcátíátlín) sleep in the eyes, eye matter.

ngàrà (probably) African wild cat (*Felis libica*).

ngárgù (pl. ngárgwàgwín, ngárgwàucín)(cf. K. fêr ngérmà) big stallion. cf. dùukà.

ngàs (pl. ngəsáu) spear.

ngàatú v.intr. (v.n. ngàatà)(d.f. ngàa-) get well, recover from illness or injury.

ngàavèn egg yolk.

ngè (used at the end of a question or exclamation; esp. frequent after greetings using ngàa-, q.v.) "indeed". cì ng-áací ngè? 'are you well?'; súu kùrbá ngè 'that's a silly thing to do'.

ngèstú v.intr. (v.n. ngèstù) be late.

ngìngàamád see nìgàamà

ngùbùutú (v.n. ngùbùutà)(< K. ngévù 'much, many') increase in size or number. lakwí-w dāa ngubuuu gaawa bai 'at that time the town didn't grow much'.

ngúdí (pl. ngúdádín)(< K. ngúdì 'poor (person)') (1) poor person.

(2)(a) adj. shameless, disrespectful. Canduwa bafa-naa ngudí-k wunya 'Canduwa is really a shameless girl'.

(b) n. shameless, disrespectful person. See vǎu (1b).

NB: Used adjectivally, ngúdì appears to necessarily precede the mo-

dified noun: wúnyà ngúdì is interpreted only as 'daughter of a poor man'.

ngûm = wûm (a) = ténú (2): see ténú (2) for explanation of syntactic function, which applies to ngûm as well. jagadladlîn kema ngum, dá rakai ja 'when the elephants heard that, they chased after the dog'; tétan nya-k bədlamu ngum, dá mbashi 'upon the arrival of the hyena, she sat down'; damba mai áa mətú ngum, áa zəgii-naa baaci dlama mai da kuu-k mai-gu 'before a Mai had died, they would know who would be Mai after that Mai'.

(b)(used with topicalized noun or personal pronoun) "as for"; also. muyi-gaa ngum zəga-naa nema belan 'as for my friend, she knows how to mold pottery well'; hař ii ngum, aikwa-gaanai dāa kəm-naa tətāa 'even me too, my hands hurt'. See vāu (1b), tādū (2f). cf. kàyà, mèn, rō, yàayé (5), yé (4), wátè.

ngùmáú (v.n. ngùmáú; Subjunctive dá ngùmí—note final tone) (1) retaliate, reciprocate, pay back good for good or evil for evil. duuniya áa tlayi yaaye, diishaw áa ngumuu-k aru-k zaabanu bai 'even if the world is going to come to an end, the vulture will not pay back the dirty trick of the guinea fowl'.

(2) pay.

ngùmú (v.n. ngùmà) answer. raura, kəci bii-n, ká nguma bai 'a call, if it's not for you, you won't answer'.

ngùřəngùřì, ngùřəngùř (*< K. ngùngùr-jîn 'grumble'*) mumbling to oneself.

ngúrāarú (pl. ngúrāararín) rainbird or Abdim's white bellied stork (*Sphenorynchus abdimii*) [H. shamuwa].

ngúřdládíyá (pl. ngúřdládíyáyín) throat. cf. wùrá (1).

ngùřdàadək̀wàk (pl. ngùřdàadək̀wàkín) common grey heron (*Ardea cinerea*) [H. zalbe].

ngwàapáatè (pl. ngwàapáatàtín) open space outside of a compound where men gather to chat.

ngwàasà (v.n. of ngwàasú) miserliness, stinginess.

ngwàasú (v.n. ngwàasà) be miserly; prevent; forbid. áa ngwaasa 'he's miserly, stingy'. See gàadā (1d).

ngwǎu (v.n. ngwà, may become either ngwǎ-w or ngwìyúu in Imperfective when no object is expressed, but only ngwà is used before object; Imperative áa ngwí, Subjunctive dāa ngwì)

(1) dip out, scoop out, scoop up. ama-gəri dāa ngwì-d ii-ci abən 'his wife dished him out some food'. See dlágwdàrú. cf. dlǎu.

(2) take or gather many small things or material which is collected in bunches, e.g. okra, condiments for sauce, grass, eggs, etc. cf. tātəmú.

(3) capture as prisoner or slave. ndá ngwí-naa zhigwamcin-gu bal 'all their warriors were captured'. See also kàptú (2).

ngwí, ngwì see ngwǎu

ngwìyúu see ngwǎu

nì becomes n (q.v.) when deletion of -i does not result in impermissible sequence of consonants; cf. also yí, nài; ñn.

(1) *v.intr.* come, go, came, went, i.e. Subjunctive form of 'go/come'; nì is neutral as to direction of motion; nì is used only in the sequential function of the Subjunctive, i.e. it is not normally used in environments such as 'before' clauses or 'purpose' clauses. daga nii mēsek-gara tēnu, dá nì dá mbashi 'on the arrival of her husband, he came and sat down'; ná ni-ngaa 'then I went'.

(2) *v.tr.* (with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) bring, take, brought, took, i.e. form of 'take/bring' used in Subjunctive; the same general remarks on usage as in (1) apply. ndá n-naa aci ii cad-gē Ngwajin 'he was taken south of Ngwajin'; dāa mai dá n-d ii bēdlamu 'she took it and brought it to the hyena'.

See p. xxiii for full paradigm; see dēu (3) for further remarks on usage.

nli (subject pronoun has high tone) (1) *v.intr.* coming, will come, i.e. form of 'come' used in Imperfective. áa nli 'he is coming'.

(2) *v.tr.* (with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) bringing, will bring, i.e. form of 'bring' used in Imperfective. áa nli-dù 'he is bringing it'.

(3) *v.n.* arrival, coming; bringing (corresponding to uses (1) and (2)). kawa naa nii-k dēman áa nii-naa mpii-k zadak 'being used to the arrival of the rainy season brings one to store away seed grain'. See also nyà (2).

See p. xxiii for full paradigm; see dēu (3) for further remarks on usage.

nligàamà (pl. ngìingàamád) women friends and relatives gathered for a special occasion.

nliná = nná (q.v.) when used as plural Imperative; would also be ventive form of náu.

níyà see ányà

niyú (*v.n.* nìyà) (1)(a) *v.tr.* fill; bring to completion. dá niyi-naa gwabo-gu 'they filled up the gourd'.

(b) *v.intr.* become full; come to completion. gadlii-k masauyu áa niya bai 'a lazy person's granary doesn't get full'. See wèdú (c).

cf. cìkàatú, nēmìyú for both (a) and (b).

(2) submerge; go downward. See dī'p.

ḥkàltú (v.n. ḥkàltà) = ànkàltú

nná (1) v.intr. (a) come, i.e. form of 'come' used in Second Subjunctive. dà nná 'he should come' (= dliná in this usage).

(b)(used in à nná) 'come!', i.e. plural imperative of 'come' (= nliná in this usage). cf. yén (1) for singular.

(2) v.tr. (a)(used with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) bring, i.e. form of 'bring' used in Second Subjunctive (= dliná-náa, dliná-dù in this usage).

(b)(used in à nná-náa/-dù) 'bring!', i.e. plural imperative of 'bring' (= à nliná-náa/-dù). cf. yén (2) for singular.

See p. xxiii for full paradigm; see dëu (3) for further remarks on usage.

nòogátà, nòokátà (< K. nògátà) renowned. ndiwa waaṛa noogata-noogata-w 'men who were renowned'; dazgaya nookata 'very well-known'.

ḥtáu n. love. See dàa (1b) last example, gàadā (1b). cf. ncí, ḥtùutú.

ḥtiú (v.n. ḥtià) tighten down stalks in cornstalk fence, grass in zana mat, leaves in palm leaf mat.

ḥtú (v.n. ḥtà) swallow. See mbàsù (1), gáfà (1).

ḥtùutú (v.n. ḥtùutà; ḥtáu) love, like; come to like or love (generally used instead of ncí (q.v.) when non-stative in sense). ká ntuutē-naa venyi-n, á ntuuci-naa matkam-gu 'if you like the grinding quern, like the "grinder" (the small stone held in the hand)'; Sheehu Sanda Koori ntuutu Mai Katayau gaawa 'Shehu S.K. came to like Mai Katayau a lot'. See řankátà (a).

núubà (pl. núubàbín)(< K. névā 'part, share') share; fate; one's due in life, one's turn. nuuba-k kəriinakau áa gaaya ii dësku bai 'the fate of the frog is that he not (be able to) climb up'; gusku ná dlamee nuuba 'today I have been lucky'; saw nuuba-k Waamii-gu deengara 'here it was that Wamai's turn had come'.

nùutú (v.n. nùutà) pass, pass by. Pətəskəmu bai, haṛ ii Tliikau ká nuuci 'don't (stop with) Potiskum, but pass on by even as far as Tliikau'; zəřən! nuutə da sau 'zip! it passed by here' (a riddle, to which the answer is dègà 'arrow').

nyà v.n. corresponding to verbs 'come/bring, go/take; in Imperfective verbal predicate with verbs in these meanings, yá 'going/taking' and nli 'coming/bringing' must be used; nyà is neutral with respect to direction of movement (cf. nli, which is also neutral)

(1) intr. (a) going, coming. áa tēka nya 'he's going/coming'; baaci nya ii mbas ii dāa áa genyi-k sakwtu bai 'somebody going to the bath-room won't accept messages (for delivery)'.

(b) used in fi nyà li → [fi nyee] 'up to'. da gusku ii nya ii lakw-tu-k nii-k Mai Jaalo ii Ngwajin 'from today, up to the arrival of

Mai Jalo at Ngwajin'. See áwáyáu (2), pállà.

(2) *tr.* (used with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) bringing, taking. See kàawà.

See p. xxiii for full paradigm.

nyàmí (*pl.* nyàmàmín) body fat; fat on meat. See kàlèèkèlé.

nyànyá (*pl.* nyànyànyín) feeling of aversion. See àtlóá (1). cf. rù-wàwàd.

nyl, nyì see nà

nyùm (*pl.* nyùmàmín) filth.

nyùwáu (*v.n.* nyùwáu; Subjunctive à nyùwí; Imperfective nàa nyúu-gú) slander; gossip about; blame. mbasu sam kaŋgun baaci nyaw 'sitting silently is the remedy for a gossip'; á dii gwadanu-n hak, ndàa nyuu-g gèvaarak 'it's the pied crow that dug up the peanuts, (but) the crowned crane is blamed'. See ámbàì, bùukú, mpáu.

O

ó'ò no. cf. àwóo.

P

pédék (*pl.* pèdádín) (early) morning. cf. gáanyà.

pédēm (borrowed?, cf. Margi pèdēm) (1)(a) *adj.* distant, far off. daawu pèdēm 'the town is distant'; daa pèdēm = pèdēm-gə daa 'distant town';

(b) pèdēm nàa 'distant from, far from'. maayim pèdēm naa kuku 'the boy is far from the baobab'.

(2) *n.* distance. kam-gaa àa pèdēm naa aci 'my farm is at a distance from his'. See dàmtáu (2). cf. fák, púwíi.

pèdú (*v.n.* pèdà) sneak past, conceal oneself. cf. sèmdú.

pèldú (*v.n.* pèldà) draw out, e.g. knife or sword from sheath. cf. fètú, 'yùwú, zàrú.

pèlùutú (*v.n.* pèlùutà)(? < K.) reduce.

pèpsú (*v.n.* pèpsà) render into small pieces or powder, e.g. break cooked meat into small pieces, grind block of mud into powder through rubbing, etc.

pêřdádá (pl. pêřdádáín) = fêřdádá large flying termite [H. gina]. See dlèb-gènú (b). cf. tárúwâ.

pêřmêshî (pl. pêřmêshâshîn) struggling. ná dlam pêřmêshi naa aci 'I struggled with him'.

pèrpèrú (v.n. pèrpèrà) = fèrfèrú

pèrshî (pl. pèrshâshîn) lip. ká yka-w pèrshi gazbèř nən, kə baaci gam-daya 'if you see a "fat lip", it belongs to an argumentative person'.

pèřtú (v.n. pèřtà) (1) undo, take apart. kasta tku, á pèřta-du 'that cornstalk fence, take it down'.

(2) be cancelled, be no longer in effect. rama waařa wà ramu pèř-tə-ngara 'the plans we made have been cancelled'.

pèstú (v.n. pèstà) prepare palm leaves by stripping edges from center rib (edges are used for mat weaving). ná pèstə zayi 'I prepared palm leaves for rope braiding'.

pèsú (v.n. pèsà) (machine, animal, etc.) be worn out. aawayuu pèsə-ngara 'it's strength is gone'.

Pátéskàmù Potiskum (Ngizim pronunciation; Hausa pronunciation is Pátás-kàmù).

pètlàyù (pl. pètlàyàyín) flower.

pètú (v.n. pètà) = fètú

pàadú (v.n. páadâ) suck.

pákú v.intr. (v.n. pákù; Subjunctive á pákí) suddenly appear, pop out. See dàamâ (1a).

pállà (pl. pállàlín)(? < K.) part, region, area. palla-k gaařu da zəgař da miya-k gaařu da cađ ii nya ii kə dəkəma 'the area of the town wall from the north from the gate from the south to the one in the west'.

pàltú (v.n. pàltà)(< K. fàl-jîn) change. kà nci-n, á palci rama "please change your tune" ('if you want, change words'); aci naa amaatu-gəri dá palci-naa rai 'he and his wives changed places'.

pàaltú (v.n. pàaltà)(< K. fál-jîn) cross. aci dá paalci anku 'he crossed the river'; anku paałte-ngara 'the river was crossable'.

pàmpèeří outmoded type of hairdo for women where temples are shaved and strip of hair left in middle [H. roriya]. See dèbábà.

pànjáamâ (pl. pànjáamámín)(? < E.) large, baggy pants.

páapá (pl. páapápín) woman's body wrapper.

gwan ndà pi ii dā gəju-w 'they take mush and sauce and pour it over the hoe handle (as part of bārākāu (q.v.) ceremony)'. See bāu (3). cf. dāsú, tēpkú, vèngú, wàayú.

(2) act in a way to cause several things to drop or fall, usually onto something else. áa payu-w, gədancin-kshí áa ta-w 'they were dropping them (figs from a tree) and their younger siblings were eating them'; nən dāka yu ii diina bíi nən, dà p aanaí jankař bai 'if a person doesn't have better rags than me, let him not shake his lice on me' (cf. nearly identical proverb cited under gùgùyú); kam-puwai ii pii-k kwankoori ii dā-k maamuu-n duguru 'it's a barren woman who is quick to give knuckle raps to children's heads'.

(3) erect a frame structure. dà pi paka bəlan 'he built a nice rumfa shelter'; afku-w dà pi-d ii-tu dababarak 'her father built her a platform (from which to scare birds from field)'. cf. dèbú, nèmú (1).

(4) idiomatic usages:

(a) akshí dāa pai rawa 'they took off at a run'.

(b) pa kufu-gara 'she knelt'.

páyí (1) bellowing of bull, etc.

(2) v.n. of páu.

páyídà (pl. páyídàdín) usefulness. cf. ñpàatú (1).

pèrtú (v.n. pèrtà) spread out blanket, mat, etc.; lay something out flat. wənya-w dá fətki paapa-gara dá peřci dá vəji 'the girl undid her wrapper, spread it out and lay down'; ndà jiba peřta-k maayim ii dā-k rəvək-gu 'let one begin laying the baby on the hide'. cf. sənú.

pí, píi see páu

pìimú (v.n. pìimà) look around at, look over shoulder at. aa zaaman Maí Maadí zha píimee-ngara 'during the time of Mai Madi war turned in (his) direction'. See bùukú (2), mpáu (1b).

píyú see páu

pùudú (v.n. pùudā) bank up, hoe up or plow up to make hills.

pùurú (v.n. pùurà) spray, spit out in spray. puur am ii tēka-gaa 'he sprayed water on me'. cf. bàzlyú.

pùutèřúu id. whiteness (from dust, ashes, etc.). dá dlam bəřzazan ii dā-k bəbət dà gaayi ii dā-k sau wam puutəřuu 'she rolled around in ashes and climbed on top of the hut again all white'. cf. àaràwài.

púwíi id. far off. gaay ii waka tēnu, sai dāa yki ssau puwii 'when he had climbed the tree, he saw a house way off in the distance'. cf. pədēm.

R

rébà (pl. rébàbín) pottery clay.

rèbgú (v.n. rèbgù) destroy, raze; fall down, crumble (a building, a wall, etc.).

rèbú (v.n. rèbà) (1) v.tr. kill in great number, massacre. jagadlau rēbē tlaadin 'a lion has killed the cattle'. cf. tēkú (1a).

(2) v.intr. die in large numbers. akshi rēbē-naakshi 'they all died off'. cf. mētú.

rēbú (v.n. rēb; rēbá; Imperative à rēbí) shake. dà rēbi gērwa-gara 'she (sorceress) shook her gourd bottle'; zēmanu àa rēb-naa tēka-gara 'the ostrich was shaking its body'.

řèdlú v.tr.; intr. counterpart is řàdlú (q.v.) (v.n. řèdlà)

(1) moisten.

(2) (cause to) melt. cf. shìshiyú.

règú (v.n. règà) (a) v.intr. migrate, move living quarters.

(b) v.tr. displace (as a fowl moving its eggs).

rēmáu (v.n. rēmáu; Imperative à rēmí) (a) outstrip, surpass. fuwak vèree dà kau, dà rēmi-naa agut 'the horn grows out later, (but eventually) it surpasses the ear'.

(b) precede, go ahead. lakwtu kwá tla-n, kwà rēmi-naa ja 'when you set out, go ahead of us'.

(c) be greater than, be stronger than. ja-k aye dà rēmi-naa ja? 'who are they that they might overpower us?'; daati-gəri rēma-naa ja guumuu fuđu 'his height was greater than forty cubits'. cf. dēkáu.

(d) tr. escape from; intr. escape. bēdlamu dá rēmai-naa nda-k bara 'the hyena escaped from the hunters'; taskin raka ayaku, dà rēmi-ngəri 'the lazy person chased the tortoise (yet) it escaped'. cf. gūmbú.

(e) run away (from). See báí (3a).

rèntú (v.n. rèntà) (a) v.tr. remove, take off (clothes). dá rēnci zani-gəri 'he took off his gown'.

(b) v.intr. undress. ná rēntē-ngaa 'I undressed'. cf. sèltú.

řènú (v.n. řèn; Imperative à řnyí) fuck, copulate with (vulgar term). cf. dēgzú, dēngà, tàpiyú.

rèpillá (pl. rèpillàlín) (< K. rēfèllá) blue. zani rēpilla 'blue gown'; rēpilla-k zanai gēn aci 'a blue gown suits him'.

rèptú (v.n. rèptà) open.

rèpú (v.n. rèpà) close, cover. cf. cìmú.

řètíú (v.n. řètíà) widen hole by chopping dirt away from sides.

rèvæk (pl. rèvávín) skin, hide. See dāarú (2).

rèvú (v.n. rèvà) sip.

râ her, hers, i.e. third person singular feminine pronoun used as:

(1) Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it appears only in construction with associative linker gá (cf. gé (2)) giving gârâ.

(2) Independent Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kârâ. cf. átú, tû.

řâ (< K. râ) = bíi-n (cf. báí (3b)) = kóo (1) or (can conjoin noun phrases, prepositional phrases, or sentences). am řa anyi 'water or milk'; zha áa níi řa áa níi bai 'war is coming or it's not coming'. See nambò.

řáabà weeding farm for second time. cf. rùwái.

řaabú (v.n. řaabà) knock down person or thing, knock over, esp. with a blow. dá jibi mēse-gaa dá řaab aci dà taushi-naa aci naa zayi 'catch my husband, knock him down, and tie him up with a rope'; nàa ya nà řaabí-naa wēduwa-w 'I'll go and knock down his house'. See bèřtēnú, hář (3c). cf. kārđú, mēnú.

řàdlú v.intr.; tr. counterpart is řēdlú (v.n. řádlù) (1) become wet.

(2) melt. cf. shìshìyú.

ráfíiwà (pl. ráfíiwávín) guinea corn chaff.

ràagáyà (pl. ràagáyáyín)(? < H.) string net to hang calabash in.

rài (pl. ràíín) (referential form is rìyú; medial in a phrase, rài becomes rii by a general rule affecting any -ai)

(a) place. rii tkú 'here'; rii tíyú 'there'.

(b) place of residence. See pàltú.

(c) when a word not denoting a location is used in a locative phrase, that word must be preceded by rài, e.g. lí rii-kēm 'to you (to your place)'; da rii-k gazgaraucin 'from old people (from the place of old people)'; da rii-k saafēř 'from the place where trading takes place'; aa rii-k ma-k dēm 'at the wood gathering place'. See tãbtíú. (See NB at the end of tēkà (1b) for explanation of this use of rài and its semantic contrast with tēkà.)

řák (< K. rákkà 'right' or rāk 'in moderation') used in řák nàa X 'the same as X'. mbasu-k duuniya řak naa hak: ká yka aarawii-gu-n, káa lawan-naa aayuwa-w 'the way of the world is like a pied crow: if you

see the white, you'll see the black'. cf. gàyí (3), kálkál.

ràakènú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* ráakénà; ràakán) walk, travel, go. rii waaŋa aci raakənə bii ngum, naa bai 'places where he had not traveled were none'. See also fàunú, gàadā (1c), máadàngó, míidā.

rákai (*pl.* rákàkín) bed.

ràakán (*pl.* ràakàkín)(*v.n.* of ràakènú) traveling, moving along. cf. búwà.

ràkáu (*v.n.* rákà) = ràrkáu chase away; drive away; chase after. jau-nanin kəma ngum, dá rakai bədlamu 'when the elephants heard that, they chased after the dog'. See rəmáu (d).

řakká (< K. rakkā) metal anklet for women.

řáktú (*v.n.* řáktà) (a) take firm stance. waane řaktə-du, rawa bai 'so-and-so stood his ground and didn't run away'.

(b) persevere.

rámə (*pl.* ráməmín)(*v.n.* of rànú) speech, words, speaking. nàa rama ii-ci rama 'I have something to say to you'.

řáamà (*pl.* řáaməmín) feeling better, recovery after an illness. nda-w naa řaamamin 'the people are feeling better'; dāa ji gaddli dà ram maa aci ba-naa řaama 'he belched and said he felt better'.

rànú (*v.n.* rámə) speak, say, tell (thing said or told is always is always introduced by máa, q.v.).

řànkátà (a)(with verb phrase) do with force, do much of. à ji kà gub'y aanaí aci řankata 'go and give him a good thrashing for me'; Mai Kwaana dlam awayau řankata 'Mai Kwana was very powerful (as a ruler)'; daaci məsu-w dá ntuuci-naa atu řankata 'then her husband came to love her very much'. See sáu (2), zəgáu (2).

(b)(with adjective or descriptive noun phrase) be a superior or powerful representative of its kind. Maina Dabəra gəmsək řankata 'Prince Dabura was a real man'; ii naa laabař-gu řankata kaa kə Ngwajin naa kə Maamədo bai 'I don't have an extensive history of it like that of Ngwajin and Mamudo'.

řáp (1)(used as a quantifier on a noun) few, little; few of, little of. As with numerals the plural form of the noun is not required, though possible, e.g. akuu-k yuwan řap 'after a few days', akuu-k tərāfin řap 'after a few months'; řáp always follows the head noun, but it may precede or follow a demonstrative, which affects the scope of řáp and hence its interpretation, e.g. səma řap tku 'this little bit of beer', but səma tku řap 'a little of this beer'. See məstü (1b).

(2)(as a predicate to a nominal subject) a little bit, a small part. áa kənə-k wujəř gayim, řap-nən sau 'among the activities of the cat, this one is just a small sample'.

(3)(as adverb) a little. ndá skookuye řáp 'there was a little wait' [H. an juma kaðan].

(4)(as noun) a little bit. dá tletleri řap dà bar ii kaayak kaakenii-gu 'he cut off a little bit and gave the rest to the squirrel'.

ràpďú (v.n. rápdā; ràpád) bubble, come to a rolling boil. cf. zèbàayú.

řáařfinò(k) (pl. řáařfinàńń) cattle egret (*Bubulcus ibis*) [H. balbela]. See gàadā (ld).

ráaríyá (pl. ráaríyáyń)(< H. ráaríyáa) sieve.

ràrkáu (v.n. rárkà) = ràkáu (a) chase away; drive away; chase after.

(b) baaci dēba dá nai dà rarki zayi 'an animal waterer came and dropped his rope (into the well)'.
 (b) baaci dēba dá nai dà rarki zayi 'an animal waterer came and dropped his rope (into the well)'.

ràarú = ràurú

řàasú (v.n. řáasà) act on object with force, violently (nature of object determines type of action). ná řaasə nən 'I knocked the man down with force'; atu dà řaashi bii-k ta tku soosai dà ci 'she greedily set into the food and ate it'.

ráu (v.n. rà; Imperative áa rí; Subjunctive dáa rì) (1) save, rescue. náa ra-naa nda-gaa da miya-k zha 'I will save my people from the "jaws" of war'; nən áa kurwa-n, à nci ra 'if a person is shouting, he wants to be saved'; baazh-aaci tlaatlare-n, vəksh-aaci dáa ri ci 'if your belly swells up, you anus will save you'.

(2) break up a fight. à da kwáa ri tleri 'go and break up that fight'.

(3)(a) chase off birds, etc. from crops. ná ra đúuta da kam 'I chased birds from the farm'.

(b) guard, protect crops by chasing birds, etc. ji ii ra-k mǎřđu 'she went to chase (birds from) the millet'. cf. ràkáu.

ràurú (v.n. ràurà) = ràarú = đaarú = đaurú (a) call, call to. See ngùmú.

(b) call (by a name). ndàa raura-geri maa Bəndəřkuuku 'he was called B.'.

ràvəńú (v.n. rávəńà; ràván) (tr.) bother, trouble, annoy; (intr.) experience trouble, annoyance. gawa mii kukka ravəńə-naa baaci gaaya ii đesku ii karam 'an axe which keeps coming unhafted is an annoyance to someone who climbs up to chop wood'; aadla áa ravan-ci daa tam? 'is a cough bothering you or what?'; nən waařa sėku bar-d ii-ci garva-n, áa ravan bai 'he who God gave the chieftainship to would have no trouble'. See sáu (2).

ráwán int. pron. (cf. rài 'place') (a) where? (must always be preceded by a preposition). kàa ya ii rawan? [kàa yèe ráwán] 'where are you going?'; beeza àa rawan? 'where's the salt?'; ká bee da rawan?

'where did you get it from?'. cf. ndá (1).

(b) ìi ráwân?! "impossible!", "I won't hear of it!".

ràwànké anywhere, everywhere, wherever. nàa ya ii rawanke, nà ya-n, káa dēga-gaa 'wherever I go, when I go, you follow me'. See kàřēmtú, sàařùutú.

ràwáu v.intr. (v.n. ráwà) run.

ràwáu v.intr. (v.n. ràwà) grow up.

řdú v. intr. (v.n. řdà) (1) crawl, creep. kulaabi dàřdà 'the baby is a-crawling'.

(2) kneel down. See kàtáu (2).

řdú v.intr. (v.n. ř'yi) (1) stop movement, remain in a standing position, wait. à ř'yi káa ki 'wait and see'. See hál (1b).

(2)(in Imperative followed by Subjunctive) let me/us ..., permit me/us to ... à ř'yi ná j ii-kem buuci 'let me get out a mat for you'; á řđiina jà gurvi kun 'let us escort you'. NB: řdú in this sense = H. bàří in similar constructions.

(3)(with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) stop, bring to a halt. ná řdē-naa kwam 'I stopped the bull'.

řé question particle. gesh-aaci veda bai ře? 'isn't your mind at ease?'. cf. b'í.

řèptú (v.n. řèptà)(< K. rēp-cìn 'join') fold in two, put two long or pliable things together. dá jibi zayu-w dá řepci 'he took (both ends of dangling) rope and put them together'.

řéetâ (pl. řéetát|n)(< K. rétè) half. cf. řèetú.

řèetú (v.n. řèetà)(< K. ré-jìn) divide, separate, split. řeetu da gē-daava 'he split it up the middle'. cf. bēřú; řéetâ.

řeu (v.n. ràyí) (ventive form of rau, q.v.) used in tēřá řeu and sentences in other aspects having tēřá 'moon' as subject to mean "the crescent moon appears on the first day of the lunar month". nà nci tēřa dāa rai 'I want the moon to appear'.

ří his, i.e. third person singular masculine pronoun used as:

(1) Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it appears only in construction with associative linker gē (cf. gē (2)) giving gérí.

(2) Independent Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kérí. cf. ácí, cí.

ří, rì see rau

řìi = rài medial in phrase

ríídùwà (pl. ríídùwàwín) = ářdùwà beans (*Vigna sinensis*) [H. wake]. cf. jàabì.

rímí (pl. rímámín) (cf. H. rímí) white silk cotton or kapok tree (*Eriodendron orientale*). cf. kàràřw.

rìitèrín (< K. lètèlín < Ar.) Monday.

rìyàk (pl. rìyàyín) the tall, very tough grass *Cymbopogon giganteum* [H. tsaure], used for zana mats, etc.

rìyú referential form of rài

řò (used with topicalized phrase) "as for", indeed. suu řo tluwii bai 'well as for that it's not meat'; amzharu řo atu áa nii 'certainly she'll come tomorrow'. See jà (1), zègáu (2). cf. ngúm (b) and other words cited there.

řòotú (v.n. řòotà) (< K. ró-jín) (a) hold, retain. See dářòotà. cf. gàfáu (1), jìbú (1).

(b) preside over, be in charge of. Maina Goořaka, á řooci daa tku 'Prince Goraka, take charge of this town'. cf. jìbú (1c).

řú- (< K. rú) alone (can be used only as a predicate, not as a direct modifier on a noun, and it is always used with an associative pronoun suffixed, even in negative sentences: cf. ngàa- for a word with similar syntactic behavior). íi řuu-gàa 'I'm all alone'; Áudù řuu-gérí 'just Audu'; řúu-gára bái 'she's not alone'; baaci hal, veda-geri řuu-geri 'as for a temperamental person, in his quarter there's he and he alone'.

řùbbú = řùgbbú

řùgbbú = řùbbú (v.n. řúgbbà = řúbbà; řùgbb) break wood, etc. up in pieces.

řùgzhí (pl. řùgzhàzhín) animal manure.

řùksú (v.n. rùksà) push fuel into fire. cf. gèdlú.

řùnúnú (v.n. rùnùnà) spread to dry. ndá ruunə-n, dà w'yi aa da-k afa 'when it (sorghum wetted so as to ferment for beer making) has been spread to dry, it dries in the sunlight'. See vìyú.

řúurâu (pl. řúurárín) garrulousness, gabbiness, yakking.

řúurúwá grumbling, mumbling.

řùutà (pl. řùutàtín) entrance hut; hut in the bush or any vacant hut in a compound.

řúwâ (pl. řúwáwín) singing, song. cf. rùwáu.

řùwái (pl. rùwàwín) (v.n. of rùuyú) farming. rùwfi bàu 'first weeding

of farm after planting'. cf. ádíyà, řáábà, ázábái.

rùwànú (pl. rùwànnín) locust bean tree (*Parkia filicoidea*). cf. láan-cíídó, dǎngwánò.

rùwáu (v.n. rúwá; Imperative à rùwí) sing. ná ruwa ci 'I sang about you'.

rùwàwád being troubled; being disgusted. dləguyu áa ruwawád-ge dləmət kukutəřam bai 'a blind man doesn't worry about ruining a mirror'. cf. nyànyá.

rùuyú (v.n. rúuyà; rùwái) do farming, hoe farm. cf. gùutú, kwàřbú, zàbìyú; rùwái.

S

sébdùwà (< K. sébdà) Saturday.

sèfú (v.n. sèfà) coax, appease. bii-ci ji ii daraga-gəri-n, see naa sèfa bii nən, áa bar ii-ci bai 'if your thing (i.e. animals) went into his herd, unless there was appeasement, he wouldn't give it back to you'. (For this grammatical construction, see sée (Clai)).

sèkəntú (pl. sèkəntátín) haughtiness, conceit. baaci-k səkəntu áa biyi-k mangiituu bai 'a conceited person won't get any friends'. See gəmsək (lb).

sékàř (pl. sékàřàřín)(< ? < Ar.) sugar.

sèkòokùyú (v.n. sèkòokùyà) (1)(a) pass time, allow time to go by. sái wá skòokùyú "see you later" ('until we have passed time').

(b) spend a long time. See tàakfíní.

(2) chat, pass the time of day. jà dlam skookuya naa amaatau 'we had a chat together with some women'. See gándəřvú. cf. sàmáná.

sèkú (v.n. sèkà) shave.

sèkú = kàakáskú = mǎgənyí (3) God. sèku dà bara ii-ci aaman (said to social superior) 'may God give you long life (years)'. See dàptú (2), kàntàfòotú.

sèkùnú (v.n. sèkùnà) (tr. or intr.) increase, become or make greater. daa aaman-gu áa səkuna wam 'friendship would increase even more'; ná skunə-ngaa 'I've gained, I'm better off, I've learned something'. See ánkú, kəmáu (ld) last example.

sékúř (1) beginning. kó sékúř 'first, the first one'; lakwtu nda-k səkúř deu 'when the first people came'.

(2) *adv.* at first, at the beginning.

sèkwái (pl. sèkwàkwín) small sickle.

sèlké = sùlgé

sèltú (v.n. sèltà)(< K. səl-jìn 'remove from a post') undress (*tr.* or *intr.*). ná seltə-ngaa 'I undressed'; dá səlci iyu 'he tore my clothes off'. cf. rəntú (b).

sémâ (pl. sémámín) beer. cf. bàazhí (2), dàabəkà, màatàngíizhá.

sémágàrəm (pl. sémágàrmámín) second burial, celebration on the anniversary of an old person's death. cf. tādú (2e), zàgè mú.

səmdú (v.n. səmdā; səmdə) sneak up on. cf. pèdú.

səmú (v.n. sèmə) knit (broken bone); become sealed over (e.g. tree where bark has been damaged).

sénà (1)(pointing out or offering) here/there (it) is, here/there (they) are. sèna tai, áa mai aa 'there it is, bring it to me'.

(2) in narrative, introduces a new element or calls attention to some facet of the action. sèna, nà ktli-d ii-ci caacaawa-w 'here, I've split up all the firewood for you'.

See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history. cf. sàw.

sənáasən (pl. sənáasásín, sənáasənànín)(< K. sənásən) type of deep-fried cake, usually made of millet [H. waina].

səndúkù, səndúkì (pl. səndúkàkín)(< K. sàndúgù < Ar.) box, chest.

sénú *dem.pron.* this one, that one, this/that (thing or event being pointed out or in question). senu bi? senu ada-k ssau kuřu naa ssau wam 'that? that's the roof of a hut and the hut itself'; da senu akshi dáa tlai dá nai ii Gogaram 'after that they set out and went to Gogaram'; kàa senu 'like that, thusly'. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history. cf. sáu.

sənú (v.n. sènà) (a) lay out, spread out, lay something on the ground flat. ná jibi sèna-k wən-gaa ii da-w 'I began laying my son on it'; ndá karmai kunamu maareṃ ndá n-du ndá sənyi ii miya-k gaařu-w 'they cut a big fan palm, brought it, and laid it at the gate in the wall'. cf. pèřtú.

(b) lie out flat. aci dá sənyi ii beran wənya 'he lay down next to the girl'. cf. vèdú.

səpďú (v.n. səpďā) comb hair, comb out hair in preparation for plaiting (nəmà). at aa səpďa-g ada-gara 'she is combing her hair (head)'.

səpkú (v.n. səpkà) hitch child up on back.

səpú (v.n. səpà) remove scum, foam, etc. from a liquid. cf. dēktú.

səřəm substitute. dá masai vənaakau dá dlam ii səřəm gaskam-gu 'he bought a fish to serve as a substitute for the rooster'.

səřəm some time ago, a fairly long time ago.

səřdí (pl. sēřdādín)(< K. sēřdè or H. sírdìi) saddle.

səřkâ (pl. sēřkákín) poison. cf. gázákau, yáabî; sēřkàatú.

sēřkàatú (v.n. sēřkàatà; sēřkâ) cheat.

sərmú (v.n. sērmà; sēřém) sit with legs stretched out in front of one.

sərmú (v.n. sērmà) prepare. cf. sēřtú, sàpəřàatú.

səřtú (v.n. sēřtà)(cf. K. sàrè-jîn 'put in straight line') string beads. cf. sēřú, sērmú.

sēřú (v.n. sēřà)(cf. K. sàrè-jîn 'put in straight line, put in order') line up, string beads, etc. dà zukci shuu garau dá sēři kaa saaya 'he pierced goat droppings and strung them like beads'. cf. sēřtú.

sésàu (pl. sēsàsín) hut; room. cf. kágò, kúdèmdèm, wéndùwà. NB: In normal speech within a sentence, sésàu is usually reduced to ssàu and even sàu.

sésúwà (pl. sēsúwàwín) stalk of millet, sorghum, etc.

sètú (v.n. sètà) sharpen to point (pencil, etc.).

sàadá n. or adj. (pl. sàadādín)(< H. tsàadàa) expensiveness; expensive. kařee-gu saada = kařee-gu naa saada 'these goods are expensive'.

sàdàktú (v.n. sàdàktà; sàdákà)(< K. sàdàk-cîn < Ar.) give alms to or in behalf of. See ndaw.

sáafəř (< K. sávèr < Ar.) (1) itinerant trading. See ápsăw.

(2) acting as a broker.

(3) bringing water from a long distance.

sái see sée

sàkəmú (v.n. sákémà; sákám) (a) mount horse, camel, etc.

(b) ride animal. cf. gàyú.

sákà (pl. sákàkín) (1) nest.

(2) small sheath for knife, razor, etc. kasakař áa təfa ii saka-k bakumak bai 'a sword won't go into a sheath for tweezers'.

sàksàktú (v.n. sàksàktà) honor, give honor to.

sàaktú (v.n. sàaktà) recover, come to (after fainting, etc.). aŕoo-gu vèru dá saakci 'he passed out then came to'.

sàaktú v.intr. (v.n. sàaktà) be afraid; go into a rage. kaa aci dá saakci-ngeri dà mci-ngeri 'it was as if he would become afraid and die'. cf. kálàu, màrwayú, sàltú.

sákwtù (pl. sákwtàtín) message. See mbàsù (4).

sàalâm (< K. sàlâm < Ar.) (a) a greeting; extending a greeting, e.g. standing outside a compound saying salam aleekum!.

(b) taking leave. See mìyá (2). cf. sàlàmtú.

sàlàmtú (v.n. sàlàmtà; sàalâm)(< K. sàlà-m-jîn < Ar.) (1) take leave of, bid farewell.

(2)(by seller of goods) agree to a price offered by buyer.

sàlòotú (v.n. sàlòotà)(< K. sòlò-jîn 'conciliate' < Ar.) make peace, make a truce.

sàltú v.intr. (v.n. sàltù) be concerned, be worried. ná saltə-ngaana! ii maa səma tku wàa way bai 'I was worried that this beer wouldn't suffice for us'. cf. kálàu, màrwayú, sàaktú.

sâm bářkà thank you!. sam bařka naa Bəndəřkuuku! 'thanks be to B.!'. See ngənəptú.

sàamàďú (v.n. sàamàďú) wither, shrivel up.

sàmàná (pl. sàmànànín)(< K. sàmàná 'speech') (a) chatting.

(b) talking about, relating stories concerning. dá jibi samana-k waaci 'she began talking about olden times'.

(c) discussion, talking something over. ndáa samana maa ndá mpa dluğun Yařiiima Nyaabe-gu gaada ... 'they say that the name Yarima Nyabe was given because ...'. See átən (1). cf. səkòokùyú.

sàanfyà (pl. sàanfyáyín)(< K. sànyà < Ar.) occupation.

sántəřàm (< K. sàmtəřàm) antimony (used as a cosmetic).

sàanú (v.n. sàanà) mention. See dlàdlìyú.

sàanùutú (v.n. sàanùutà)(? < K.) recognize, become aware of. bədlamu ye áa saanuuta-k ja 'the hyena recognized the dog'; bədlamu à ncu dà kii'yi-naa kaayak, kaayak ye saanuutə-du 'the hyena wanted to eat up the squirrel and the squirrel had become aware of it'.

sàpəřàatú (v.n. sàpəřàatà; sàpəřə)(< K. sàvəřà-jîn 'dress person beautifully') prepare. ná sapəřaate-ngaa 'I've prepared'. cf. sèrmú.

sàpdú (v.n. sàpdâ) do first pounding of grain to remove bran. cf. zàatú.

sàpí (tàwàn) yàayé at any time, all the time. saapi yaaye gəzh-aakshi gadlɛmataak naa ama-w 'he and his wife are always at odds'.

sáptó (pl. sáptótín) pile of grass, cornstalks, guinea corn heads, etc. stacked for storage. See kàmàatú.

sáará (pl. sáarárín)(< H. sáaráa) = kèlàamá peer.

sártù (pl. sártàtín)(< K. sártè) term, appointed time.

sàařù (< K. sàrù) a loan; a thing lent. cf. básà, sàařùutú.

sàařùutú (v.n. sàařùutà; sàařù)(< K. sàr-jín) borrow; lend. baaci saařu kaacum, àa ya ii rawanke, baaci kaacum-gu zəga-du 'no matter where a borrower of clothes goes, the owner of the clothes knows it'. See mègènyí (2).

sàskú (v.n. sàsàkà; sàsák) scrape or cut off in small pieces, e.g. skin of mango, etc.; carve wood in this way to make hoe handle, etc. cf. pàpkú.

sàsú (v.n. sàsà; sàsáp) brush off, e.g. a dusty table, dirt on clothes, etc.

sàatú (v.n. sàatà) lift, raise. matuutu-k kambuudi áa saata-k səsüwa bai 'a setter of a trap does not (have to) raise a stalk'; maanyim-gu dá saaci gəma-gara 'the boy separated her thighs'. cf. sùktú.

sáu (v.n. sà, but in Imperfective, behaves as high tone verb, causing subject pronoun to dissimilate to low, e.g. nàa sá-w 'I am drinking it'; Imperative à sú (à shí is used by some younger speakers), Subjunctive dà shí)

(1)(a) drink.

(b) consume by drinking, i.e. medicine, poison, etc. See bàllé (2), bàazhí (1).

(c)(of vessels) dip up water. See tàkàcí.

(d) *intr.* drink potions for magical purposes. dà shi-naakshi ii mbuudai 'they took potions in order to become invisible'.

(2) experience, undergo. aci àa sa-k ravan-gə maaka řankata bai 'he didn't experience any difficulty in seeking it out'; kàa sa-naa foo-gu 'you will experience it's (perfume's) scent'.

(3) idiomatic uses:

(a) dà 'eye' as object: 'behave shamelessly'. sa-k d-aaci tku? 'are you so shameless as to act this way?'.

(b) dà-k àw 'eye of guinea corn' as object: 'resow places in farm where seeds have not germinated' [H. řwafi]. ná sa-naa da-k aw-gaa-gu garvaca 'I resowed my millet yesterday'.

(c) áǎ-k X 'head of X as object: 'jump over X'. viida sa áǎ-k auǎ-k ja 'the hare jumped over the dog's grave'. See sée (B2).

sáu *dem.pron.* (medial in a phrase sáu → súu by regular phonological rule affecting all -au)

(a)(with or without demonstrative adjective tkú following) this one (in sight or in question). sau, nàa ya-du naa Boone 'this one, I'll carry it with difficulty'; suu tam? 'what's this?'; suu tku bangai 'this is a baboon'; kàa sáu 'like that, thusly'.

(b) sáu ... sáu 'this one ... 'that one'. ká kəma kaarak suu bil-n, ká palcí sau 'if you don't like this one, change it for that one'.

See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

sàaudú (v.n. sáaudá; sàwád) wipe around inside of food bowl, etc. with curved forefinger to get what remains. cf. mäsàudák.

sàunú (v.n. sáunà; sùwán) dream.

sáurák (pl. sáurárín) long strips of dried meat. See dlèmatú, tètǎfú.

sàurák (pl. sàuràucín) mother-in-law; father-in-law.

sáuyâ (pl. sáuyáyín) laziness.

sàw (tài) (1)(pointing out or offering) here (it) is, here (they) are. soo iyu 'here I am'; soo (tii) kakkadi 'here's some paper'; soo tii áa rii tku 'here he is here'. (Before pause -aw optionally → -oo.)

(2)(a) in narrative, introduces a new element or calls special attention to some facet of the story. saw ye, kuku-gu gazbǎř 'now let it be noted, the baobab was tall'.

(b) sàw ... sàw 'on the one hand ... and on the other hand'. saw maya dà ma-naa bédlamu, saw maazam maa bédlamu dà kíidá tluwii bai 'on the one hand hunger had overcome the hyena, but on the other hand the blacksmith had said the hyena shouldn't eat meat'.

See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

sàwák (pl. sàwàwín) festival celebrating end of Ngizim year. gaaya-k sawak 'horse galloping as part of sawak festival'.

sáawù airplane.

sáayà (pl. sáayáyín) stone for adornment, gem stone. saaya-k wura 'necklace'; saaya-k akau 'ornamental girdle'.

sée = sái (cf. K. and H. sái) sée may be followed by a full sentence, a noun phrase, or a prepositional phrase; its English translations are numerous and depend on context; unifying all its uses is a sense of exclusivity, the elimination of alternatives, the notion that the thing or event governed by it is exceptional or unique; uses below are divided into three groups (A-C) on the basis of different syntactic environments and associated semantic interpretations.

cf. *hář* in all its meanings for the contrasting sense of inclusivity.

(A) *verb modalities* - *sée* introducing a verbal sentence lends certain modalities to the verb depending on aspect; generally, *sée* expresses a sense of appropriateness of obligatoriness to the event expressed in the clause as opposed to other potential events. cf. *dóólè*.

(1) *sée* + Perfective: gives sense of inevitability, necessity, usually translatable as 'have to', 'must'. *gaskam waařa áa kwarya, ndàa gayim, ndàa gazabi, sai kwaryu* 'a rooster that's going to crow, (no matter if there's) a cat or a hawk, he has to crow'; *sai ká jì ká dee-d aa* 'you must go and bring it to me'. cf. also (B3) below.

(2) *sée* + Subjunctive: gives sense of suggesting an activity or of the appropriateness of an activity under certain circumstances, often translatable with 'should', 'ought to'. see *wà wunyi-naawa, an-zharu ká benci* 'why don't we spend the night (here) and tomorrow you pass on'; *aci naa guru-gəri bal, see ná tafi yi ama-gəri, aci áa la-wan-gu* 'him and his jealously, I'm just going to fornicate with his wife with him looking on'.

(B) *perspective of things or events with relation to a context* - sentences of the form ... *sée* X, where ... represents conditions for or context into which the *sée* phrase is placed, and X may be a full sentence, a noun phrase (including nominalized sentence), or prepositional phrase; generally, *sée* indicates the uniqueness or exceptionality of X with respect to the context ... ; in English translation, the word translating *sée* may take only part of the phrase governed by *sée* (e.g. see (2) below); the divisions (1)-(5) below are rather arbitrary, and in some cases, examples from one could just as well be translated as another, context from which the sentences were taken being the main determining factor. With respect to (B), cf. *àmmá* (3) and *átòn* (3): *àmmá X báí* (= *átòn X báí*) indicates that there is a general situation to which X is an exception; *sée X* indicates that a certain situation does *not* obtain for the most part, but exceptionally in the case of X, it does. cf. also *hář* (3), which is more or less antonymous to *sée*; cf. also *báí* (3c).

(1) there is/was no situation or circumstance having the stated characteristics *except* X. *aci maa Canduwa naa mantuu bai see aci* 'he said Canduwa had no lover except him'; *goo wana-gəri see saafəř* 'he had no occupation other than trading'; *zəgaya see səku* 'only God knows'.

(2) all associated things are/were eliminated leaving *only* X. *dá ngwi-naa tluwii-gu bal, dà daashi-d il vək see dá yvi rəvə-w naa bi* *kunu-w* 'he took all the meat and stuffed it into the hole and he left only the hide and innards'; *sa-naa ada-w dəřus tənə, see dá gazhi nən ama-w* 'all of them jumped over it and only the woman remained' (could also be translated 'all of them jumped over it until the woman remained'—cf. (C2) below).

(3) given a certain set of circumstances, the possibilities are/were limited to *just* X. *bədlamu dà lawan ja, see tək* 'as for a hyena, on seeing a dog, all there is is killing (it)'; *kwà daana wam bai, see kaanaadi* 'don't cry anymore, just (be) patient'; *hal gayim, see ná zəga-n iyu* 'as for the temperament of a cat, it's just me who knows'.

See also dàamú (2), fèrá, kwàryú. cf. (A1) above.

(4) associated with a given circumstance, the *unique* or *only* outcome or related thing is/was X. tǝta-n rǝpta-w ngum, see foowa 'on opening it, there was just a stench'; kaayak 'yuwee gǝraazan ngum, see kwam 'when the squirrel pulled the string, there was the bull'.

(5) W, Y, and Z are/were not involved, *but rather* it is/was X. aa-man áa vǝg ii daa bai, sai ii tǝka 'years don't fall on the ground, but on the body'; ndá tasa Mari bai, sai Isufu 'they didn't find Mari, but rather Isufu'.

(6) 'unless' clauses seen in (Claii) below are closely related to (B).

(C) *temporal relations* - *sée* X, where X is a clause or phrase which allows establishment of a temporal relation, implies only at the time of X (and perhaps thereafter), i.e. the focus is on an event which occurs sometime after the time where it is referred to (and also perhaps on the followup to the event focussed on). cf. hář where the event in the hář clause is the end point; the difference between *sée* and hář might be diagrammed as follows, where X is the event focussed on, the arrow indicates the direction of time with relation to that focus, and the dots the period not focussed on:
sée ... X → ; hář → X

(1) *sée* introduces a sentence initial subordinate clause with a *following* main clause expressed or implied.

(a) *sée* clause terminates in ǝn (q.v.), which generally indicates an event not yet realized, or an event habitually or iteratively realized.

(i) *sée* can be translated 'when', 'only when', 'only if', 'not until' (translations depend on context; relevant factors influencing translation are not clearly understood). bǝba rǝgǝ-ngǝri: see já kǝma rii-kshi-n, kǝ yi 'your father has migrated: when we hear the place, you should go there'; náa bǝdla-w; see ná ju ii gandǝrvu-n náa ji miya-w kaa vǝk ciidi 'I will dig; when I get to the center of the compound, I will form an opening like a cricket's hole' (if pause, indicated by semicolon, were not made before *sée*, this could also be translated 'I will dig until I get to the center ...'—cf. (C2) below); see ná kǝma Canduwa aa riyu-n 'not until/only if I hear Canduwa is there'; see da kuu-gu-n wǝ ji-naawa-n, wǝ wanyi ii wunya-w 'not until after that, when we go, we should send word to the girl'. See also vǝdú (2).

(ii) *sée* clause is negative: 'unless'. see naa zayi bii-n, áa gaaya bai 'unless there's a rope, it's not climbable'; am duwa-w, see baa-ci-k dǝlfu bii-n, áa bii dà shi bai 'water from this well, unless it's somebody with the means, he won't manage to drink any of it'. See sǝfú. cf. (B) above. cf. also báí (3c).

(b) *sée* clause does *not* terminate in ǝn: '(only) when', with implication that the event is complete. sai daa tlanu, shiikeenan, sai Isǝfu dà ram ii-ci maa ... 'only when it had dawned, well, then Isufu told him ...'.

(2) *sée* clause *follows* an expressed or implied main clause: 'until' (*sée* clause may or may not terminate in ǝn following same semantic

conditions as in (C1) above). akshi áa jiba-k dlama-w kaa saw sai dlam yuwan gatkasa-n dà tli 'they kept doing things that way until they had spent seven days, then they left'. cf. also second example of (B2 above) and second example of (C1a) above for syntactically ambiguous sentences which could be translated as having 'until' clauses; dà wunyi bii-gara sai pèdèk tku 'it spent the night by itself until this morning'; see ká deu 'until you come'; sée ámzhàrú 'until tomorrow' (the latter two examples and many more like them are typical leave takings with something like 'I'll see you' implied before them). See also kàsàktú.

(3) preceding a sentence in the Subjunctive in sequence to the immediately preceding event: 'then', 'when', or no translation at all (this usage may be a recent introduction from Hausa influence, since it is extremely rare in texts given by and sentences spoken by older speakers, while it is quite common among younger speakers who are fluent Hausa speakers as well as speaking Ngizim). jàa kunu sèkoo-kuya naa maapèndaawad-gu tēnu, sai jàa ki bēdlamu áa nii 'we were chatting with those young men, when we saw a hyena coming'.

shə- see shi- for entries not found here

shəshkú = shàshkú

shāab-āanái (d.f. shí 'bottom' + aabu—cf. bǎu (2)) (euphemism) my backside, my buttocks.

shàfùwàatú (v.n. shàfùwàatà)(? < K.) consider good or evil omened.

sháidà, sháidá (< K. shádà 'witness' or H. sháidàa < Ar.) testimony, bearing witness to. kakkadi-k shaida-k garvaata-k lařdi-k Ngèzəm 'document affirming the leadership of the Ngizim sector'.

shàalú (v.n. sháall) care about, pay attention to. tərku shaalu metu-k mii-k dagii bai 'an orphan doesn't care about the death of somebody else's mother'; kà ncu ndàa shaal-aaci bii-n, à ji ii Kano 'if you want to be ignored, go to Kano'. See gāadā (1c), vǎu (1b).

shàr (pl. shàràrín) plain mush unaccompanied by sauce (dlùgwàn). cf. ábēn, gùdá, màasàná.

shàříp (< K. shèrîf or H. shàřif < Ar.) descendant of the prophet Ali (some are said to have supernatural powers).

shəshkú (v.n. sháshkà; shàshák) = shàshkú (1) hollow out interior of. dà shashki kunu-w 'he hollowed out the inside (of baobab fruit)'.

(2) prod, e.g. in hole with stick. See dùngún.

(3) sick on. náshəshki ii-ci ja 'I sicked the dog on him'.

sháu (pl. sháshín, shàwàwín) (a) excrement (animal or human), shit.

(b) bà sháu 'defecate'. See bǎu (2).

shàwāř (pl. shàwāřářín)(? < K. < Ar.) advice, discussion. See gatkáu.

shàwàrtú (v.n. shàwàrtà; shàwãř) (< K. sawar-jin < Ar.) advise; arrange with; talk things over. shawãřtee-d ii-ci maa ... 'he had informed him that ...'; ja shawãřtə-du naa atu maa ... 'she and I talked it over (and agreed) that ...'.

shí see sáú

shí (pl. sháshín) (1) base of thing, bottom of thing. aa shi-k apsaw 'at the base of an apsaw tree'. cf. (4) below.

(2) genital organs (of male or female). shi-k ja-g mai! (said to several) = H. durin uwaku! "you bunch of bastards!".

(3)(as locative word) at the base of, under (tree, etc.), underneath. ii shi-k rakai 'under the bed'; ii shi-k dluwan 'under the greens (gathered for sauce)'. See also ápsáw. cf. dódáa.

(4)(in certain fixed phrases or compounds) shi-k 'yúwá 'armpit'; vèkshí 'anus'; bèmbèkshí 'buttocks'.

shíidǎw (pl. shíidǎwáwín) reticulated millipede. See bàllé (1).

shíláálíyá (pl. shíláálíyáyín) skink.

shìmpédí (pl. shìmpèedǎdín) grain with bran removed. cf. áyáawá.

shìrândúk marabou stork (*Leptoptilus crumeniferus*) [H. babba da jaka].

shírín two. akshi shirin 'both of them'.

shìshìyú (v.n. shìshìyà) melt. mērak shishiyi-ngara 'the oil melted'. cf. řàdlú (2).

shìitá (pl. shìitátín) (cf. K. njittá 'pepper', H. cìttáa 'Melegueta pepper') = cìitá (1) red pepper (*Aframomum melegueta*).

(2)(a) cìitá áfó probably ginger; Hausa name given citta mai yatsa.

(b) cìitá gǎjǎvér "hornet pepper" (so called because it is said to resemble a hornet's nest); ?sp., Hausa name given citta mai kwaya.

shìitán (pl. shìitànánín) anger; sullenness. yaanau aarawai dēka-naa bari naa shiitan 'white teeth (i.e. a smile) are better than a gift (given) with sullenness'. cf. gǎzhí (a), ágdwù.

shìyú (v.n. shìyí) (1) fish (usually used as a noun, e.g. ná dlam shiyi 'I fished').

(2) place axe blade, etc. into shaft. cf. kù mú (c).

síi, síi tái (pointing out or referring to event in past) there (it) is, there (they) are. sii (tii) kakkadi (fak) 'there's paper (over there)'; sii tái 'there it is'; sii (tii) aci 'there he is'; sii tái amaatuukun áa tēka-k aadan 'there were your wives, crying away'. See p. xxii for full paradigm; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

síyú dem.pron. (with or without demonstrative adjective tíyú following)

that one (either being pointed out or in question). siyu (tiyu) kuku 'that's a baobab'. See full paradigm, p. xxii; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

sòo see sàw

sóonò (pl. sóonànín) (< K. súnó) shoe, sandal. See àkér.

sòosòotú (v.n. sòosòotà) loosen.

sú see sáú 'drink'

súu see sáú 'this one'

sùbàná oh my!, good Lord!. See cáďák.

sùktú (v.n. sùktà) lift, raise. bíi sukta-k ada 'pillow'. cf. sàatú.

sùlǵé (pl. sùlǵàǵín) (< K. sùlǵé) = sèlké chain armor. See ďású. cf. búugè, kúmàakúmí.

sùwèn (pl. sùwènànín) white-tailed mongoose (*Herpestes albicauda*) [H. tunku].

sùwán (pl. sùwàwín) dream. gafa-k yuwan kabiine ndáa suwan bai 'when one sleeps with trouble, one doesn't dream'. cf. sàunú.

sùwàarí (pl. sùwàaràrí) (a) dancing.

(b) á suwaari-k ada-w 'she's shaking her head about'. cf. rèďú.

sùwú (v.n. sùwà) remove thing from liquid.

sùuyá male goat born without developed testicles. cf. áakú, ďáyák, gàbáabù.

T

-t- (final vowel depends on verb aspect and extension, e.g. Perfective -tú, Second Subjunctive -tá, Ventive Perfective -téu, etc.; Subjunctive and singular Imperative become -ci) productive verb derivational suffix which can be added to other words to derive verbs, e.g. ngàatú 'to recover from illness' d.f. ngàa- 'in good health'; also added to nearly all borrowed roots used as verbs regardless of their form in the donor language, e.g. řòotú 'hold' < K. ró-, tàimàkàatú 'help' < H. taimaka; when the root to which -t- is added ends in a vowel, the vowel is lengthened, but -t- may be added to a consonant final root, e.g. shàwàřtú 'advise' d.f. shàwàř 'advice'; verbs derived by the -t- suffix are regularly low tone regardless of tone of the simple root, though there are exceptions, e.g. kàptú 'go to meet' < K. kàp-).

tèfú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* tètà) (1) enter. See hâl (1b); ʼn (B3d).

(2)(with transitizer -náa, -dù) put in.

tèkà (*pl.* tètàkín)(cf. K. tígà) (1)(a) body. See mèzèmu. cf. gùvù.

(b) a thing itself, the physical substance of a thing. á baren kutəř-ci nà taushi ii-ci tluwai ii tēka-w 'give me your tail and I'll tie meat on it (lit: on the "body" of it)'; dà tad-naa aka ii tēka gadlii-gəri 'he set fire to (the "body" of) his granary'; degagin-gu áa tēka-k zanii-gəri 'arrows were (lodged) in (the "body" of) his gown'; dá dlam vedaui ii tēka-k ama 'it (hyena) urinated on the woman'; áa kkəma tēka-gəri ii tēka waka 'he was banging his body against the tree'. See mákúrl. NB: tēkà in this usage is in contrast with rài (c); rài is used with a preposition to mean 'to', 'at', 'from', etc. a place where the thing or person in question is located, whereas tēkà is used with a preposition to mean 'to', 'at', 'from', etc. a person or thing itself; both rài and tēkà serve to render a concrete object into a location.

(2)(as locative word) next to, against. dá mbashi-ngəri ii tēka abən 'he sat down next to the food'. cf. also usage in (1b).

(3)(with plural possessive pronoun) each other. akshi dá salamci tēk-aakshi 'they took leave of each other'; saku dá daawa waa ki tēk-aawa 'may God grant that we see each other'. cf. ádá (3), gatkáu.

(4) used in Imperfective aspect, following pronoun and preceding verbal phrase, tēkà indicates progressive or habitual activity as opposed to futurity, which the simple Imperfective alone may also represent (cf. also yá (1a)). náa tēka wana 'I'm busy working' (cf. náa wana 'I'm working' or 'I will work'); náa tēka-k dlama-k Maaləm Baaci-k Gənyi-k Haařaaji 'I serve/have been serving as the Scribe for the Tax Collector'; ndá dlan-naa ařzəki kade-kade áa tēka-w bi? 'does one get welath very quickly doing that?' (for this last example, cf. also (1b) above). See jəmbi-jəmbi, tətliú. cf. kúnú (4).

(5) tètàkín wəndùwà 'posts holding up cornstalk fence around house'.

təktliú (*v.n.* tətlià; tətli) investigate, look carefully into matter. à tətli aa aci bəlan 'investigate him carefully for me'. cf. jəayú, məakú, tətliú.

tékú see tkú

tékú (*v.n.* tək, becomes tú-w when an implied object is present—cf. example under (1) below—by regular rule whereby word final -k is deleted when referential marker ʼw is added)

(1)(a) kill. ngařgu áa wunduwa-k tlatluwa, áa tu-w-n maya 'as for a stallion at a poor man's house, it is hunger which will kill him'. cf. rəbú (1).

(b) put out fire. tēka-naa aka-w 'she put out the fire'.

(2) have strong negative or damaging affect on one. See gùdləř.

(3) kick (cow, donkey, etc.).

(4)(a)(used intransitively) to rain, to beat down, splash down (liquids). am tkə-ngara 'it rained'.

(b)(used transitively) to cause water to behave as in (4a). zuwak dà tkə am 'the wind brought rain'; tək vɛdau 'he urinated'. See bóonê.

(5) weave palm leaf mat (búucɪ), etc.; weave round pot cover (débâ). cf. càakáu, gàunú, nèmú.

təlákək (< K. tàlágè < Ar.) Tuesday.

Tállè Jos.

təlól (pl. təlálɪn)(< K. tólól 'mud on ground after rain') mud. cf. tàbó.

təlúus (cf. K. təlás ideophone used with softness of pillows, etc.) soft, softness (including softness of skin); tender (of meat). tlu-wii teluus 'tender meat'; teluustluwai kaarak naa kiida 'tender meat is nice to eat'. cf. lóbád, lófííd, lóglék, lómís.

témà (pl. témámín) mortar.

témàakú (pl. tèmàamín, tèmàmkín, tèmàakwàkwín, tèmàamàkín) ewe. cf. ábzhùurà, góomák.

təmtəm (pl. təmtámcín, təmtáamín) log.

tén (pl. tátín) (1) nose.

(2) eye of needle. See ðáyú (1a).

tón (probably < H. tún—not commonly used except by speakers who tend to mix a great deal of Hausa into their Ngizim) since, from the time that.

tónú *dem.adj.* (1)(a) X tónú, where X is a simple noun: 'the X in question, the X previously referred to'. tamke kə duuniya aa rii tənú wara 'everything in the world was at that place'.

(b) same as (1a), but where X = noun phrase containing relative clause. gaskam waaña àa mangiina naa gayim tənú 'the rooster who was friends with the cat'; gawa kupkə-ngara waaña náa karam naa atu tənú 'the axe unhafted that I was chopping with' (note that the clause has been extraposed, as in the translation).

NB: tónú fills a position in the demonstrative system formally paralleling tkú 'this' and tíyú 'that' (see full demonstrative paradigm, p. xxii); however, it is rarely used as a modifier of a simple noun as in (1a); the meaning function which would be expected for tónú to fill as a simple noun modifier is taken over by ʔw, -gú (q.v.); however, tónú is more frequently used than ʔw, -gú when used with a noun phrase containing a relative clause as in (1b), especially when the clause is extraposed from the antecedent noun; in terms of actual frequency, the most common use of tónú is that in (2) below. See Schuh (1977) for details of syntax and history.

(2) = ngûm (a): ténú may be used at the end of an adverbial clause or nominalized adverbial expression in the meaning 'when'; when so used, the indication is that the event in the clause or phrase terminating in ténú was a single and complete event in the past (cf. ín, nén which, when used in this syntactic position, indicate an event which has not taken place or which took place a number of times or over a long period); the meaning of ténú in this usage is similar to Hausa dà as in da ya zo, sai ya zauna 'when he came, he sat down', but ténú comes at the end of the clause and may be used with clauses introduced by a number of conjunctions, e.g. dambà, kàabì, àkáu (3).
 jà yka aci tēnu, jà ndēm aci 'when we saw him, we greeted him';
 Dēmza na-naa goomak akuu ziida-w tēnu 'Dumza skinned the ram after slaughtering it';
 damba áa nii tēnu zha tlařdā-ngara naa Ngwajin naa Mēsau 'before he had come, war had broken out between Ngwajin and Misau'.

tēnyí (pl. tēnyànyín) (1) shallow hole, impression in ground.

(2) place where person or thing is normally found. ndá ba zaabēnu bii nēn, dafkarak áa tēnyu-w 'if one doesn't get a guinea fowl, the francolin is still (to be found) in its place'. cf. gátēř, rài.

tēpkú (v.n. tēpkà)(cf. K. tēfá-jìn 'spit') (1) = tēpkú spit. tēpkee vawu-n, maa dēdēm, tēpkee aawayā, maa ankwak 'he spit out red earth and said it was blood, he spit out yellow earth and said it was pus'.

(2) pour out substance other than a liquid. ndà dlama bee waařa ndáa dlama-w: gaadagum tēpkee-naa apta-k gayim 'let one do what one will: the mouse poured out the cat's flour'. cf. páu (1), vèngú.

(3) abort.

tēpú (v.n. tēpà) (a) tie knot.

(b) lock. See tētāa (2b).

tēřá (pl. tēřàřín) moon; month. tēřa-k afa 'the hot, dry season'; tēřa naa tēřàřín 'for months and months'.

tēřàbú v.intr. (v.n. tēřàbù) rot, decay. yaanau tēřàbē-n, marnyi áa tēřàbū bai 'while the teeth may decay, the tongue will not decay'. cf. dlègwàdú; cf. also gátēřàbák.

tēřàkùnà (d.f. tēřkú) being an orphan. See jàajém.

tēřdú (v.n. tēřdā; tēřéd) squeeze out (pus from boil, etc.). à yen ká tēř'y aa gabēřzai 'come and lance my boil for me'. cf. màadú.

tēřfú (v.n. tēřfà) hobble, fetter. gatakas saurak, bēdlamu kuru ndāa-n ndá tēřfē-daw aci bai 'fettters of meat strips, a hyena would not refuse for someone to fetter him with them'. cf. gādùukà, gà-kwáařá.

tēřkàkđú (v.n. tēřkàkđā; tēřkàkád) repeatedly press on (as in giving artificial respiration).

tàrkú (pl. tərkwàkwín) orphan. See shàalú.

tərmú (v.n. tərma) plait three strands together to make rope. cf. bègú, nèmú (3).

təřpú = tərřfú

tótāa (pl. tótátín) (1)(a) n. pain. ná dlam wana kapa aikwa-gaanai dlan tətāa 'I worked until my hands hurt' [... did pain]. See kāmáu (1d), mēzēmú.

(b) adj. painful. cf. fərə́, dlərə́.

(2)(a) difficulty.

(b) difficult, hard (to do). wana tətāa = tətā-k wana 'hard work'; maaka-k zēba tətāa bai, tēpa-k lēman-gu 'looking for marriage isn't hard, it's getting together the money (for it)'. See mēstú (2b), nāa (4c). cf. bóonē, ngánépù, kàbínè, kúdàřà.

(3) tótā-n 'just as soon as, immediately after'. tətā-n nya-k bē-dlamu ngum, dá mbashi 'just as soon as the hyena arrived, she sat down'. cf. dà prep. (2).

tótān see tótāa

tá in all text examples, tá follows -n as used at the end of conditional clauses; it seems to serve the basic function as such words as řò, kàyà, etc. but with entire clause. dà dīāba naa naaci bii nēn ta, áa nii-d aanii bi? 'if it weren't for his having perseverance, would he bring it to me?'; gusku na masē-n ta, ná ji-n, ... 'now if I buy it (and) if I go ...'.

tāabā (pl. tāabàbín)(cf. K. táfā, H. tāabāa) tobacco; any tobacco product.

tāabēsá (pl. tāabēsāsín) small shrub of the senna tribe (*Cassia tora*) [H. tafasa] used in sauce (has leaves shaped like a peanut's, which fold up at night).

tābā (pl. tābābín) rectangular shaped bag woven from palm leaves [H. sanho].

tābó (pl. tābābín)(? < H. tābóo) mud. cf. táló.

tābsāk (pl. tābsásín) bunch of long grass prepared as in dāarú for thatching.

tābtíú (v.n. tábtíà; tábátí) ask, make inquiries. laabař-gē Maamēdo ye náa teka-k tabtíla-w da rii-k gazgaraucin 'the history of Mamudo too I have been inquiring into from elders'. cf. jāayú, tēktiú.

tādú (v.n. tá'yí) (1) release, let go of, drop. à ta'y aa zēgēr-gaa řap 'release (your hold on) my foot a little bit'; gaza řap, daa ná tađee-naa aařoo-gaa 'I almost threw away my own life'; kakēra shi gaptā āa ta'yí kē ādā 'a load under the arm will make one on the

head fall'; *adiyu guvu gaatla-n, dâa-n dà ta'yi* 'if the stem of a gourd plant is green, it will produce' (cf. *gaatlá* (2) where this same proverb contains the verb 'yàwú 'give birth'). See *gàyí* (2bii).

(2) *tàdú* is used with a large variety of objects requiring various idiomatic translations in English:

(a) *ákà* 'fire' as object: 'set fire to'. See *tàkà* (1b).

(b) *kunú* 'stomach' as object: 'relax, be at ease'. *náa lawan-gu kàa ta'yi-k kun-aaci naa iyu bai* 'I notice that you aren't at ease with me'; *ná tād-naa kunu-gaa* 'my mind is at ease'. See *nàmbò*.

(c) *miyá* 'mouth' as object: 'congratulate, praise'. *ndàa ta'yi iitu miya* 'they were congratulating her'.

(d) ? *nénúwâ* 'shadow' as object: ? 'drop one's guard, put one's mind off a subject'. (of three examples, two were transcribed, perhaps incorrectly, as *núwâ* rather than *nénúwâ*; the Hausa translation given was *ya saki kurwarsa, ta saki kurwarta*, etc., which according to Abraham means 'go to sleep'; context of the Ngizim examples does not suggest this interpretation) *maguru dà ta'y-naa nuwa-gəri dá tuwayi-naa guru* 'the jealous husband put his mind off the matter and forgot about being jealous'.

(e) *sómà* 'beer' as object: 'beer drinking' at *sómàgàróm* (q.v.). At the death of an old person, several days of beer drinking and festivities take place, at the end of which beer is sprinkled on the grave (*ndà zagəm-naa sōma-w—cf. zàgəmú* (2)); after several months, a *sómàgàróm* "second burial" takes place and people again gather for beer drinking (*tá'yí-k sōmá-w*).

(f) article of clothing as object: 'wear (clothes)'. *zanii-k jəjəm məgenyu-w ngum tādə bai balle baaci-k saaru* 'as for a gown of thorns, its owner doesn't wear it, let alone the borrower'.

tàfiyú = *tàplyú*

tàftáf (pl. *tàftàfàfín*) a shrub (*Cochlospermum tinctorium*) [H. rawaya] with yellow flowers and a yellow root used as a dye and in cooking. cf. *áawáyá*.

tái int.pron. who, whom (form used in all syntactic environments except in the associative construction—cf. *yèe*). *suu tai?* 'who is that?'; *tamba ci-n tai?* 'who helped you?'; *ká tamba tai?* 'who did you help?'; *ká ram laabař ii tai?* 'who did you tell the news to?'. cf. *tâm*.

tàimàkàatú (v.n. *tàimàkàatà*) (< H. *tàimákàa*) help. cf. *bàanàatú, tàm-báu* (2).

tàkàcí (pl. *tàkàcàcín*) basket or calabash used to lift dirt out of well when digging. *takaci bədlə-naa duwa-n, àa sa am-gu bai* 'if a calabash digs a well, it won't dip its water'.

tákàřdá (pl. *tákàřdàdín*) (< H. *tákàrdáa*) book; paper. cf. *kákkádì*.

tákàřwá (pl. *tákàřwáwín*) long bamboo pole.

tàkđú (v.n. tákđá; tàkád) step on; press down on.

tàakíiní having recently returned, having just arrived. ja àa wənduwa taakiini da rii-k bara 'the dog was at home having just returned from hunting'; taakiini gusəsku da pata 'he has just come from the bush'; lakwtu-w zaaman Nasaaña taakiini kaarara səkookuyə bai 'at that time it was the time when the Europeans had recently arrived, having not been there long'.

tàkwsú (v.n. tákwsà; tàkwás) = tàusú (1)(a) tie; tie up. See bèlân (2), řaábú. cf. kàisú, məđú, yàidú.

(b) attach, lock, fasten in any way. bee waaña miya təusə-n, aikwak áa fətkə-w bai 'what the mouth "ties up" the hand cannot "untie"'; nda-k duukakin təusə-naa səfdi 'the horsemen saddled up' (cf. kàstú). See gáafà (1b).

(c) imprison. See kəmáu (2).

(d)(with zəbà 'marriage' as object) unite in marriage (= mpá zəbà). cf. mpáu (2a), zəbáu.

(2) pound soft thing (spinach, etc.) in mortar to make soupy. cf. zàatú.

tām int.pron. what (form used in all syntactic environments except in the associative construction—cf. mòò). suu tam? 'what's that?'; waakaatə-n tam? 'what happened?'; kwá ta tam? 'what did you eat?'. cf. mòò, tái.

támàn (< K. támàn 'price' < Ar.) profit. kaře àa taman aa riyu 'goods bring a good profit here'.

tàmbáu (v.n. tàmbà)(< K. sé-tàmb-ín 'taste') (1)(a) taste.

(b) "have a taste of", try out. nda-k Ngwajin tamba nda naa nda-k Fika 'the people of Ngwajin and of Fika established blood ties'.

(2) help. cf. bàanàatú, tàimàkàatú.

támbàl (pl. támbàlálín)(< K. tēmbàl < Ar.) large type of drum.

támbàazái (pl. támbàazàíín) pounded millet mixed with water and sugar [H. gumba].

tàmdú (v.n. támdá; tàmad) press on, press together, e.g. drummer holding kánjáu between legs. à tam'yi gəm-aaci 'you're exposing yourself' (lit: 'press your thighs'). cf. mādú, mādú.

tàmké = tànké indef.pron. everything, whatever (form used obligatorily in all environments other than associative construction, and optionally in associative construction—cf. mòóké, esp. NB at end). tanke dləmə-ngara kalkal 'everything is just right'; ta tanke? 'did he eat everything?'. See miyá (3a). cf. mòóké, tìiké; tām.

tàmtlí (v.n. támtlì; tàmatl) mix (mush, mud, clay) into heavy paste. apt-aaci bata bəna bii-n, à tamtlí ii akuřna 'if your flour isn't

sufficient to cook (for mush), mix it into gruel'. See *mànú*. cf. *càlmú*, *tùksú*, *tùnkùdú*.

tánkà starting fire by twirling cornstalk next to piece of cotton until heat causes it to flare up.

tànké = *tàmké*

tànkú (v.n. *tánkà*; *tànák*) (1) attach rope to calabash in order to use it as a well bucket.

(2) put purlins inside roof for support.

(3) see *tánkà*

tàanú (v.n. *táanà*) remember. See *gáafà* (2), *gùdlèř*.

tàapètáapátè (pl. *tàapètáapátátín*) butterfly.

tàpái (pl. *tàpàpín*)(v.n. of *tàpìyú*) fornication. à nci kəm kwá dlam *tapai* 'he wants you so that you (two) might fornicate'; *waařa jà dlam tapai naa aci* 'the one that I fornicated with' [the one that we did fornication with him]; *maayim zəga-naa ama-k tapii-geri* 'a young man knows the woman who (wants to) fornicate with him'.

tàpáu (v.n. *tápí*) (1)(a) take, accept. bee *waařa tapa kooko àa tapi bəřtəktək bai* 'something which takes a small frog won't (necessarily) accept a bullfrog'. cf. *gènú*, *máu*.

(b) *tanke naa tapi* 'everything has its due, that which is coming to it'. cf. *núubà*.

(2) have an effect on, take effect. *kařgun tapa-naa yu* 'the medicine has taken effect on me'.

tàpìyú (v.n. *tápíyà*; *tàpái*) = *tàfiyú* have sexual intercourse with, fornicate with. *daaci maayim dà tapiyi-naa wunya* 'then the young man fornicated with the young woman'; see *ná tafiyi ama-gəri*, *aci áa la-wan-gu* 'I'm going to have intercourse with his wife with him looking on'. See *dà* (1b), *dùnìyàtú*. cf. *dəgzú*, *dəngà*, *řənú*, *tàpái*.

tàpkú (v.n. *tápkà*; *tàpák*) = *təpkú* (1)

táp-tàp-tàp *id.* sound of running. See *ǂúřùk*.

tàráu (v.n. *tárf*) approach, go close by, close along. *kà ncu dabaku-n, à tari gwangurak* 'if you want a girlfriend, see an old woman about it'.

tàřbú (v.n. *tářbà*; *tàřáb*) = *tàtǂú* distribute, share out. cf. *ǂàrú*.

tàřnú (v.n. *tářnà*; *tàřán*) (1)(a) trace line, draw. *dáa mi aawaya dà tařnyi* 'she (sorceress) took yellow earth and traced lines (on her face for magical purposes)'.
(b) write. cf. *gènú* (c).

(2) head for, set out for. See làunú (4).

tàrsú (v.n. társà; tárâs) become of less account; render of less account. dà ba bii-gəri, tarsə-ngəri 'let him be on his way, he is weakened (e.g. wrestler, due to injury)'.
 táruwà (pl. táruwáwɪn) termite(s). cf. pãrdá.

tàasənà used in áa tàasəná-n ... , náa tàasəná-n ... , etc. 'without any warning, ...', 'before he/she/I/etc. could do anything, ...'. atu áa taasəna-n, saw bədlamu áa saalam 'before she knew it, there was the hyena extending greetings'; náa taasəna bíi-n, jibə-naa yu 'before I knew it, he had caught me' (this example includes báí after tàasənà; this may or may not simply be a variant means of forming this expression).

tàsáú (v.n. táshí) (1)(a) find, come across, stumble upon. See góshí (2b), lám̀bè.

(b) find that. dà tashi məzam va aayu 'they found that a hunter had shot a gazelle'. See dəbú.

(2) catch up with, overtake.

táskín (pl. táskákɪn) (< K. téskèn 'of weak character') slacker, lazy person. nən taskin kurə-naa wana 'a lazy person shuns work'. See rəmáú (d).

tàsú v.intr. (v.n. tásù) become sexually excited. ná tasə-ngaa 'I have an erection'.

tàtəmú (v.n. tátémà; tàtám) harvest beans, Bambara groundnuts, etc. by picking. fəna-k tatam áa mbasu jí rii gayi bai 'a picking calabash doesn't sit in one place'. cf. dəlmú (2), ngwáú (2), díèrdú.

táatárú (pl. táatáràrín) laughing dove (*Streptopelia senegalensis*) [H. kurciya], red-eyed dove (*S. semitorquata*), or Shelley's mourning dove (*S. decipiens shelleyi*). See dánkà, gágèràyák.

tàatàukúrām (pl. tàatàukúrámámɪn) dum palm (*Hyphoene thebaica*) [H. goruba]. cf. árdúwà.

tàt́bú (v.n. táatə́bá; táatáḅ) = tàŕbú distribute, share out. cf. ɓèrú.

tàatkú (v.n. táatkà; táaták) (1) show, point out. mavəji giina, ndaa taatka ii-ci tərfa bai 'someone lying on his back, one does not show him the moon'.

(2) demonstrate, show that. See gəmsək (2).

tàtlú v.intr.; for tr. counterpart, cf. kətlú (v.n. tátlù)

(1)(a) break into pieces; shatter. kuku dá tatli 'the baobab pod broke apart'.

(b) scatter, disperse. damba Bərnu-w dá tatli 'before Birni (Nga-

zargamo) split up'.

(2) something stiff (stick, etc.) breaks in to, snap in two. See gàadā (1a). cf. gādú.

táu (v.n. tà, but in Imperfective it behaves as a high tone verb, causing subject pronoun to dissimilate to low, e.g. nàa tá-w 'I am eating it'; Imperative à tú, Subjunctive dà cí)

(1)(a) eat; this is the only verb used with reference to eating the staple food (ábên), but it may also be used with reference to anything solid or semisolid which is eaten, so that it encompasses the type of objects covered by kíidú as well; note the following two sentences on the same page of a folktale referring to the same event: akshi dà kíidú-naa atu 'they ate her up'; bíi-k pata ta-naa atu 'the wild animals had eaten her up'. See gèzhàn, 'yùwú.

(b) dine, eat a meal. ta-k gafa gayi dēka-naa ruwii-g aaman 'eating for one day is better than farming for a year'. See gàyí (3a).

(c) "consume" in a general sense, such as fire consuming anything, consuming money, etc. See làunú (1).

(2)(a) conquer, beat, win against. ndá ta-naa Pētēskēmu 'Potiskum was conquered'.

(b) wound. kasakañ àa ta-gēri bai 'a sword would not wound him'.

(3) idiomatic uses with specific nouns as objects:

(a) dēmā as object: 'take an oath, swear to'. See dēmā.

(b) gēshī as object: 'feel repugnance toward, dislike'. See gēshī (2b).

(c) gāmdayá as object: 'argue, dispute'. See gāmdayá.

(d) kēmá as object: 'continue doing'. See gárvà (1), kēmá (b).

(e) říibà 'profit' as object: 'make a profit'. ná ta-naa říiba-k sule gayi-gayi 'I made a one shilling profit on each one'.

tàusú (v.n. táusà; tàwás) = tàkwsú

tàwàn int.adj. or pron. (a) adj. which. audú tawan? 'which tribe?'; tamba ci-n ndaawa tawan? 'which people helped you?'; suu rama tawan? 'what kind of talk is that?'.
(b) pron. which one(s). náa zēba-k tawan? 'which one shall I marry?'.

tàwànké indef. adj. or pron. (a) adj. any, whatever, every. náa dē-muu-gē bari-k laabañ Mai tawankee bai 'I can't give the history of every Mai'; ama à nci-n, naa dabañ tawanke áa dlama-naa tapai 'if a woman wants, by any means whatever, she will fornicate'. See dà (2a).

(b) pron. anyone, whichever one, everyone. See hâl (1b).

tàwás v.n. of tàusù = tàkwsú

tàwàatú (v.n. tàwàatà)(< K. tàwà-jîn 'start early before dawn') make

an early start. daaci pēdek dayak dá tawaaci dà yi dá ndēmi afēk manga-gēru-w 'then in the morning the goat made an early start, went, and greeted the father of that friend of his'.

táwúnýà toy on a string, whirled, then thrown.

tìiké = tìyé *indef.pron.* everyone, whoever (form used obligatorily in all environments other than associative constructions and optionally in associative constructions—cf. yèéké). tiye naa tiye dá nai ii riyu 'everyone should come there'; tiye áa zaata-n dàa ma bai 'whoever is going to pound, let him not move (the mortar)'. See ádá (3a). cf. yèéké, tàmké; tâi.

tìyé = tìiké

tíyú *dem.adj.* (usually comes at the end of the noun phrase, though it may precede or follow quantifiers—see řáp (1) for difference in interpretation in these cases) that, those (in sight or in question). dlakwak tiyu 'that rake'; kuku maareṃ tiyu 'that big baobab'. See p. xxii for full paradigm; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

tkú *dem.adj.* (usually comes at the end of the noun phrase, though it may precede or follow quantifiers—see řáp (1) for difference in interpretation in these cases) this, these (in sight or in question). magəraf tku 'this visitor'; bee waařa àa d-aaci tku 'this thing that is on your head'; maamau shirin tku = maamau tku shirin 'these two children'. See p. xxii for full paradigm; see Schuh (1977) for syntax and history.

tlèdú (v.n. tléd) raise orphaned child, animal, etc. from infancy. cf. dayák tléd.

tlèkú (v.n. tlèkà) store, put away for safe-keeping. cf. mpáu.

tlèkwàkùràk (pl. tlèkwàkùràrín) outer shell of nut, etc. cf. wùrzú (2b).

tlèmpìyú (v.n. tlèmpiyà) tear, rip. See -n (B3a).

tlèmtú (pl. tlèmtàtín) deceased, the late tlèmtu Alhaji Ali Galadiima 'the late Alhaji Ali Galadima'. cf. mètú.

tlén (pl. tlénánín) mucous, catarrh. ná tlənə tlən = ná fiy tlən 'I blew my nose'. cf. tlènú.

tlènú (v.n. tlènà; tlén) blow nose. àa tlén 'his nose is dripping'. See tlén.

tlèpú (v.n. tlèpà) clap hands; bat at with hand. áa tləpa-k aikwak 'he is clapping his hands (as a sign of despair)'.

tléřét (cf. K. tórét (Lukas (1937), ideophone used with 'wet'); tirit (Benton grammar, p. 99, ideophone used with 'green')) (1) green (in color).

(2) not ripe, not fully cooked. cf. gàatlá.

In both (1) and (2) this is an ideophonic word which can be used either preceding or following a noun as an adjective, e.g. azəm tɬəřət = tɬəřət-k azəm 'green grass'; it is also used with adjectives ideophonically, e.g. sémà gàatlá tɬəřət 'very "green" beer'.

tɬəràbú (v.n. tɬəràbú) be sad; long for (someone who has died).

tɬəràadáu (pl. tɬəràadáfín) crotch (between legs).

tɬəramú (v.n. tɬəramú) for the season tɬəramú (q.v.) to arrive. dáa tɬəramə-ngara 'the tɬəramú season has arrived'.

tɬəramú season following harvest when grass has become dry, but before cold season. cf. bígèlà, màmà.

tɬərgìdú (v.n. tɬərgìdá) interlace tightly. nən tku tɬərgìd-naa miya mavgi-gəri 'this person has tightly tied his door shut by interlacing ropes'.

tɬəri (pl. tɬərarín) fighting; a fight; battle. See gáafà (2), náu(1). cf. gəmdáyà, dləgìd, zhà.

tɬərú (v.n. tɬərà) (a) wean.

(b) send person away, take person away from home. lakwtu zha naa bii nən, akshi dá ɬanji tɬəra-k nd-aakshi ii baaka 'when there was no war, they began to send their people to the outlying areas'.

tɬətləru (v.n. tɬətlərà) (1)(a) break piece off. dá pci-naa gəma-k gaskam gayi dá tɬətləri řap 'he pulled out one of the rooster's legs and broke off a bit (of meat)'.

(b) cut piece off or cut into pieces. See jìbú (1b).

(2) peel away, strip away flat thing from flat surface, e.g. bark from tree, one piece of paper from another, etc. ndá tɬətləri maa-yim da wurzu-k ama-w 'the baby should be removed from the wife's back'.

cf. tɬəru.

tɬà (pl. tɬaadín) cow. cf. ábùwán, kwàm.

tɬáadā (pl. tɬáadáfín)(v.n. of tɬaadú) itching.

tɬádāk tool with sharp, curved blade used to scrape pulp from inside calabash, to shape inside of mortar, etc. cf. tɬaadú (3b).

tɬádāk African myrrh (*Balsamodendron africanum*) [H. dashi].

tɬàdtú (v.n. tɬàdtà) = tɬàatú (b)

tɬaadú (v.n. tɬáadā) (1) scratch (as to relieve an itch). nàa tɬaadā-k tēka-gaa naa gurbak 'I'm scratching myself with my fingernails'.

- (2) *v.intr.* itch. cf. *tláadā*.
- (3)(a) scrape ground lightly. *ruwii-k tlaada* 'farming on hard, dry ground'.
 (b) scrape pulp from inside calabash, from inside of mortar. cf. *tládāk*.
- (4) with *áadlâ* 'chest, cough' as object: 'clear one's throat'. *dà tlaa'yi aadla dà ram maa ...* 'he cleared his throat and said ...'.
 cf. *kwàatlú*, *zàzgú*.
- tlàkátú v.intr.* (*v.n. tlákátù*) become ruined, spoiled, deteriorate; fall into a deteriorated moral or physical condition. *danka tlaka-tə-n, àa tuu-n taataru* 'if a falcon deteriorates, even a dove will kill him'. cf. *dayú* (1c), *dləbgənú* (b), *dləmàtú*.
- tlàmdú* (*v.n. tlámdā; tlámád*) gather cloth or gown and pull between legs from back. *dà tlam'yi faafa-gara dà gaayi ii wəra-k Kuyuktəra* 'she gathered up her cloth and climbed onto Kuyuktira's back'.
- tlànú* (*v.n. tlánù*) (a) become light; become enlightened. *ad-aawa tlanə-ngara* 'we have become enlightened'.
 (b) with *ḏaa* as subject: 'to dawn'. *ḏaa tlanə-ngara* 'the dawn has come'; *miya-k tlanu-k ḏaa* 'early morning, just before dawn [H. asuba]'. cf. *ḏaa* (3).
- tlàptú* (*v.n. tláptà; tlàpát*) cut grass, etc. with sickle. cf. *kàrmú*, *wədú*, *zìidú*.
- tlářám* (*pl. tlářámámín*) dry husks on the outside of guinea corn stalks. cf. *tlátlámáawà*.
- tlářdú* (*v.n. tlářdā; tlářád*) become entangled; engage in combat. *dam-ba áa nii tənū, zha tlařdə-ngara naa Ngwajin naa Məsau* 'before he arrived, battle had ensued between Ngwajin and Misau'; *nda-k dləgid tlařdə-naakci* 'the wrestlers engaged each other'.
- tlàriyú* (*v.n. tlàriyà*) winnow chaff from grain by pouring from one calabash to another, letting wind take chaff. cf. *bàktú*.
- tláatləráadā* (*pl. tláatləráadān*) a twining shrub with tough stems (*Hippocratea obtusifolia*) [H. gwadayi]. *tlaatləraada, karan-gu bai 'yuwa-w* 'as for the twiner, you don't chop it, you yank it up by the roots' (it's hard to get a stingy person to fulfill a promise).
- tlátlámáawà* (*pl. tlátlámáawawín*) dried leaves of guinea corn. *awayuu-gə zuwak à ḏa-k tlatlamaawa* 'the strength of the wind is over the dry leaves' (you always criticize someone weaker than you). cf. *tlářám*.
- tlàatlàrú v.intr.* (*v.n. tláatlàrù*) swell up. See *râu* (1). cf. *gù-bàmtú*, *wùsú*.
- tlàtláu v.tr.; intr.* counterpart is *tláu* (*v.n. tlátlíf*) lift, raise;

cause to rise, cause to fly up.

tlátlùwà (pl. tlátlùwàwín)(d.f. tlùwáu) poor, destitute person. tla-tluwa dà wna aa kunu gudu yaaye, áa vèra aarawai 'even if a poor person spends the night in an oil jug, he'll come out white (from dryness)'.
 tlàtú (v.n. tlátù) satisfy a need or desire; cure. nàa tlate-naa laami-gaa 'I satisfied my cravings'.

tlàatú (v.n. tláatà) (a) separate one long thing from another; strip bark from tree, etc. ná tlaatè apsaw/gabíiwa 'I stripped bark from the ápsaw tree/hemp plant'.

(b) = tlàdú. maayim dá tlaaci wanya 'the boy "mounted" the girl for intercourse'.

tláu v.intr.; tr. counterpart is tlàtláu (v.n. tláyí, but in Imperfective behaves as high tone verb, causing subject pronoun to dissimilate to low, e.g. nàa tláyí 'I am standing up'; Imperative à tlú, Subjunctive dà tíí)

(1)(a) stand up.

(b) set out. See ðemiyú (2) for illustration of both (1a) and (1b).

(c) recover from illness. See fèrá. cf. ngàatú, nàwáu (2).

(d)(of institutions, etc.) come to an end, reach a demise. ðaa ngum àa tlay bare rama 'cities have their demise and disappear let alone (the value of) what people say'. See ngumáu (1).

(e) with ánkàl as subject: 'be worried'. See gátlák.

(2) tlá ìi + nominal action phrase: 'set about, have in mind to, proceed to, undertake to'. ná tla ìi dii vək 'I determined to empty the hole'; aci dà tli ii n ii wenduwa 'he set out for home'.

tláawúra arguing, disputing, quarreling. See yàidú (1). cf. gàmðayà; tlàrì.

tláyí see tláu

tlú see tláu

tlùwái (pl. tlùwàwín) (1) meat.

(2) animal (generally wild). ja-k jaunak naa kaakənii-k tluwii-k pata 'things like elephants and the other wild animals'. cf. dábbà, lèman, bìi (2).

tlùwáu v.intr. (v.n. tlùwà) be poor, destitute. nən muwa-naa bəřəd nən, áa lawan-naa tluwa 'he who belittles wealth will see poverty'. cf. tlátlùwà.

tú see táu

tû her, i.e. third person singular feminine pronoun form used in Indi-

rect Object pronoun paradigm (see p. xxi), where it is always used in the construction íi-tú. cf. áttú, rá.

túubì (pl. túubàbín)(cf. K. tóvā 'repentance', H. túubá 'repent' < Ar.) repentance. nda-k Ngwajin dee-naa tuubi ii Sheehu 'the people of Ngwajin took their expressions of repentance to the Sheehu'.

tùksú (v.n. tùksà) mix dry substances evenly together. cf. tàmtíú, tunkùdú.

tùkúnó (pl. tükúnàín) pounded fish used for sauce (dlùgwàn).

túkúrwá (pl. tükúrwáwín) Bambara ground nuts (*Voandzeia subterranea*) [H. gujiya].

túulà (pl. túulàucín) a pagan tribe in the Gwoza hills.

túumâa (dà) (< K. tēmā 'thought, hope, expectation' < Ar.) ? = tùmân thinking, believing, expecting. àa tuumaa da avan-k aka 'he thought it was hot embers'; vèji kama ngum, àa tuumaa ama-geri 'when the monkey heard, he thought it was his wife'; jàa tuumaa da ká řdee-naakem 'we thought you had stopped'. See tùmàatú. cf. tùmàntú.

tùmân (cf. K. tēmā 'thought, hope, expectation' < Ar.) ? = túumâa (dà) hoping for, expecting. aa lakwtu-w ye Maina Baaba áa tuuman garva 'at that time Prince Baba was hoping (to become) chief'. See tùmàntú. cf. tùmàatú.

tùmàntú (v.n. tùmàntà; tùmân)(cf. K. tēmā-jîn 'think, expect, hope' < Ar.) ? = tùmàatú hope for, expect. kà tuumanta heř bai ká yka wiida bii-n 'don't expect goodness if you don't see a cheerful face'. See tùmân. cf. túumâa (dà).

tùmàatú (v.n. tùmàatà; túumâa)(< K. tēmā-jîn 'think, hope, expect' < Ar.) ? = tùmàntú think about, consider, expect. Mai Alambazam tuumaate nya 'Mai Alambazam considered going'. See túumâa (dà). cf. tùmân.

tùmpí (pl. tumpápín)(cf. K. tìmbí 'stomach, belly'; H. tumbíí 'stomach of a ruminant') belly. cf. bàazhí, kúnú, mádáu.

tunkùdú (v.n. tunkùdà) stir thick substance with stick. cf. càlmú, tàmtíú, tùksú.

tùutáu (v.n. tùutà) cock (a gun), set (a trap). ná tuuta kambuudi 'I set the trap'. See kàmbúudì.

tú-w see təkú

tùwàýú (v.n. tùwàýù) (usually used with Totality suffixes -náa, -dù) forget.

vènàakáu (pl. vènàakàkín) fish. See kùyòotú.

vèngú (v.n. vèngà) spill, pour out liquid. ndáa mai sama ndá vengi ii dá-w 'they take beer and pour it on it (hoe handle, as part of bárá-káu ceremony)'. cf. páu (1), tèpkú (1).

vènyí (pl. vènyànyín) grinding quern. See òtùutú.

vèrà (pl. vèràrín) pimple, boil, abcess. cf. dèřènkú, díáyà, gábèřzái, mátlà.

vèřďá (pl. vèřďáďín) first ripe heads of millet. cf. mářďú.

vèřgàgènú (v.n. vèřgàgèná; vèřgàgán) roll along ground.

vèrkàkú (d.f. vèrkú) shoot many, shoot numerous times. ndiwa waařa see mbuudai-gu vèrkakè Maina Garba 'the men who had drunk the potions to make themselves invisible shot (many arrows) at Prince Garba'.

vèrkú (v.n. vèrkà; vèrék) (1)(a) throw thing. ká vèrkai zayu-w ii mès-aakəm dá fuwai 'throw the rope to your husband so that he can come down'. See kəmáu (lai) for example of vèrék meaning 'thing thrown'.

(b) throw at. vèrkə vèji naa guguyak 'he threw at the monkey with a rock'. cf. zàgènú (1).

(2)(a) shoot arrow, etc.

(b) shoot at (as in (a)). dá jibi vèrkə-k Yařiima Jaaži naa dèga 'he began shooting at Yarima Jaji with arrows'. cf. váu.

(3) throw away. vèrkə-naa abən gadlègwadək 'she threw away the spoiled food'.

vèrú v.intr.; tr. counterpart is dáu (v.n. vèrà) (1)(a) go out, exit. See òivú (3), tlatlùwà.

(b) leave, go out and leave a place. See báí (3c), òivú (1a).

(2) escape, get out of a dangerous situation. cf. dáu (2).

(3) sprout, grow (of plants). See áyàawá (1), gèzhí.

vèřwàutú (v.n. vèřwàutà; vèřwàwát) swing back and forth, swing around.

vàad five.

vàagú (v.n. váagà) drag (esp. something heavy or bulky) along the ground. dá jibi vaaga-k gema-k jaunak 'he started dragging the elephant haunch'; bədlamu àa vaaga tēka-gəri da kyař 'the hyena was dragging his body along with difficulty'. cf. bàazú, zàrú.

vàikú (v.n. váikà; vàyák) (a) encircle, surround (in the sense of actually forming a circle). akshi dá vaiki-naa wənduwa-w 'they surrounded the house'.

(b) surround (in the sense of being passively around). saw dus vai-

kə-du 'it was surrounded by bush (the bush surrounded it)'.

(c) go in circles. See dàptú (1).

vàkənàk (pl. vəkənàín) large clay water pot. See àajálà. cf. dáawài, gùréf.

vàkín (pl. vəkàkín) tripod of stones or inverted pots used to put pot over fire. vakin shirin áa bəna bai 'a cooking place composed of two stones will not serve to cook'.

vàré "teen", used with gúmáa (gúmà + áa) plus numbers from 1-9 to express 11-19. gúmáa vərə gáyí 'eleven'; gúmáa vərə shírín 'twelve'; etc. cf. áyàwá (2a) for a newer, more current way to express teens.

vàarák (pl. vārārín) = gèvàarák crowned crane (*Balearica pavonina*) [H. gauraka].

vàtkú (pl. vətəkákín) (a) uselessness, being without worth or value. nən vatku 'worthless person'.

(b) íi vətókú: (i) in vain. See kètíú (1c).

(ii) for nothing, free, gratis. ndá bar aa ii vatku 'they gave it to me as a gift'; kaa ná ba ii vatku 'it was as if I got it free (it was so cheap)'.

vău (v.n. vàyí, becomes vîyúu when used in Imperfective with unexpressed object, vîi before object; Imperative áa vî or áa ví; Subjunctive dăa vî)

(1)(a) shoot, as with gun, etc. cf. vèrkú.

(b) sting (scorpion, etc.). "ngudi! shaalu-w ngum, shaal ii bai": wuřji va kwaayak "you so-and-so! he didn't even pay attention to me": the scorpion stung the clay bowl'.

(2) v.intr. contract syphilis. ná va-ngaa 'I've gotten syphilis'.

vávíd (pl. vāvávíd) tick. See gàadā (1d).

vàvîyú (v.n. vávîyà; vávái) singe (pinfeathers from chickens, hair by getting close to fire, etc.). See bîyú.

vàwú (pl. vāvàwín) red earth used for decorating calabashes, etc. vāvù-gé skù 'rainbow'.

vàyák (v.n. of vàikú) detour, a wide circle made by a road or path.

vàyí see vău

ví, vîi see vău

vídà (pl. vídàdín) Cape or Togo hare (*Lepus capensis zechi*) [H. zomo].

vîyú v.tr. (v.n. vîyà) wash. atu dà vîyai rəvu-w dá ruunyi dà w'yi 'she washed (and brought) the skin, laid it out to dry, and it dried';

ná viy-naa tēka-gaa 'I took a bath'. See kàsàktú, màtá, zùwáu. cf. cùntú, kùtú.

vìyúu see vǎu

vùutú (v.n. vùutà) turn away, turn one's back. cf. mǎstú (1a).

W

ʼw, -gú indicator of previous reference to a noun phrase, explicit or implied: ʼw is suffixed to words ending in -i, -u, or -a (ʼ indicates that the syllable ending in ʼw always bears high tone); -gú is used elsewhere and also optionally in place of ʼw; when suffixed to a noun ending in lexical -k, this -k is deleted and ʼw is used (cf. zádá-w 'the seed' under (a) below)

(a) Xʼw, X-gú: "the X previously referred to", "the X in question". wáká-w 'the tree' (< wákà), màrú-w 'the beard' (< màrí), zádá-w 'the seed' (< zádák), diùgwàn-gú 'the sauce' (< diùgwàn), sóonòo-gú 'the shoe' (< sóonòo), gàrúu-gú 'the goats' (< gàráu); ʼw or -gú are suffixed to the end of the noun phrase even if associative noun phrases, relative clauses, etc. intervene (cf. ténú (1b)): nda Shira-w 'the people of Shira', buwa-gaa-gu 'that trip of mine', agwai waaṛa aara-wii-gu 'the eggs which were white'.

(b) in the Imperfective aspect with transitive verbs, when suffixed to the verb, ʼw, -gú may be used instead of personal pronoun object and are required even when no overt object form at all would follow the verb in other aspects. dababkin áa suwaari, akshi áa lawan-gu 'the girls were dancing and they (the boys) were watching them' (-gú refers to dababkin); naa rama-w bai 'I won't say it' (cf. Perfective ná ramé bai 'I didn't say it' where no object appears).

(c) ʼw, -gú may optionally be used in place of a personal pronoun in associative noun phrase constructions. dēga-k ḏasu-k aaman, sǎlke áa kaṛgun-gu bai 'as for an arrow which will end one's years, chain mail is not a remedy for it' (-gú refers to dēgà 'arrow'); ká yka ḏagai ada-w gatatlak nən, káa lawan ḏagai andad-gu aa aikwa-gəri 'if you see someone with his (ʼw) head smashed, you will see someone else with his (-gú) guts in his (-gəri) hands' (note that -gú and -gəri 'his' both have the same referent, viz. ḏagài 'someone else').

See Schuh (1977) for detailed remarks on syntax and history.

-w (see p. xv, §2.1; verbs containing this marker—including the citation form of all verbs in this dictionary—are written with final -u, -au, and for Ventive -eu) Perfective marker; this marker appears on all verbs in the Perfective before pause, but it is deleted when anything follows the verb; when used with verbs listed with final -u, the -u changes to -ə; final -au becomes -a, final -eu becomes -e. ná jibu 'I caught (it)' (cf. ná jibə kwaaṛa 'I caught a donkey'); ná mbasu 'I sat down' (cf. ná mbase bai 'I didn't sit down'); ná gafau 'I held

it' (cf. ná gafa zawa 'I held a stick'); ná katau 'I returned' (cf. /ná kata ii wunduwa/ → [ná kat-ee wunduwa] 'I returned home'); ná maseu 'I bought (and brought) it' (cf. ná masee kaře 'I bought and brought goods'); ná deu 'I have come' (cf. ná dee gusəsku 'I came today').

wə- if not found here, see wu-

wədə (v.n. of wədú) circumcision.

wədú (v.n. wədə) (a) cut off, slice off. See bíyú. cf. dàřtíú, diàř-dú, kàrmú, tlàptú, zìidú.

(b) circumcise. wanzam wudə-naa maayim 'the barber circumcized the boy'. cf. wədə.

(c) (with a time expression as object) set a time, allot a certain amount of time. yuwan waařa ndá wəd ii-kshí dá niyi-ngara 'the time that had been allotted to them came to an end'; akshí dàa ji gaařu dá wji yuwan nii ii d-aakshí 'they built a wall and set a day when they would go to their town'.

wədú v.intr. (v.n. wù'yí; Imperative à w'yí) become dry; dry up. See rùunú, víyú.

wèn (pl. wəwín; mâamáu (q.v.); kùtlái (q.v.)) (a) = màtkám son. cf. wényâ.

(b) wén bàabá term used to designate person (or other animal in the case of animals) not a blood relation but with whom one feels some special relationship to exist, e.g. the Bade and Ngizim people refer to each other as wén bàabá; the giraffe is wén bàabá to the camel (see ngálkò, last example).

wènà (pl. wənàní) (v.n. of wənú) day (in the sense of 24 hour period); spending the night. cf. nàwà, yùwàn.

wənànú (v.n. wənú) spend several days. wənanu tənə, akshí dá ni wam 'when they had spent several days, they came again'.

wéndùwà (pl. wéndùwàwín) = méndùwà (a) compound [H. gida].

(b) members of a household.

cf. kágò, kúddəmdəm, səsəu.

wənú (v.n. wènà) spend the night. See bàazhí, kàlèekàlé, kúlúm, tlá-tlùwà. cf. yùwàn; nàwau.

wényâ (pl. wényányín; mâamáu gəamád—cf. mâamáu (1b)) (1)(a) girl.

(b) young woman. See ngúdì (2a). cf. dábákù.

For (1a, b), cf. máayim (a) and (b).

(2) (pl. kùtlái) daughter. wényà gəamà 'girl-child'. cf. wèn (a), màtkám (1).

(3) (followed by noun in associative construction) small one. wənya-k jaka gangam 'little tiny bag' [H. 'yar karamar jaka]. cf. mākām (2).

wərdú v.intr. (v.n. wərdà) cry out. wərdə-ngəri ii aḍan 'he broke out in tears'. cf. ḍaṇú (2).

wərnàk (pl. wərnànin) burnt remains of mush in pot.

wərtú (v.n. wərtà) (< K. wūr-jîn) unload, take down. cf. fùwú, zèdápú.

wètú (v.n. wètà) (1) catch thing thrown.

(2) receive guest, etc. wəta-k miya-k waane 'to receive so-and-so (as a guest)'.

wá mark of incredulous question. káa ḍemuu-naa nii-naa gema-k jaunak gayi wa? 'can you actually carry an elephant haunch?'.

wà we, us, our(s), i.e. first person plural inclusive pronoun used as:

(1) Independent pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxi).

(2) Indirect Object Pronoun (see paradigm, p. xxii), where it is always in the construction íi-wà.

(3) Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it is preceded by -áa when added to nouns ending in -a, -i, -u.

(4) Independent Associative Pronoun (paradigm p. xxii), where it appears in the construction kúwà.

(5) Subject Pronoun of verbal or locative sentence (paradigm p. xxi); for most speakers this pronoun is always low tone, but some younger speakers give opposite tone to the following syllable.

wàa see wà (5)

wàací olden times, of former days. See yàayé (1). cf. câa.

wàadá (pl. wàadàucín) (< K. wàdà or H. wàadāa) dwarf. See kàtáu (2).

wàagèṇai adj. (pl. wàagèṇànin) large, esp. of household. ndàa mpii kambi gaada wunduwa waagènai 'one sets aside a kámbí (q.v.) in the case of a large household'. cf. màarém.

wákà (pl. wákàkín) (1) plant or tree which is growing. cf. ḍəm.

(2)(as locative word) on top of, high; up high. gwani-k duuka nən waaṛa àa waka-w 'the expert horseman is the one who is on it (the horse)'. See vègú (1). cf. ḍéskù (2), ḍá (1).

wákáfà (pl. wákáfàfín) illness. cf. fèrà.

wàakàatú (v.n. wàakàatà) (< K. wàgà-jîn) happen. bee waaṛa waakaat ii-kshi aa pata 'the thing that happened to them in the bush'.

wàm *adv.* (1) when associated principally with verb or verb phrase:

(a) again, some more, in addition. wàa ndaagəma aa rawan wam? 'where will we meet again?'; jagadlau dá dlam aadla wam 'the lion coughed again'. See nákat, səkúnú, gəayú (3).

(b) (in negative sentence) anymore. kwà dāana wam bai 'don't cry anymore'; ngalko kà dlama guru wam bai 'it's best that you not show jealousy anymore'.

(2) wàm often seems to be more closely associated with a particular noun phrase than with the verb or verb phrase; it may be translated as 'more', 'another', 'in addition', 'also'. dà pi aw-gu wam ii də-ba-w dá banji bakat-gu 'she poured more grain on the circular mat and started her winnowing'; dà mpi ii dā-ge nən wam 'he put his hand on another person'; ná bee-naa zəba wam 'I have procured another marriage'. See kàa (2).

wánā (*pl.* wánánín) work, working, job.

wánángè (more often used in dàa wánángè—cf. dàa (4)) maybe, it may be that, perhaps. wanange dagai da kunu-k nda-k Patəskum àa bari-naa laabaŋ-gu 'maybe somebody from the people of Potiskum will give its story'.

wànáu (*v.n.* wányí) (1) send (person, thing). cf. dàbáu (2).

(2) send word. dà wanyi ii rii-k wunya waaŋa aci à ncu 'he sent word to the girl that he liked'.

wànáu (*v.n.* ?) rule (tyrannically). gaada-k awayuu-gara aa dəkəma-k Suudan, wana rii gaawa 'because of its (Birni Ngazargamo's) power in the western Sudan, it ruled over a large area'.

wàndó (*pl.* wàndàdín) (< H. wàndóo) pants.

wàanú (*v.n.* wáanà) milk (cow, etc.).

wàrá there is some, there are some; it is there, they are there. When the object of an affirmative existential sentence is topicalized by placing it at the beginning of the sentence or is not expressed at all, wàrá replaces nàa (2a). Q: naa beeza? - A: aawo, wara 'Q: is there any salt? - A: yes, there is'; beeza wara 'salt there is'; gəsəsku yaaye aa Ngwajin wədadín ŋku wara 'even today at Ngwajin those wards are (still) there'; dāa tawan wara? 'what towns are hereabouts?'. (The opposite of wàrá is nàa báí.)

waaŋà introduces relative clauses; used regardless of type of antecedent (singular or plural, masculine or feminine, human or non-human, etc.) and regardless of function of antecedent in main clause or its co-referent in relative clause (subject, object, locative, etc.); waaŋa can also optionally be omitted, though it usually is not. nən waaŋa wane yu 'the person who sent me'; dəvu waaŋa akshi áa dēga-w 'the road that they will follow'; rii waaŋa goomak regu 'the place that the ram migrated to'; gaazadín waaŋa aci naa akshi 'chickens that he has'.

wàařaw (pl. ndá-w) previous reference form of nèn, pl. ndliwà: 'the person previously mentioned or in question. dà maaki nèn ðagai akshi dá zdapə-naakshi ii wunduwa-k waařaw 'they sought out a certain person and lodged at the compound of that person'.

wàskú (v.n. wáskà; wásák) shake spices and cut pieces of meat together; shake fermented guinea corn (bátlâ) to stir it after drawing off water. See dàřtlú. cf. jicbú.

wáatəshì (< K. wódìsshà) sneeze, sneezing.

wátè, wátai, wátew (at beginning of sentence or clause) well, well now; (at end of sentence or clause) then, too (generally seems to indicate pause to consider situation, or in some cases, mild consternation, though in other cases it seems to merely be used as ngúm (q.v.), etc. to mean 'as for'). wate kwá dlam baya 'well do something'; wate ná zəba-k tawan? 'well which one will I marry'; watew gusku ci-n ta? 'well now how about you?'; à ř'yi wate ná ba-naa bii-k ta 'well I'll be darned if I haven't gotten food!'; jà ndagemə-naaja da gafa-w wate 'we'll have a run-in some time after today'; tam wate? 'well what is it then?'.
 wáawərí scrambling on the ground for something. baaci zaabanu àa shi gapta àa waawər bai 'someone with a guinea fowl under his arm can't scramble on the ground'.

wàwú = wàwù líidòk = wàwú gəjí *Acacia senegal* [H. ðakwarə].

wàyák next year. cf. máadəvən, dàvànàngú.

wàyí (pl. wàyáyín) tethering post.

wàyú v.intr. (v.n. wáyù) become sated with food or drink (always used with intransitive copy pronoun). ná wayə-ngaa naa səma 'I got drunk on beer'. See wíidā (3). cf. gáwáyák.

wàayú (v.n. wáayà) disperse, scatter, separate, split up. àa waaya bai 'they never separate from each other'; wənduwa àa waaya aa ða-k maayim bai 'a household isn't going to disperse on the account of a child'. cf. bərú (2), páu.

wáazâ (pl. wázázín) mare. cf. dùukà.

wàzfiřì (< H. or K. < Ar.) councilor to Mai.

wíidā (pl. wíidāřín) (1) brightness, bright light, flash of light.
 (2) lightening.

(3) cheerful expression. wíidā-k jampel wayu-k andad 'a cheerful face (shows) a full stomach'. See tūmàntú, jampél.

wíiləwíil duck [H. wushi]. See mỳá (2).

wíilú (v.n. wíilí)(? < Ful. wullita 'appeal') beg for, beseech. wíilí

ndá bar ii-ci-n, naa zhirau, balle ndá daptə-dii-ci 'as for begging, even if one gives to you there's embarrassment, let alone if you're refused'.

wíisâ (pl. wíisásɪn) Gambian oribi (*Ourabia nigricaudata*).

wíitâ (pl. wíitátɪn) between, among. kurə-naa mbasu ii wiita-k ndiwa 'he refused to settle among (other) people'; zəba tɛfə-ngara ii wiita-gəri naa nda Ngwajin 'marriage entered between him and the people of Ngwajin'. See nda (4). cf. gádâavá.

wíyàk (pl. wíyàyɪn) female genitalia, vulva, vagina.

wíyàkákáráu (pl. wíyàkákáràɪn) a type of insect [H. askan ruwa].

wu- if not found here, see wə-

wújəř (pl. wújəřàɪn) (< K. wújìr 'commission') = wúdəř affair, activity. cf. lāmāř.

wúm = ngúm

wùrá (pl. wùràɪn) (1) neck. See zəbàayú. cf. ngúrdládiyá.

(2) voice.

wùràk (pl. wùràɪn) leopard (*Panthera pardus*).

wúrí (pl. wúráɪn) (? < H. wúrí) (usually used in wúrí dāgdá) cowry shell.

wúríyâ (1) borrow pit.

(2) (apparently) any open pit where water can collect. See ánkû. cf. gádəřà, gúmbàk.

wúřjí (pl. wúřjájɪn) red scorpion. See vǎu (1b). cf. gàatíəgdádář.

wùrú (v.n. wùrà) help out, intercede to help with task, etc., e.g. go to a person who is arriving to help with loads, help someone down from high place, intercede with appropriate continuation of a narrative, etc. aci wuree baaba-gəri 'he went out to help his father (with his load)'; kà wra bai 'don't interrupt!' (said to a child who kept adding the final words to sentences of a folktale before the story teller could get them out).

wùřwùrú (v.n. wùřwùřà) sprinkle on spices, etc.

wùř'yí (pl. wùrdáɪn) fart, farting. See báí (3c).

wùrzú (pl. wùrzázɪn) (1) back of person or animal (the physical part of the body as opposed to a direction of facing, which is àkáu). wurzu-gə nən 'person's back'; dà gaayi ii wurzu bədlamu 'he climbed onto the hyena's back'. cf. àkáu (1), gùdlədlíř, tìətlərú (2).

(2)(a) bark of tree. cf. gùdlàř.

(b) "husk" on peanut kernels, beans, etc. cf. tlàkwàkùràk.

wùsú (v.n. wùshí; Subjunctive dà-wshí) swell up due to infection, sprain, etc. cf. gùbàmtú, tlàatlàrú.

wùsú (v.n. wùsà) place new pieces of palm leaf in partially woven mat, rope, etc. in order to continue weaving. ná ws arduwa 'I inserted (more) palm leaves'.

wúuzèràk end of the hot, dry season.

Y

yá (1) v.intr. (a) going, will go, i.e. form of 'go' used in Imperfective aspect. kàa yá íi ráwân? [kàa yée ráwân] 'where are you going?' NB: This form is used only as the verb in full sentences; in other verbal noun functions, nyà is used.

(b) yá íi [yée] with Imperfective subject pronoun and following action phrase gives future meaning. nàa ya ii [yee] takda wuřji tku 'I'm going to step on this scorpion'. cf. jú (1b); cf. also tàkà (4).

(2) v.tr. (used with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) taking, will take (from one place to another), transporting, will transport, i.e. form of 'take' used in Imperfective aspect.

NB: The same meanings as conveyed by the verb yá as in (1a) and (2) can also be conveyed simply with the Imperfective subject pronouns plus the intransitive copy pronouns (for 1a) or the transitizing suffixes (for 2).

See p. xxiii for full paradigm.

yáaβ̂ (pl. yáaβ̂áβ̂|n)(< H. yáaβ̂i) = gázákau poison for arrows. cf. sǝřkà.

yáβ̂zà (pl. yáβ̂záz|n) hairy goat. cf. áakù.

yàď (pl. yàďáď|n) (a) hair. cf. ànkwàř, gùzái.

(b) yàď-gó ámbái porcupine quills.

yáagànà (pl. yáagànàuc|n)(< K. yâgànà) sibling or child of sibling.

yáagì (tkú), yáagìnà at this same time. yaagi tku ji-ngəri 'it was about this time that he left'; waya yaagina dà ziiĵ ii-wa tla 'at this time next year may he slaughter a cow for us'. cf. àagí.

yàidû (v.n. yáidâ; yàyáď) (1) bundle up, roll up. buuci-k zhirau ndàa yaidâ-w naa tlawura 'the mat of shame is rolled up with argumentativeness' (one argues to hide one's shame). See dāawú (2b). cf.

kàisú, tàkwsú.

(2)(a) wrap on turban. See *dáyáidā*.

(b) turban or install (a Mai), "crown", "inaugurate". *nda-k yaidā-k garva dà yai'yi-naa Tapsiyu ii Mai* 'those in charge of installing the chief turbaned Tapsiyu as Mai'.

yàikú (v.n. *yáikà*; *yà'yák*) (1) rub pottery to a smooth surface. *muy-aaci aa noma-n, kaa yayak* 'as your friend is making the pot, you are smoothing the surface'. cf. *məməsú, zùwáu*.

(2) jiggle (child, to calm it).

yàakèndí small, stringed musical instrument [H. *garaya*].

yâl (pl. *yáalàlín*) (< K. *yâl*) family, household. cf. *wəndùwà*.

yáamâdú (pl. *yáamâdâfín*) the tree *Vitex doniana* or its black, plum-like fruit [H. *dinya*]. See *nàwáu* (1a).

yáamài = yâawâi alas!

yáamâncí (pl. *yáamâncâcín*) small farm owned by member of household privately and independently of the main farm owned by the head of a household. cf. *kàm*.

yàanáu (pl. *yàanânín*) (1)(a) tooth. See *gátéràbák, təràbú*.

(b) *yàanúu gámás* central incisors. cf. *zhìyám*.

(2) sharpness (of cutting edge). *audu tku naa yaanau* 'this knife is sharp'; *nà nci audu mii-k yaanau* 'I want a sharp knife'.

yàrfimà (probably < K.; if not, < H.) one of the *sarauta*: the son or younger brother of Mai in line for his position.

Yárwà the town of Maiduguri.

yáu (v.n. *yà*; Imperative *áa yí*, Subjunctive *dáa yì*) carpenter, make by carpentry.

yáu (v.n. *yà*; Imperative *áa yí*, Subjunctive *dáa yì*) feel or enjoy something external such as heat or coolness. *ná ya aka* 'I feel (the warmth of) the fire'; *nənuwa-k gwadanu, áa ya-w nən kutlīi-gu* 'the shade of a peanut plant, it's its children (i.e. the peanuts) which enjoy it'. See *kúdèřà*. cf. *kəmáu* (1d).

yáu v.intr. (v.n. *yù*; Imperative *áa yí*, Subjunctive *dáa yì*) leak, drip. *raariya áa yu* 'the seive is draining'; *am-gu áa yi-ngara* 'the water will leak through'.

yâawâi = yáamài alas! yaawai! *gusku manga-gaa áa mətə-ngerī* 'alas! now my friend is going to die!'.

yàayé (< K. *yà'yé* 'but, nevertheless') (1)(following a noun phrase)

even. aa zaaman waaci Maagiŕa-k Bəŕni yaaye naa awayau 'in olden times, even the Leader of the Women of Birni (Ngazargamo) was powerful'; viida-w yaaye, wà jiba ba 'even the hare, let's catch him'. See wàrá. cf. kée, kóo (4).

(2) = yé (2) (at end of concessive conditional clause) even if, even though, although, though. Concessive conditional clauses are normally marked only by the presence of yàayé, though gàfà may occasionally introduce such clauses (see gàfà (1) and first example below); the verb tense in the clause may be Perfective or Second Subjunctive if the event in the clause has been completed prior to the event in the main clause, or Imperfective if the event in the clause has not been completed prior to the event in the main clause. (Perfective) gaafa jagadlau ji-d ii-ci tləri yaaye, àa kaluu bai 'even if a lion attacked him, he wouldn't be afraid'; (Second Subjunctive) kà da-naaci pəðəm ii kun pata yaaye, káa bii-k aayu bai 'even if you go far into the bush, you won't find any gazelles'; (Imperfective) maya àa t-aakshi yaaye, akshi àa kiida-gaa bai 'even if hunger were killing them, they wouldn't eat me'; (non-verbal) aci maayim yaaye, ndà bara ii-ci 'even though he is a boy, let it be given to him'. See kàak-tlú, tlátlùwà, bàtáu (2), dùunìyàtú, jàawàsú, ngùmáu (1), dləmàtú.

(3)(after question word) ... ever, ... ever it may be, no matter koo gadlai koo tam yaaye 'whether a granary or whatever it may be'; akshi áa dlama nana nana yaaye, zəgaya see'səku 'whatever it is they are doing, only God knows'; bii-gaa tawanke yaaye, áa dləmatə bai 'no matter what it is of mine, it won't be wasted'; káa nii bai gaa-da-k pəðəm yaaye 'you might not come back because of the distance'. See gədlú.

(4) maybe, perhaps, about. maagi shirin yaaye wà dlami 'maybe we'll spend a couple of weeks'; koo naa laabaŕ dagai waaŕa àa d-aakun waaŕa řap yaaye? 'maybe there's some news from your hometown which isn't too extensive?'. See gədlú.

(5)(used with topicalized noun or pronoun) "as for". ii yaaye ná ta alwaashi-g ada-gaa bai 'as for me I'm not praising myself'. cf. ngúm (2) and other words cited there.

yáyí neighing of a horse.

yé (< K. yé 'also') (1)(following a noun phrase) also, too. kwaafa vədə-n, matkam-gu ye áa vəji 'if a donkey is stubborn, his son too will be stubborn'; nda-gəri ye kəma naa kaarak 'his people too were happy'. See tàbtlú.

(2) = yàayé (2) even though, even if, although. See bəmbəkshí.

(3) bíi yé 'or else'. gaafa ndàa tafiya-gaa aa d-aaci, káa lawan-gu, bii ye ná dlam tapai aa d-aaci 'someday I will be fornicated with before your eyes with you looking on, or else I will fornicate before your eyes'. See báí (4).

(4)(used with topicalized noun or pronoun) "as for", indeed. kun ye kun gamsak bai 'as for you, you aren't men'. See kànəmú. cf. ngúm (2) and other words cited there.

yée see yé (1b)

-yee who, whom, whose? (form of the interrogative pronoun used when in associative construction with preceding word; always preceded by linker in one of the following combinations: gá-yée, gé-yée, g-ée). mən-duwa-ga-yee? 'whose house?'; káa jaaya-gə-yee? 'who will you ask?'. cf. tái, mòo.

-yèeké everyone, whoever (form used in associative construction with preceding word). ká yka ja-ga-yeeke aa rii tiyu? 'did you see everyone there?'. cf. tìiké, -mòoké; tái.

yén (1) v.intr. (used in à yén) come!, i.e. Imperative singular form of 'come'. cf. nná (1b) for plural Imperative.

(2) v.tr. (used with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) bring!, i.e. Imperative singular form of 'bring'. à yen-d ii-wa caacaawa 'bring us some firewood'. cf. nná (2b) for plural Imperative.

(3)(rare) Subjunctive form of 'come', 'bring' corresponding to (1) and (2) above (normally Subjunctive uses nài or nì).

See paradigm, p. xxiii for full paradigm of 'go/come'; see dëu (3) for further remarks on usage.

yí (1) v.intr. go, went, i.e. form of 'go' used in Subjunctive aspect (but cf. nì in meaning 'go'). kəm naa kutlìi-wa bal kwá nai wà yí 'you and our children too you come and we'll go'. See (2) for another example.

(2) v.tr. (used with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) take, took (thing from one place to another), transport, transported, i.e. form of 'take' used in Subjunctive aspect (but cf. nì in meaning 'take'). à ř'yí wà yí nà yí-naa kəm ii anku-k Bagaja-w 'wait, let's go, and I'll take you to Lake Bagaja'.

See paradigm, p. xxiii for full paradigm of 'go/come'.

yí, yì see yáu, all three entries

yká see ìikáu

yù v.n. of yáu 'leak, drip'

yùwán sleeping. áa tka yuwan-gara 'she's sleeping away'. See sùwán. cf. yùwán.

yùwàn (pl. yùwàwín) (a) period of 24 hours. Mai Badayo dlam yuwan gatkaša áa ða-k madamba da tli 'Mai Badayo spent seven days on the madamba-mat (as part of installation ceremony of Mai) then got up'. See wèdú (b). cf. wènú, yùwán.

(b) spending the night. nda yuwan? 'how did you spend the night?'. cf. wènú, yùwán.

(c) yuwan áa tefa áa vëra 'gradually' [H. a kwana a tashi].

yvá, yvá see ìivú

'Y

'yálé *adj.* easy to do; easy to obtain. wana 'yale = 'yale-k wana 'easy work'.

'yámú *v.intr.* (*v.n.* 'yámù) submerge, go under water.

'yàràrà (*pl.* 'yàràràřín) a plant about the size of gáǂíwà, eaten like àrás (? wild variety of *Hibiscus cannabinus* [H. yakuwar daji]). cf. gáǂíwà.

'yárárái (*pl.* 'yárárářín) trilling by women.

'yàwú (*v.n.* 'yáwù; ðiyí) (a) bear, give birth (human, animal, plant). amaatu-gəri dá 'yaw-naakshi 'his wives gave birth'; dá 'yawai gəm-suu 'she gave birth to the son'; zəgəm-du tənə sai gambaram dà 'ya-wi 'when he had sown, the okra produced fruits'. See gàatlá (2).

(b) sire, father. Mai Zəganəsku 'yawə gaawa 'Mai Ziganisku fathered many children'.

'yíř *id.* used with bàu 'red'. dá tasai aayaw buu 'yiř 'he found the figs to be bright red'. cf. cīt.

'yúwâ (*pl.* 'yúwáw|n) (l) broom.

(2) used in shì-k 'yúwâ: 'armpit'. cf. gáptâ (lb).

'yùwú (*v.n.* 'yùwà) pull back on, yank on, pull on or extract something which offers resistance. kiida-k tluwii ðiishaw: sai takðə-n, dá 'yuwi, dà ci 'eating meat by a vulture: he steps on it, yanks, and eats'; gayim áa 'yuwa-k teka-gəri da kau 'the cat kept drawing away (... pulling his body back)'. See ǂéřém, tláatléřaadâ. cf. fətú, pèidú, zàráu, zəmtú.

Z

zəbàbìyú (*v.n.* zəbàbìyà; zəbàbái) wash millet with bran removed before pounding into fine flour. cf. vìyú, zàatú.

zəbài (*pl.* zəbàbín) egg(s) on which hen has sat but which did not hatch.

zəbáu (*v.n.* zəbà) (a) X zəbá Y: 'X married Y, 'X got married to Y'. náa zəba-naa kəm 'I will marry you'; manga, ii naa gədən-gaa náa bar-d ii-ci ká zəbi-du 'my friend, I have a younger sister I'll give you for you to marry'. See bàyà (la).

(b) ðlámá-k zəbà (with or without object after zəbà): 'get married'. dá ðlam-naa zəba 'he got married'; wà ðlama zəb-aawa 'let's get mar-

ried. See kàmàatú.

(c) tàusé zèbá(-k X nàa Y): 'perform marriage, marry (X and Y)'.
daaci akshi dá dlam-naa rama-k zèba ndà taushi-naa zèba 'then they
discussed the marriage and the marriage ceremony was performed'.

(d) mpíi-k zèbà marriage ceremony.

See kàká (2), wàm (2).

zèbàayú v.intr. (v.n. zèbàayù) start boiling, steam. zèbaayu-k daa-
wàì bakè-naa wèra-w 'the boiling of the pot burned its neck'. See
ìivú (1c). cf. ràpú.

zèbgà (pl. zèbgàgín) (the following two birds were identified by this
name; the cognate word in Bade refers only to spur-winged goose (*Plec-
tropterus gambiensis*))

(1) pink-backed pelican (*Pelecanus rufescens*) [H. kwasa-kwasa].

(2) spur-winged goose (*Plectropterus gambiensis*) [H. dinya].

zèbú (v.n. zèbá) contact, meet up with. nà yì jà zèbi-naa da naa aci
'let me go and meet face to face with him'; sèku dà òaawa wà zèbi da
'may God grant that we meet face to face'.

zèdái (pl. zèdàdín) (1) young boy living in household and working as
servant but not part of family. "jàa gaaya," maa zèdii-k baaci-k
duuka "'we're going riding," said the servant of the horse owner'.
cf. bàayí.

(2) ? unmarried young man who has never been married. cf. màapéndì.

zèdàpú v.intr. (v.n. zèdàpù) (1)(a) lodge, stay as a guest.

(b)(with transitizing suffixes -náa, -dù) put up as a guest.

(2) land, alight (bird, jumper). àa sa-w ndandol nən, dá zdafi-ngè-
rì 'when he would jump over (it) ndandol, then he would land'. cf.
fùwú.

zèdéedí cattle track. káa lawan-naa zèdeedí-gè dèvu-k tlaadín-gèrì
waaŋa áa òaga-w 'you will see the track of the road that his cattle
followed'.

zèdlinà (pl. zèdlinànín)(d.f. zèdái) serving in the capacity of a zè-
dái (1). ama dee-naa matkam òagai kə yaagana-gara ii zèdiina 'the
wife brought a boy from her relatives as a zèdái'.

zèdù six.

zédká id. rumbling, clatter. ama-w áa vègi zédka! 'there's a loud
rumbling of thunder there'.

zèdú (v.n. zèdà, zèdǎ) = bèdlú dig.

zègèmú (v.n. zégèmə; zègèm) plant, sow (any crop). See ádlìyádìyá.
cf. pàaŋu.

zègér (pl. zègàràrín) (a) foot, leg. cf. gèrà, mátékùs.

(b)(= gátéř zègér) foot track. See fàunú. cf. gátéř (1).

zègèr time (as in 'one time'). See gènànú.

zègèrèp id. falling down slope. áa vègayi zègèrèp gadèřa 'he'll fall zègèrèp into the watercourse'.

zègá (pl. zègàwàcín, zègàucín, zègàgín) sorceress who presides over a traditional ritual such as burials. See ìivú (1d).

zègář north. patata áa zègař mènduwa 'the field is north of the house'.

zègáu (v.n. zègàyà, becomes zègìi before objects in Imperfective; Imperative áa zègí, Subjunctive d́́a zègì, Second Subjunctive d́́a zègá)

(1) know. ná zèga aci 'I know him'; ḱ́a mbasè naa nèn bii-n, ḱ́a zè-gii hal-gèrì bai 'if you don't live with someone, you won't know his character'; nàa zègàyá 'had I only known'. See ìivú (1d), máadàngó.

(2)(followed by action noun) know how to, be able to. zèga-naa zha řankata 'he knew how to wage war well'; ci řo, ḱ́a zga kaawa bai 'well you, you don't know how to play'; garva naa zha àa Kuukaawa, zègaya-k rama àa Bauci 'ruling and war are found in Kukawa; knowing how to use language is in Bauchi'. cf. dèmáu.

(3)(followed by sentence complement, which may function as a direct object of zègáu (first example) or as a loosely bound complement with zègáu taking the form it would before Ø object (second example)) know that. nd́́a zga-naa vèji naa wura, nd́́a tause-w ii akuu-gu 'one knows that a monkey has a neck, (but) one ties him by the back'; ḱ́a zèga-du bédlamu áa yv-aawa bai 'you know that hyenas won't leave us alone'.

zègéégé (< K. zègege 'present') some delicacy taken as a present. wà maaka zègeege wà yí wà ndèmai dègè 'let's get a present, go, and give our greetings to the chief'.

zèláamâ (pl. zèláamámín)(cf. K. lámbí—cf. Ngizim lámbé) (1) craving for, greed for, esp. food. awuk vènaakau kařgun maayim baaci zèlaa-ma 'a fish bone is the remedy for a greedy child'. cf. láamí, ndè-lám.

(2) roaming about from house to house (presumably searching for favors of food, etc.). See d́́amáakènèm.

zèmànú (pl. zèmànanín) ostrich (*Struthio camelus*). See dèbábâ.

zèmáu (v.n. zèamá) (1) forge.

(2) flatter.

zèmtú (v.n. zèmtà) (1) strip off, strip away. dá jibi zèmta-k wundu-wa-k Bèndèřkuuku 'he began stripping away (the fence of) B.'s compound'.

(2) draw (water from well). cf. fètú, 'yùwú; zàamtú.

zèndǎú (v.n. zèndǎú) wither.

zèngàgád dozing off, nodding from drowsiness.

zèngàgǎú (v.n. zèngàgǎú; zèngàgád) doze off.

zénzèn (pl. zénzàanín) riddle; tale. A story teller or riddler says zénzèn "here's a story/riddle", and the listeners answer ásásá "let's hear it"; folktales are also sometimes introduced by the phrase zénzèn dà gaayi ii dā-k X "here's a tale about X". "zénzèn" ngum, ndá dlam bai, balle nda dlam "asasa" 'nobody's offered a tale yet, let alone anybody saying he wanted to hear it' (don't put the cart before the horse).

zèřèn id. zoom! (Riddle) zèřèn nuutə da sau 'zip! it passed by here' (Answer: dègà 'arrow').

zèřét (pl. zèřàřín) Abyssinian ground hornbill (*Bucorvus abyssinicus*) [H. burtu].

zèřbú (v.n. zèřbà) used in rama-k zèřba-k ada 'things said in order to cause dissension or provoke a fight'.

zèřnàkú (v.n. zèřnàkà) set out (on journey, etc.). dá zèřnaki, dee ii rii-ge təmaku 'he made ready and he went to the sheep'.

záabànú (pl. záabànànín) guinea fowl (*Numida meleagris*) [H. zabo]. See dèbábà.

zábáu (pl. zábábín) navel. See dèbsú.

zàbìyú (v.n. zàbìyà; ázábái) clear grass, weeds, etc. from farm in preparation to planting. cf. ádíyà, rùwái.

zàabú (v.n. záabà) wade through heavy grass (but not water).

zádák (pl. zádádín) (1)(a) seed(s).

(b) good quality millet. See gèzhí.

(2) kind. zadak amatawanke 'any kind of woman'; ká dlam aa zadak kə kaayak bai 'don't treat me in the way the squirrel did'.

zàdáu (v.n. zájí) (1) arrive. lakwtu-w zada ij Kuukaawa bai 'at that time he hadn't arrived at Kukawa'. See gàadā (1a).

(2) punch with fist.

zàgè mú (v.n. zágè mǎ; zágám) (1) hurl a spear, hit with thrown spear. ndà zagèmi zhigom dagai aa riyu 'a great warrior was speared there'. cf. dlápú; vèrkú (1).

(2) make a libation at burial (see tàdú (2e) for explanation).

zàagú (v.n. zàagà) wait for; wait, pause. cf. cìřàndú, dèřáu, ðēmìyú.

zákwâták (pl. zákwâtáín) Ruppell's griffon (*Cyps ruppelli*) [H. miki].
zakwtak mazamak áa fuwayi ii dāa gaadāu bai 'griffon, the hunter,
he doesn't descend to the ground for nothing'. cf. dīshāw.

zàalèmtú (v.n. zàalèmtà; záalèm)(? < K. or H. < Ar.) oppress, treat harshly.

zámâ (pl. zámámín) good luck at hunting. cf. cìřàndú.

zàamân (pl. zàamánánín)(< K. zàmân < Ar.) time, period, epoch. See gènnànú, yàayé (1).

zàamtú (v.n. zàamtà) jerk out, snatch up (as a hawk catching a chicken).
cf. zèmtú.

zán (pl. zánzàanín)(< K. zánná 'master') Kanuri person or language.

zánâi (pl. zánánín)(cf. K. jénè; H. zánèè 'woman's wrapper') man's gown. See mègènyí (2). cf. gàarì.

zàpènú (v.n. zápèná; zàpán) churn milk; shake water with flour in gourd. cf. càlmú.

zāř id. used with àrāwài 'white'. dlægəmin arawai zař 'the camels are all white'.

zàrú (v.n. zàrà) = zàráu (v.n. zàrá) pull, pull along (esp. living thing, such as goat). See ðàdàmú (3). cf. bàazú, vāagú; 'yùwú, fètú, pèldú.

zàarú (v.n. zàarí) (a) overload, overcharge (animal).

(b) choke up. naawuk zaarə-naa yu 'saliva got in my windpipe, making me cough'.

zàatú (v.n. zàatà) pound grain, etc. in mortar (tómà). See nàa (lbii).
cf. kùtlèptú, sàpdú, tàkwsú (2); dèřdú, nàayú.

zàutú (v.n. zàutà; zàwát) have diarrhea.

zàawék (pl. zàawàwín) smoke.

zàwâ (pl. zàwáwín) stick, staff. cf. dèm.

zàyát v.n. of zìidú

zàyí (pl. zàyàyín) rope. See dlàmàtú.

zàzgú (v.n. zàzgà; zàzák) rub to relieve an itch. cf. merməsu, tlàadú, kwàatlíú, zùwáu.

zhə- if not found here, see zhi-

zhègwèt (pl. zhègwàgwín) the fingers. cf. áikwák (2), màdèvàaràk, màsàaudák.

zhà (pl. zhàzhín) war, waging war. See zègáu (2). cf. tlèrì.

zhàà id. (running) in all directions. bədlamu dá yki ada maarəm kə və-ji-gu dá kkəm mətɪ tən, sai kaakənii-gu dá dlan-du zhàa dà rawa-naak-shi 'the hyena saw the head of the biggest monkey and hit it pow!, then the rest of them made off in all directions and ran away'.

zhábùwà (pl. zhábùwàwín) (a) honey; bee(s).

(b) mii zhábùwà bee.

zhàagəm (pl. zhàagàgəm) (1) isolated, uninhabited area in the bush.

(2) the need to defecate, defecating. zhaagəm dēma-naa yu 'I have to defecate (cf. dēmáu)'; caaman ná dee ii zhaagəm bai 'I didn't really come to defecate'.

zhàanyí (pl. zhàanyànyín) (cf. K. jènyí) calabash spoon, ladle.

zhi- if not found here, see zhə-

zhìibú (v.n. zhìibà) (1) pinch, squeeze together.

(b) hem in, pester, worry.

cf. bēdú 'pinch', màadú 'squeeze', màdtú 'compress'.

zhìgóm (pl. zhìgwàmcín) = dlùgwám brave man, great warrior. See gáafà (2), ngwǎu (3).

zhìrùwú v.intr. (v.n. zhìrúwà; zhìráu) become embarrassed, ashamed; be overcome by such feelings. Zaara, naa shirau naa atu 'Zara, I'm embarrassed around her'; mētu vэг ii aasək dá zhiruwi 'death has fallen on the market but it is embarrassed' (this is too easy to be called sport).

zhìráu (v.n. of zhìrùwú) (a) modesty, feeling of shame or embarrassment.

(b) used as an object of kètíú: 'be put in an embarrassing position, be humiliated'. See kètíú (1c).

(c) buuci-k zhirau see yàidú (1)

zhìyám cuspid; bicuspid; molar. cf. yàanáu.

zhòm adj. (cf. K. com ideophone used with 'sour') sour (said of something that has gone sour or fermented, not something naturally sour, such as lime). zhòm-k ányì = ányì zhòm 'sour milk'. cf. cáák, còmcom, zhòomú.

zhòomú v.intr. (v.n. zhóomù) (cf. zhòm and K. word cited there) ferment (grain, etc.); become sour (milk, etc.). anyì zhoomə-ngara = anyì dlamə-ngara zhom 'the milk became sour'.

zhùutú (v.n. zhùutà) filter a liquid off, pour off.

zìidú (v.n. zíidà; zàyát) slaughter animal by cutting throat; (with human object) execute. audu-k ziida gwamak àa ziida-k jaunak bai 'a knife for slaughtering a ram won't slaughter an elephant'. See òiyú, fèrà, gèadà (lc), kàwà. cf. kàrmú, tlàptú, wèdú.

zòorí (pl. zòoràrín)(< K. zò[í 'mad') fool.

zùktú (v.n. zúktà; zùkút)(< K. súk-cìn 'pierce') pierce; become pierced. See sèrú. cf. dlàpú.

zùngùrú (pl. zùngùrãrín)(? < H. zùngùrúu) long gourd used for application of henna to hands, usually with designs traced on outside. cf. ádíyú.

zùwàk (pl. zùwàwín) (1) wind. See ðækú, tlátlámáawà. cf. kwákwàk.
(2) evil spirit. dà kaci-ngara mii zuwak 'she became possessed'.

zùwàktú (v.n. zùwàktà)(d.f. zùwàk) go mad.

zùwáu (v.n. zùwá) wipe, rub, rub on. dá viyi tēka-gara dá zuwi mērak 'she bathed and rubbed on oil'. See bàazhí (1). cf. mēmēsú, yàikáu, zàagú.

ENGLISH-NIGIZIM
WORD LIST

A

a, an (specific):	dágàì	adornment:	jáagè
aardvark:	gúrgùm	adulterer:	dàawàná
able, to be:	dè máu	advice:	shàwâř
abort:	tèpkú	advise:	shàwàřtú
about: see 'concerning'		affair:	wújèř, lámâř
above:	déskù	affection:	ànnàshùwá
abrade:	dlàřdú	afraid, to be:	màrwàyú, sàaktú, sàltú
abuse: fèřfèřtú; see also 'insult'		afternoon:	dúwâř (about 2-3 PM); ádlìyádlìyá (mid a.); ádùwáu (late a.)
<i>Acacia albida</i> , <i>A. dudgeoni</i> [H. gawo]:	gwàyú	again:	wàm
<i>Acacia nilotica</i> [H. gabaruwa]:	gùvârú	agree (with/to):	àřdìyàatú, kàsàktú; see also 'allegiance'
<i>Acacia senegal</i> [H. ñakwara]:	wàwú, wàwù lífìdòk, wàwù gèjì	aid n.:	káadú
<i>Acacia seyal</i> [H. dushe]:	ázhè mák	airplane:	sáawú
<i>Acacia siberiana</i> [H. farar Kaya]:	gúmáwú	alight:	zèdàpú
accept:	tàpáu, gènú	align (in rows):	gèřèetú
accident:	bàaná	all:	bál, cákcák, cák, déřús, mák
accompany:	gùrvú	allegiance:	gùdáf àkáu
ache: see 'pain', 'illness'		alliance:	cáppà
add: see 'to increase'		almost:	gàzá řáp
admonish:	gàbdú	alms, to give:	gàrmú, sàdàktú
		alone:	řúu- + bound pronoun
		alongside, to come:	gèřèetú
		alongside, to pass: see 'to swerve'	
		already:	cáamàn
		also:	yé

- although: yàayé
- always: kúlúm, fàtawànké
- Amomum*: see 'Melegueta pepper'
- among: wíitâ; see also 'between'
- Andropogon guyanus* [H. gamba]:
mâdlbák
- anger: gézhí, shìitán; ágwdù (of
wife, who leaves husband)
- animal: tìùwái (wild = 'meat');
dábbà (domestic)
- annoy: cùwìitú, dàamèetú, jìktú;
see also 'bother', 'trouble'
- Anogeissus leiocarpus* [H. marke]:
ánèñ
- Anona senegalensis* [H. gwandar
jeji]: ágùnàkú
- another (different): dǎgàì,
dàamâ
- answer v.: ngùmú
- ant: dūuráawà [H. kiyashi]; máa-
dèvíròk [H. cínaka]; mīyàa-
kùwà [H. tururuwa]
- antelope: see 'roan antelope',
gazelle', 'hartebeeste', 'dui-
ker'
- anthill: see 'termite hill'
- antimony: sántèřàm
- anus: vèkshí
- any: tàwànké
- anyone: tìyé, tìiké
- anything: tàmké, tànké
- any time: fàtawànké
- anywhere: ràwànké
- appear: pàkú (suddenly, as squir-
rel from hole)
- appease, be appeased: làgòotú
- appoint: kàisú; see also 'to tur-
ban'
- approach: tàráu
- area: àakúndùwà (between one com-
pound and another); gándèřvú
(within compound); gwàapáatè
(outside of a compound where
men gather)
- arguing: gàmǎyá (disagreement);
tìáawúra (quarrelsomeness)
- arm: ámâi; áikwák (= 'hand'; 'fin-
ger')
- armor: kúmaakumí (quilted, worn by
person); búugè (quilted, worn
by horse); sùlgé (chain mail)
- armpit: shí gáptâ, shí-k 'yúwâ
- arrange: sèřú (in a line); see al-
so 'to align', 'to repair'
- arrive: bàtáu, zàdáu
- arrow: dègà
- as: kàa
- Asclepiadeae* spp. [H. lojiya]: máa-
dàngó
- ashamed, to be: zhìrùwú
- ashes: bábéd
- ask: jàayú, tàǎtíú
- astonishment: ájâp
- at: àa
- aunt: mīi gázgàrà (younger mater-
nal); mīi gángám (younger ma-
ternal); ngàngám (younger, ma-
ternal or paternal)

aversion: see 'disgust'

dirt out of well)

axe: gáwâ

bastard: bàabíilò

bat: gwágwáará (fruit); gédùwàn
(small, insectivorous)

B

Bauhinia reticulata [H. kargo]:
ápsáw

baboon: bángâi

Bauhinia rufescens [H. matsagi,
jirga]: áarèm

baby: kúlâábí

beans: ríidùwà, ářdùwà; jáabì (boil-
ed in water)back: wûrzú (= 'bark'); àkáu
(= 'behind'); gùdlèdlĩř (low-
er part)

bear (give birth): 'yàwú

backbite: fèřfèřtú

beard: mârí; géegè (side whiskers)

Bade person/language: bádê

beat: kkèmmú, dàdgú; gùbdú (with
stick); nàanmú (drum)bag: kwàtánkó, jáká; tábà (woven
of palm fronds); bùufú (large)

beautiful: bèlân, càndùwà

Balanites aegyptiaca [H. aduwa]:
ákda

because: gàadâ

Balsamodendron africanum [H. da-
shi]: tládâkbecause of X: gàadâ-k X; dà mỳá-k
XBambara ground nut (*Voandzeia sub-
terranea*) [H. gujiya]: túkúřwá

become: dlàmú (intr.)

bandicoot: see 'giant rat'

bed: rákai

"banjo": gùrém [H. gurmi]; yàa-
kèndí [H. garaya]bee: zhábùwà (= 'honey'), m̀i zhá-
bùwà

bank up: pùudú

beer: sómâ; bàazhí (intermediate
stage in brewing); bàabèkà (after
being cooked one day); màatàn-
gĩizhá (after being cooked 3
days); kúřdúđú (small amount
brewed for personal use)baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) [H. ku-
ka]: kúkú; mátákùwà (small
or immature)

beetle: see 'dung beetle'

bark: wûrzú (on tree); gùdlóř
(loose, on dead wood)

before: dàmbà, kàabì, kàabèn

barking (dog): gáadà

beget: see 'bear'

base: shí

begging: állâařó

basket: dàabéř [H. kwando]; kèndé
[H. lefe]; tàkací (used to lift

begin: bàdìitú, bándú, jìbú

- beginning: sékúř
- behind: àkáu
- belch v.: gàđdlú
- belligerence: dlèrá
- bellowing (of bull, etc.): pàyí
- bellows: kùutó
- belly: bàazhí; tumpí; ànyád (between navel and pubis)
- below: shí, dédáa
- bend v.: đēbàdlú
- bend down: gùtkú
- bent: gáđēbàdlák
- beseech: dlàdlìyú, wìilú
- beside: mìyá-k
- better: 'it would be better that' ngálkò; 'be better than' đēkáu
- between: gádâavà; see also 'among'
- bicuspid: zhìyám (= 'cuspid', 'molar')
- bicycle: kèeké
- bid farewell: sàlàmtú
- big: màarém
- bird: đúutâ
- birth: đìyí; see also 'bear'
- bite: gàadú
- bitter: đēgwáagwàk
- black: àayùwà
- blacksmith: màazám, bàací zèamá
- blame: nyùwáu
- blanket: gwàdàm (hand made in strips)
- bleed: see 'cupping'
- bless: bàřkàwàatú
- blessing, to seek: dlàdlìyú
- blind, to be: dlègàyú
- blind (person): dlúgùyú, dlègíđ
- blood: dédám
- blow: fìyú; fìitú (blow on, as fire)
- blow nose: tlènú
- blowing: see 'blow', trumpeting'
- blue: rəpìllá
- boat: dárágài
- body: təkà; see also 'carrion' 'corpse'
- body cloth: see 'wrapper'
- boil v.: rapđú; zəbàayú (begin boiling)
- boil n.: gábəřzái
- Bole person/language: fìikà
- Bombax: see 'kapok'
- bone: áwùk
- book: tákâřdá
- Borassus: see 'deleb palm'
- borrow: sàarñutú, mà básà; cìbú (without permission)
- both: pl. pronoun + shírín 'two'
- bother v.: ràvènú; see also 'annoy', 'trouble'
- bottle: gérúwà (gourd); gùdú (of hide or gourd, for oil)

boundary: áakwáyú, íyâaká	fixes -náa, -dù
bow (for arrows): àbák	broom: 'yúwâ
bowl: dégóná (wooden); gérǵiyà (small, for measuring); kwáayàk (shallow, earthenware)	brother: gèdén (younger); gázgàrà (elder)
bowstring: dúkwâk	brush off: sàspú
box: sèndúkù, sèndúkì	bubble v.: ràpdû
boy: máayim; see also 'young man'	bucking (of donkey, etc.): kwàryàk
bracelet: řàkká (metal, worn on leg)	buffalo (<i>Syncerus caffer planiceros</i>) [H. Bauna]: àdànak
braid v.: bégú (two already braided strands); nèmú (hair); tèrmú (three strands)	build (with mud, cement): nèmú, lèmú
brains: dlánâk	build fire: gèdlú
bran: bējí	bull: kwàm
branch: gáptâ (= 'shoulder'), màrnyí (= 'tongue')	bundle of thatching grass: táḡsâk
brave man: dlùgwám, zhìgóm	burn: bàkú
break into irregular pieces/break stiff thing in two: kètlú (tr.), tàtlú (intr.)	bury: dàbgú
break in two (rope)/break off (e.g. fruit from tree): gèdú (tr.), gàdú (intr.); bèrdú (several small things)	bush ("the bush"): pátà; dùs (dense); zhàagém (isolated); áḡfya (previously unfarmed area)
break up (a fight): ráu	bush baby: see 'galago'
break up (in pieces): řùgbú, řùḡḡú	but: àmmá, átén
break piece off: tlètłèrú	butcher v.: see 'slaughter'
breast: ányî (= 'milk')	butter: fúulá (Ful. b., in balls)
breathing: máfíyâ	butterfly: tàapètéapétè
bridle: lìijâm	buttocks: bəmbəkshí; shāab-
brightness: wìidā (= 'lighten- ing'); pářák	<i>Butyrospermum</i> : see 'shea-nut'
bring: 'come' + transitizing suf-	buy: mäsú

C

cake: sènáasèn (fried, made of millet flour)

calabash: fènà; mábú (very large); gádákùwà (small, for eating); kámbí (small, for storing); díágwàrú (old, broken)

calf (of cow): ábùwán

calf (of leg): métékùs

call v.: dāurú, ràurú, dāarú

Calotropis procera [H. tunfafiya]: pàaràakáu

camel: díégámáu, díékémáu

can: see 'able, to be'

cancel (plans, etc.): pèrtú

cane rat (*Thryonomys swinderianus*) [H. gyazbi]: dāwûř

canyon: gwàayà

cap: jáakúwá

Capsicum: see 'pepper'

car: métká

careful, to be: ànkàltú, òkàltú

carpentry, to make by: ðékú, yáu

carrion: mágván

carry: kàkèrú (load on head); gùdvú (baby, etc. on back)

carve (wood): sàskú

cassava (*Manihot palmata*) [H. rogo]: dāuyà

Cassia kotschyana [H. marga]:

áasárángái

Cassia tora [H. tafasa]: tàabèsá

castor plant: see 'Ricinus'

castrate: kkòmú, dàdgú (by pounding cords); dǎu (by slitting scrotum and removing testicles)

cat: gáyim, pàatú; see also 'wild cat'

catch: jìbú; wètú (ball, etc.)

cattle egret (*Bubulcus ibis*) [H. bal-bela]: řáaříinò(k)

cause v.: dāawú;= 'bring' (see dēu)

cave: gèrìd

celebration: see 'festival'

Cenchrus catharticus [H. karangiya]: ápfiwà

Centaurea calcitrapa [H. dayi]: díàřtábúwà

center: pátlâ

certain: dāgài (a certain one, certain ones); jìgàp (certain ones, certain + mass noun)

chaff: ráfíiwà

chair: gwájéeré, kújéeré

chameleon: kónjì, kàakónjì

change: pàltú; mètú

change into: see 'to metamorphose'

character: hâi

charcoal: kwánkwáasák

charm n.: dàgà (round, worn around upper arm or forearm); máskâr, máspâr (worn around waist or in small pouch); mbùudái (makes one

invisible)	claw v.: kwàatíú
chase (away): ràkáu, ràrkú (= 'drive along'); ráu (birds from field, etc.)	clay (for pottery): rébà
cheapness: àřàhá	clean a.: bèlân (= 'beautiful')
cheat: sèřkàatú	clean out (bowl with forefinger): sàaudú
cheek: jígèná	clear (farm of weeds): zàblyú
cheerful disposition: càpàrí	clever, to be: gèràyú
chest: áadlâ (= 'cough')	clever a.: gágèràyák
chew: gágdú (corn off cob, etc.); gùrmèdú (e.g. person with no teeth)	cleverness: gèràyù
chewstick tree: see 'Anogeissus'	climb: gàyú
chicken: see 'hen', 'rooster'	close v.: cìmú; rèpú
chief: dègè; the following are titles applied to various kinds of leaders: bářdé, cířòomà, kàcállà, kàigámà, yàříimà, màa-gíiřá	cloth: bákítà (white, no pattern); gábàgá (hand-woven in strips and sewn together)
chieftainship: gàrvá, kèřmâi	clothing: kàacúm
chin: gùmcí	cloud: kèràabàk
choke up: zàarú	clucking (of hens): díákáká
choose: màngàřtú; see also 'to select'	coals: see 'charcoal', 'embers'
chop: kàrmú	coax: sèřfú
chop into bits: dàřtíú	cobra [H. kumurci]: káfái
churn: zàpènú	<i>Cochlospermum tinctorium</i> [H. rawaya]: tàřtáf
circumcise: wèdú	cock (a gun) v.: tùutáu
circumcision: wèdà	cock n.: see 'rooster'
citrus fruit: lèemên	cockadoodledoo: kwàkúříyáakwàk
civet cat (<i>Viverra civetta</i>) [H. murun tantai]: j{bdà	cold a.: láyí
clap: tílèpú	cold (the illness): ndáfák
	cold season: see 'harmattan'
	collapse: rèbgú
	collect: nèbku; see also 'to gather'

- colt: kústâ
- comb v.: sèpdú
- comb (of chicken): kòokúyòk
- Combretum verticillatum* [H. kanta-kara]: átákúràk
- come: dëu (Perfective); nài (Subjunctive); dīiná, nná (Second Subjunctive); yèn (Sing. Imperative); nīiná, nná (Pl. Imperative); nīi (v.n.) [See paradigm, p. xxiii]
- come to (after fainting): sàktú
- companion: kámáncí
- complain against: bèřkùutú
- complaint: bèřkù
- complete v.: cìkàatú
- compound: wúndùwà, méndùwà
- compress: màdítú, càapáu
- conceal oneself: pèdú
- concern: see 'worry'
- concerning: ìi
- condolences: jìbà-k áikwàk
- congratulate: = 'to bless'
- conversation: sàmàná
- cook: bènú
- cooking pot: see 'pot'
- cool off: kàktú
- copulate with: tàpìyú; see also 'copulation', 'to fornicate', 'to fuck'
- copulation: bábí (by animals); see also 'fornication'
- Cordia abyssinica* [H. alilliba]: àdlídlàbá
- corn: māsářmì (maize); see also 'Guinea corn', 'millet', 'sorghum'
- corpse: gùvù
- corpulence: màadóbéř
- cotton: ábákùwà
- cough n.: áadlâ (= 'chest')
- count v.: náu
- country: gágái (nation); lářdì (world, area)
- courtier: kwákwaná
- cover v.: rèpú
- cover [H. faifai]: dóbâ
- coveting: ndèlám, zèlámâ
- cow: tlà
- co-wife: àbá; àbàacìkwìinà (resentful)
- cowry shell: wúří
- crash through: dlèdú
- craving (esp. for food or meat): láamí, ndèlám, zèlámâ
- crawl: řdú
- cricket: see 'Jerusalem cricket', 'locust', 'grasshopper'
- crier [H. shela]: kàagálâ
- crocodile: kářám
- cross v.: pàaltú
- crotch: tlèràadáu
- crow (type of bird): see 'pied c.'

- crow (call of rooster) v.: kwàryú dark recess: mādábák
- crowded, to be: māmǎú darkness (at night): dāmáakènəm
- "crown" v.: see 'to turban' date palm (*Phoenix dactylifera*)[H. dabino]: dèbíinò
- crown bird (*Balearica pavonia*)[H. gauraka]: vàarák, gèvàarák daughter: wúnýâ
- cry v.: dāanú dawn v.: tlànú (used in dāa tlànó-ngárâ)
- cry out: wèřdú
- crying: àdān day: wùnà (24 hour period); yùwàn (24 hour period, = 'passing the night'); nàwà (passing a day); áfâ (daytime, esp. midday, = 'sun'); see also 'to pass the day')
- cubit (measurement from elbow to fingertips): já day after tomorrow: àfàdǎgài
- cupping (with horn): átémák day before yesterday: gǎftà (used in gǎftà tǐyú)
- Curcubita pepo*: see 'pumpkin'
- cure v.: tlàtú, nàwáu, ngàatú dead: gǎmták
- cuspid: zhìyám (= 'bicuspid', 'molar')
- custard apple: see 'Anona'
- custom: áadâ Dead See apple: see 'Calotropis'
- cut, cut off: wèdú; dlàřdú; fìn-cèkú (cut off small piece) deaf, deaf person: dàakùyà
- cut open: see 'to gut'
- death: mètú
- cut up: dàřtlú (into pieces); dāarú, tlètłèrú (into strips) decay: tèřàbú
- cut with a sickle: tlàptú deceased: tlàmtú
- Cymbopogon giganteum* [H. tsaure]: riyak deceive: lèvǎatú
- decoc: see 'soak'
- decrease: pèlùutú
- deep: gǎzbéř (= 'long')
- defecate: bà sháu
- defend (against): rǎu
- deleb palm, fan palm (*Borassus flabellifer*)[H. giginya]: kúnámú
- demolish: rèbgú
- descend: fùwú

D

- dabble (in food): cèktlètłènú
- dancing: sùwàarí
- dark: àayùwà (= 'black')

desert date: see 'Balanites'

desert fox: see 'fennec'

desire for, desire to do *n.*:
dlàkwái; see also 'craving',
'coveting'

despise: mùwáu

destroy: ràbgú

Detarium senegalense [H. taura]:
ágwdàfú

deteriorate: tlàkàtú; dlèbgènú
(spiritually, physically)

deteriorated: gátlàkàták

detour: dlàgdú

devil: dàgwár

dew: mádaawà

diarrhea, to have: zàutú

Dichrostachys nutans [H. dundu]:
bègì

die: mètú; rèbú (in large numbers)

different: dàamà; jìmbí-jìmbí,
jìmpí-jìmpí (of different
kinds, in different groups)

difficulty: ngénépù; tétáa (= 'pain'); see also 'trouble'

dig: bèdlú, zèdú; see also 'to
scratch impression in ground'

dig up: kwàřbú

Diospyros: see 'ebony'

dip: ngwáu, dláu (liquid out of
container); sùwú (thing from
out of liquid); lùnkùdú (thing
into liquid)

direction: fàrà

dirt: see 'earth', 'filth'

dirty person: àtlbá

discomfort, to cause internal:
dèmáu

disembowel: see 'to gut'

disgust: nyànyá, rùwàwád

dislocate: see 'sprain'

disperse: wàayú

disrespectful: ngúdî

distant: pèdām

distribute: tàatbú, tàřbú

district: lárđì

disturb: dlèràatú

divide: bə̀rú (cut apart); řèetú
(into two parts); tàřbú, tàatbú
(share out)

do: dlàmú (= 'to make')

doctor: làkíitá (modern); see also
'sorcerer', 'sorceress'

dodge: gwàafú

dog: já; gáasá (hairy); see also
'hunting dog'

donkey: kwáařá; bìidâl (male)

door (panel covering doorway):
gwámpêř

doorway: māvǵí (usually used in
mìyà māvǵí 'mouth of māvǵí')

dove (*Streptopelia* spp.) [H. kurciya]:
táatárú

doze: zèngàgdú

drag: zàrú; vāagú; bàazáu (as a
gown dragging on ground)

draw (designs): gènú; nàudú

draw (out): zèmtú (water, etc.);
pèldú (knife, sword, etc.)

dream v.: sàunú

dream n.: sùwán

dress (woman's): gúmáajè

drink: sáú

drip v.: yáú

drive (animal, etc.) along: ràkáu

driver: dèřéebà

drum, to beat: nàanmú

drum n.: kánjáu (large, of variable pitch, held between legs);
tám̀bàl (large)

drummer: dúukù

drumming: náanám

drunk, to be: kùyòotú

dry a.: gaudák (= 'hard')

dry season: bíígèlà

dry up: wèdú

duck: wífilèwíllì [H. wushi]; ndà-
kám [H. agwagwan ruwa]

duiker, Grimm's (*Sylvicapra grimmia*) [H. gada]: gádùwà

dum palm (*Hyphaene thebaica*) [H. goruba]: tàatàukúřâm

dumb (mute, neither hears nor speaks): mùuká

dung beetle: mbùudá

durbar: gálâp

dust: bářbèř

dwarf: wàadá

dye: dàltú; dāawú fī àarín

dye pit: àarín

E

each other: gatkáu

ear: àgúđ

early, to set out e.: tàwàatú

earth: gágái

earwig: gábáakúugâw

east: càđ

easy: àřàhá, 'yálé

eat: táu (mush, or eating in general); klìđú (meat, chewable things)

ebony (*Diospyros mespiliformis*) [H. kanya]: àvèřđāmù

eclipse (of sun): dèvìđ shířín

edge: bàakà

egg(s): àgwái; zèbài (eggs on which a hen has sat but which did not hatch)

eight: dándàfúđú

eighteen: gúumà áyâawá-w dándàfúđú

eighty: gúumúu dándàfúđú

elect: see 'select'

elephant: jàunàk

eleven: gúumà áyâawá-w gàyí

embers: àván (usually used in àván-k ákà 'embers of fire')

emir: mái; dègè̀m

- emirate: gárvà
 empty: gàadǎu; pářák
 encircle: see 'surround'
 enemy: mǎkúrl
 enlighten, be enlightened: tlànú
 enmity: gàabá
 enrich, become enriched: cìlǎařú
 enter: tǎfú
 entwine: lùbùutú
 erect v.: dǎbú (= 'establish');
 pǎu (a shelter or other construction with a wooden frame)
Eriodendron: see 'kapok'
 escape: rǎmǎu (outrun); gùmbú
 (slip out of grasp)
 especially (for): nǎanǎadí
 establish: dǎbú
 etiquette: lǎdǎp
Euphorbia lateriflora [H. bi sartse, fidda sartse]: ágùrá-tlǐfímǎ
 European: nǎsǎařá
 even: hář
 even if: yǎayé
 evening: dǎgǎdùwǎu
 ever/never: ngǎlté; 'to have ever done'
 every (one): tǎwǎnké
 everyone: tǐyé, tǐiké
 everything: tǎmké, tǎnké
 every time: fǎtǎwǎnké
 everywhere: rǎwǎnké
 evil (living thing): kǎlǎadô
 exactly: kǎlkǎl
 exceed: dǎkǎu
 except (for): sǎi, sée ('none except'); àmmǎ X báí, átǎn X báí ('all except X')
 excrement: shǎu
 expect: tǔumǎntú
 expensiveness: sǎadǎ
 express good wishes: tǎdǎ mǐyǎ
 extend: gǎfǎu
 extract: fǎtú, pǎtú; 'yùwú
 eye: dà
- F
- face: fǎskǎ, jǎmpǎl (countenance)
 faint: àařó vǎrú
 falcon [H. shaho]: dǎnkǎ
 fall: dǎgǎmú (from an upright position); vǎgú (from a high place)
 family: yǎl
 famous: see 'renowned'
 fan palm: see 'deleb palm'
 far: see 'distant'
 farewell: see 'bid farewell'
 farm: kǎm; yǎamǎncí (small farm owned by member of household)

farmer: bàací rúwàí	fetter v.: tǎǎfú; see also 'hobble'
farming: rùwái	fetters: gàtākàs; see also 'hobbling'
fart n.: wùǎ'yí	fever: gùvú
fast(ing): àashàm	(a) few: ǎáp (= 'a little')
fat, to be, fatten: dèbàýú	<i>Ficus</i> : see 'fig'
fat n.: nyàmí; see also 'corpulence'	fifteen: gúumà áyâawá-w vād
fat a.: gádbàýák	fifty: gúumúu vād
father: àfók; bàbá (of a person referred to or speaking); bàabá (term of address)	fig: áayāw (<i>Ficus gnaphalocarpa</i>) [H. báuré]
fatigue: dúwàtíu	fighting: tǎlèrì
fault: áípù	fill, be full/filled: nìyú, cìkàatú; nèmìyú (fill/be full to brim)
fear n.: káláu, màrwái	filter v.: cèckú; zhùutú (a liquid off)
fear v.: màrwáyú, sàaktú, sàltú	filth: nyùm
fearful person: màkàlàu	find: tàsáu
feather: = 'hair'	fine, to impose: hàakàatú
feed (an animal): ñpàatú	finger: áikwák (= 'hand'); gúrbàk (= 'fingernail'); mäsàaudák, màdēvāarāk (forefinger); zhē-gwèt (fingers)
feel: yáu (externally, e.g. coolness from shade, heat from fire, etc.)	fingernail: gúrbàk
female: gàamà	finish: dàamú
fence: dāǎdāǎ (of thorny branches or sticks); dārágà (of thorns or cornstalks around garden); gālāgà (made of zana-mat); kàstà (made of cornstalks)	finished, to be: dāsú, dāamú
fennec (<i>Canis zerba</i>) [H. yanyawa]: ádíyāu	fire: áká
ferment: zhòomú	fireplace (for cooking): vākín
festival: bārákāu (most important Ngizim festival, after planting to assure abundant harvest); sémágàrēm ("second burial"); sàwák (Ngizim new year)	first: sékúǎ (= 'beginning'); 'at first', to start with 'dègò; 'to be first to do' bāndú
	fish n.: vènàakáu
	fish v.: shìyú

- fitting, to be: kàmàatú
- five: vaaɗ
- flag: àalân
- flatten out (with sliding motion):
màksú
- flatter: zèmaú
- flavoring for sauce: ámbàí (made
from locust beans); áunà (made
from ashes); gwàagùnái (made
from baobab leaves); tükunó
(made from dried and pounded
fish)
- flay: náu
- flea: ãàbét
- flesh: see 'meat'
- flintstone: jínáadì
- flood, be in: nèmìyú
- floor (pounded to make hard):
dègàgár
- flour: áptâ; ãayí (coarse part
after pounding)
- flower: pètlayù
- fluster: dlèràatú
- fly n.: júwâk
- fly v.: tláu (= 'get up')
- flying squirrel (*Anomaluridae* sp.):
dléndlèn
- fog: see 'haze'
- fold (in two): řèptú
- fold up: yàidũ
- folktale: see 'tale'
- follow: ãégú (person, animal);
- đégáu (road, path, etc.)
- fond of, to be: kàwáu
- food: bíi-k tà; ábân (mush with
sauce); mûgbés (warmed over)
- fool: bélkên, gáðàawànak, kàakáábú,
zòrí
- foolish: gádlèbgènak
- foolish, to act: dàawànú
- foot: zègór (= 'leg')
- forcefully, to do: řàasú
- foreskin: mìyá gènyí
- forest: dlámdlàm
- forge: zèmaú
- forget: tùwàyú
- formerly: wàací, câa
- fornicate (with): tàpìyú; see also
'to copulate', 'copulation',
'to fuck'
- fornication: ãèngà; tàpái
- fortunate, to cause someone to be:
kàntàfòotú
- forty: gùumúu fúđú
- four: fúđú
- fourteen: gúumà áyâawá-w fúđú
- fox: see 'fennec'
- francolin: dàfkárâk (*FrancoLINUS*
bicalcaratus)[H. fakara]
- free (gratis): íi vátú
- Friday: dlémáawâ
- friend: mângá; múyî (female friend
of a female); hěrmá, màntáu (par-

ticularly close or intimate)	[H. barewa]; ágářè [H. agare]
friendship: mánglíná	gecko: míi-k sàu
frog: bàřtákták (large, edible); see also 'toad'	genet (<i>Genetta poenis</i>) [H. cimola]: dàgáadàràì
from: dà	genitalia (male or female): shí (= 'base'); see also 'penis', 'vulva'
fronds: see 'palm fronds'	get: bǎu
front: see 'in front of'	get down: fùwú
fruit: dīyì wákà	get up: tǎu
fry (in oil): kàuyú	ghost: kùtlèm-kùtlèm
fuck: dègzú, řènú; see also 'to copulate', 'copulation', 'to fornicate'	giant rat (<i>Cricetomys gambianus</i>) [H. gafiya]: gǎmbàgàdlám
fuel (fire): rùksú	ginger (<i>Zingiber officinale</i>) [H. cit- tar aho]: cìitá áfó
Fulani person/language: fóláatà	giraffe: mǎcákùwà
full: see 'fill'	girl: wúnyâ (= 'daughter'); dábákù (of marriageable age)

G

gabbing: see 'garrulousness'	give: bàrú
galago (<i>Galago senegalensis</i>) [H. daskaren kurmi]: dàkwándèelè	give birth: see 'bear'
gallop: see 'durbar'	go: jú (Perf.), yí (Subjunctive), dǎ (Second Subjunctive), jǐ (Singular Imperative), ddá (Plu- ral Imperative), nyà/yá (Verbal Noun); see also 'travel' (See paradigm, p. xxiii)
gambling: bàamá	go back: see 'return'
garden: dǎrágà (= 'fence')	go close along (river, fence, etc.): tǎráu
<i>Gardenia erubescens</i> [H. gaude]: gwàgúú	go in: tǎfú
garrulousness: rúurǎu	go out: vèrú
gather: càcpú, càptú; tǎmǎú (ga- ther cloth or gown between legs and pull from back)	goat: áakù; gǎbábù, gǎbùzùrú (bil- ly-goat); dǎyâk (castrated); sùuyá (male, born without devel- oped testicles); yǎbzá (with
gazelle (<i>Gazella rufifrons</i>): áayú	

- bushy hair)
- God: kàakáskù, sèkù
- gold: dǫ́nǎř
- gone, be all: dàamú
- goose: zǎbgà (spur-winged)
- gourd: áǫ́yú (generic term); cǐi-zǎmǐ (long, used to store small things); gwàbò (large, spherical); kǔřtú (small, round); zǔngǔřú (long, for application of henna to hands)
- gourd bottle: gǎrúwà
- gown: gǎarǐ, zánǎi (man's); àbáyà (long, with embroidery around legs); kúptà (short, embroidered); see also 'dress'
- grain: shǐmpéd (with bran removed); bǎtlà (fermented, for beer); see also 'corn', 'guinea corn', 'millet', 'sorghum'
- grains (of guinea corn, peanuts, etc.): áyàawá
- granary: gǎdlǎi (woven in the manner of a zana-mat); dátǎfǐdǒk (buried in ground); bǎzám (made of clay)
- grandchild: kàká
- grandparent: = 'grandchild'
- grasp: kùyú
- grass: àzém; see also 'Andropogon', 'Cenchrus', 'Cymbopogon'
- grasscutter: see 'cane rat'
- grasshopper: àngwám [H. fara]; gwáará [H. dango]
- grave: àudǔ
- graze: dàwáu
- greed: zǎlámá, ndǎlám, lámǐ
- green (unripe): gǎatǎ
- green (in color): tǎlǎř
- greens (for sauce): àwái
- greet: ndǎmú
- griffon: see 'Ruppell's griffon'
- grind (on stone): nàayú; dǎřǫ́ (grind guinea corn on stone slowly, to get fine flour)
- grinding stone: vǎnyǐ
- groan: mǎzǎmú
- ground: gǎgǎi
- groundnut(s): see 'Bambara groundnut', 'peanut(s)'
- grove (of trees): bǎrǐ (= 'herd')
- grow up: rǎwáu
- gruel: áagǎw [H. fura]; dákwdǎ (fura flavored with desert date); tǎmbàazǎi [H. gumba]; ákúřnà [H. kunu]; bǎřbǎřǐ (kunu flavored with desert date)
- grumbling: rúurúwá
- grunt v.: mǎzǎmú; dǔkdǔ (g. while forcing on bowels) [H. kumbura wuya]
- guard v.: dǎmǐyú
- guava: gwéebà
- guest: mǎgǎrǎf
- Guiera senegalensis* [H. sabara]: mǎshǎshǎawà
- guinea corn: áw; see also 'millet', 'sorghum'
- guinea fowl (*Numida meleagris*) [H. zabo]: zǎabànú

"guitar": see "banjo"

gum Arabic: àḍán (wákà)

gums: gèṇádí

gun: béndégí

gut v.: ñìyú, ñìyáú

guts: see 'intestines'

Gynandropsis pentaphylla [H. gasa-
ya]: ðém̀bà

H

haft: kùṁú, shìyú

hair: yàḍí (= 'feathers'); gùzáí
(pubic)

hairdo: ðèbáábâ (Kanuri style);
pàmpèèrí

half: ǝéetâ

hand: áikwák (= 'finger'; 'arm')

handle (of axe, hoe, etc.): gèjí

hang up: dlègú

haphazardly, do: kèrcàcìyú

happen; wàakàatú

happiness: kúnò; gèshì àaràwái

hard: gàudák (surface, = 'dry');
gàdàgúǝ (uncuttable)

hare: v́fídà

harmattan: mà̀m̀

hartebeeste (*Damaliscus korrigum*)
[H. dari]: gèràfìyà

harvest: kàrmú (millet, etc. by
cutting stalks); tàtè̀m̀ (beans,

etc. by picking)

harvest season: tìè̀rà̀m̀

haste: àajáíà, kàmpúwái

hatch out: ñàḅtíú

haughtiness: sèkèntù

haunch: gúnàí

Hausa person/language: àapè̀nò

hawk: see 'falcon', 'kite'

haze: gàbàntlínáw

head: áḍá

head toward: tà̀r̀ǹ

heal: ngàatú

health: kèláp̀p̀yá (good health)

health, in good a.: ngàa (usually
used with possessive pronoun)

hear: kè̀m̀áú (= 'smell')

heart: gèshí, gázáfà

heat: ðàafáú (= 'perspiration');
áfâ (= 'sun'); ákâ (= 'fire')

heat up (food, water, etc.): ðè̀m̀áú

heaven: jáǹǹ

heavy: ðùkshí

hedgehog: áatàg̀wàzhàm

height: dáatì

hello: úsàí

help v.: bàanàatú, tàimàkàatú,
tà̀m̀áú; wùrú

hemp (*Hibiscus cannabinus*) [H. ramà]:
gáḅfíwà

hen: gâazá; káakáatè̀r̀àm (hen that

- has begun laying)
- herd: *bérí* (= 'grove')
- here: *rìi tkú*
- here ... is/are: *sàw(tái)* (refers to singular, plural, mass); *ndàw* (refers to plural or mass only)
- heron (*Ardea cinerea*)[H. *zalbe*]: *ngùrḍāadēkwàk*
- Hibiscus*: see 'hemp', 'okra', 'sorrel'
- ?*Hibiscus cannabinus* [?H. *yakuwar daji*]: *'yàràrà*
- hide v.: *bàmú, dēbsú*
- hide n.: see 'skin'
- hiding: *ábû*
- Hippocratea obtusifolia* [H. *gwadā-yi*]: *tláatlíráadā*
- hippopotamus: *àjàgúm*
- hissing (of snake, monitor; also, "spitting" of cat, snorting of bull): *kùukà*
- hit: *kkè mú*; see also 'beat'
- hitch up (child on back): *sèpkú*
- hobble: see 'to fetter'
- hobbling: *gàkwáará* (two front feet); *gàdùukà* (two side feet)
- hoe v.: *rùuyú*; see also 'bank up', 'hoe up'
- hoe n.: *kùrá m* [H. *fartanya*]; *dàbí* [H. *magirbi*]; *gùràfú* [H. *sungumi*]
- hoe blade: *gàadéří* (worn down); *gàmráarìyàk* (worn out)
- hoe up: *kwàřbú*
- hold: *jìbú, řòotú, gáfáu*
- hold out: *gáfáu*
- hole: *vèk*; *mézbà* (in zana-mat fence, etc.); see also 'cave', 'impression in ground'
- hollow (in tree, etc.): *gèříd*
- hollow out: *dēkú, shàshkú*
- homeland: *ḍāa* (= 'town')
- hommage, pay: *gàrmú*
- honey: *zhábùwà*
- honor v.: *sàksàktú*
- hoof: *kùlāāřám* (still on animal); *fètàk* (cut off animal's foot)
- horn: *fùwàk* (on animal's head); *màakém* (blown to call other hunters)
- hornbill: *zèřét* (Abyssinian ground h., *Bucorvus abyssinicus*)[H. *bultu*]
- hornet: *gàjàvéř*
- horse: *dùukà, dákwtà* (with white feet and forehead); see also 'mare', 'colt'
- host: *pàatòomá*
- hot: *náa ákà*
- hot season: *tèřà-k áfà*; *wúuzènak* (end of hot season)
- house: *kúḍèmdè m* (square with flat roof); see also 'compound', 'hut'
- how: *nà nà, ndá* (= 'where'); *dàvú wàařà* (introducing indirect question)
- how much/many: *náwàn*
- huddle up (from cold, etc.): *kùyú*

huge: gúřjèm	iguana: see 'monitor'
hump: see 'pelvic thrusts'	illness: fèrá, wákáfà
hundred: dánámák	impatient, be: cìřàndú
hunger: máyâ	impression (in ground, etc.): gátóř, tènýí
hunt v.: bàrú	improve: sèkúnú (intr.); dǎlmú (tr.)
hunter: mèzám; màzàmák; ngábàràk	in: kúnú (= 'stomach')
hunting: bárá; see also 'luck'	in front of: kèamá
hunting dog (<i>Lycaon pictus</i>) [H. kyarkeji]: dàmbáadiǝgúř	incisor: yàanúu gámás
hurl: zàgè mú	increase: sèkènú, ngùbùutú
hurt v.: see 'pain', 'illness'	indigo: báabá
husband: mèsèk	inherit: gàadòotú
husk (of guinea corn stalk): tǎářám	in-law (mother or father): sàurák
hut: sésàu, kágò; řùutà (entrance hut; temporary shelter in bush)	insert: wùsú
hyena: bèdlámú; gádámúuzái (given as Hausa ambulí or kure)	inside: kwákúnú
<i>Hyphoene</i> : see 'dum palm'	insolence: kùřbá
hypocrite: mènáafèk	install (chief): see 'to turban'
	insult v.: nàangú
	intelligence: ánkái
	intercept: kàptú
	interlace: tǎergìdú
	intestines: àndád; bèřzóngólú (?large intestine)
ice: áyàyí	investigate: tǎktǎú
if: -n after vowels, nén after consonants (suffixed to end of clause); gǎfà (at beginning of clause); kwàya (at end of clause); dàa (counterfactual, usually at beginning of main clause, and sometimes at beginning of conditional clause); báya ('if it were'); see also 'even if'	invite: mpá míyá-w
	invulnerable, take potions so as to become: jàayú
	<i>Ipomoea</i> : see 'potato'
	iron: see 'metal'
	irrigate: dèbú

itch v.: tlàadú

itching: tláadã

K

J

jackal: dólá

jar: see 'bottle'

jaw: gèráayá (mandible); ãâm
(point of mandible below ear)

jealous person: mágùrú

jealousy: gùrú

Jerusalem cricket: clídí

jewel: sáayà

joggle (child): yàikú

join: kwàptú, nèǂkú (tr.); ndàa-
gèǂmú (intr.)

joined: gándàagèǂmák

Jos: Tállè

journey: bùwà, ràakán

jujube: kwàyú (*Zizyphus jujuba*)
[H. magariya]; kúřnà (*Z. spina-*
christi) [H. kurna]

jump: kàtèřú

jump over: sá áđã

Kanuri person/language: zán

kapok tree: ríimí (*Eriodendron o-*
rientalis) [H. rimi]; kàràǂw
(*Bombax buonopezense*) [H. gur-
jiya]

Karekare person/language: dlèrái

kerchief (esp. in which small items
like coins are carried): àl-
búutà

Khaya: see 'mahogany'

kidney: kúrsâasíyá

kill: təkú; rəbú (kill many things/
people)

kind: zádák (= 'seed'); jírí

kindness: hēř

king: dègèǂm; mâi (esp. descendant
of chiefs of Birni Ngazargamo)

kite (*Milvus migrans*) [H. shirwa]:
gázábì

knead (into balls): nèmàmìyú

knee: kùfú

kneel: pá kùfú

knife: áudú; kàakàrá (large, fitted
with wooden handle)

knit (broken bone, etc.): sèǂmú

knock down (with a blow): mènú

knock over: kàřdú, řàabú

know: zègáu

kob (<i>Kobus (Adenota) kob</i>)[H. mara- ya]: mǎaràyá	learn: gùgzú
kola: góorò	leave: ìivú, bàzú (tr.); 'go' + ICP (intr.)
L	leaves: àwáí; tlátlámáawà (dry, from guinea corn)
	left, left hand: mǎdláwàí
	left, be: see 'remain'
laborer: léebèrà; bàarèemá, dà- gwànjí (hired for work on farm)	leg: zègér (= 'foot')
lack v.: bùukú	lend: bàrè básâ
lack of: see 'shortage'	length: see 'height'
ladle: zhàanyí	leopard: wùràk
lake: see 'pond'	leper: àgúřdádémâk
lame, become: đēgàdú	leprosy: gúřdèní
lame person: đūgdú	let alone (that) ...: bàllé, bàré
lameness: đēgàdú	libations, do l. at "second burial": tǎdǎ sémà; zàgènú
land v.: see 'alight'	lick: bàatú, pàatkú
land n.: see 'earth'	lie n.: pápíyâ, ngádàř
language: mǐyá (= 'mouth')	lie down: vèdú
large: see 'big'	life: àarô
last year: mǎadéven	lift: sàatú, sùktú, tlàtláu
late, be: ngèstú	light, l. a fire: fìitú; đíyú (bring embers or fire in order to start a fire); tǎnkà (by twirling a cornstalk next to cotton); see also 'build fire', 'fuel'
late, the: see 'deceased'	lightening: gèřèn, wìidǎ
laugh: gǎmsú	lightness (lighted place): pářák
lay down, lay out: sènú	like v.: òtùutú; see also 'want'
laziness: sáuyâ	like prep.: kàa
lazy person: mǎsàuyù, tǎskín	lime: see 'citrus'
lead astray: đáyú	
leaf: see 'leaves'	
leak: yǎu	

limit: *dáadégérí* (of vision);
íyâaká (of thing, activity)

line up: *sèřú*; see also 'align'

lion: *jágádláu*

lip: *pèrshí*

listen: *kèřèmtú*

(a) little: *řáp* (= 'a few')

live (inhabit): *mbàsú*; *dlàbáu*

liver: *géshí*

lizard: *kèráagèmak*; *ángwàřzó*
 (orange-headed)

load *n.*: *kákérâ*, *kářê*; *léptâ* (on
 animal)

loading: *lóodì*

loan *n.*: *básâ* (of money); *sàarù*
 (thing)

lock *v.*: *tèpú*

locust: *àngwàm*; see also 'grass-
 hopper'

locust bean (*Parkia filicoidea*)[H.
dorawa]: *rùwànú*; *dángwánò*
 (red flower balls); *lãancíidò*
 (immature fruits)

lodge (a guest, etc.): *zèdàpú*

lodged, become: *dlègàyú*

log: *tèmtém*

loincloth: *áfêk*

long: *gâzbèř*

long ago: *sèřàm*

long for: *tlèràbú*

look after: *řkàltú*, *ànkàltú*

look at: *làunú*, *dùgùrú*

look for: *màakú*

look over shoulder: *pìimú*

loosen: *sòosòotú*

lost, become: *dâyú*

louse: *jànkář*; *kùtlpóř* (on fowl)

love *v.*: *řtùutú*; see also 'want'

lover: *mérân* (male); *dàmànâ* (fe-
 male)

loyalty: see 'obedience'

luck: *hèř*; *zámâ* (in hunting)

lunge: *bàkwatú*

lungs: *fúufú*

lying down: *gávdák*

M

mad, go: *zùwàktú*

mahogany (*Khaya senegalensis*)[H.
madaci]: *águmàk*

maiden: see 'young woman'

Maiduguri: *Yářwà*

mail: see 'armor'

maize: see 'corn'

make: *dlàmú*

male: *gèmsèk*

malicious behavior: *árû*

man: *nèn* ("person"); *gèmsèk* (adult
 male human); *màapéndì* (young)

Manihot: see 'cassava'

manure: rûgzhí	migrate: règú
many: gâawá (= 'much')	milk n.: ányî (= 'breast')
mare: wáazâ	milk v.: wàanú
market: àasék	millet: mářdû (<i>Pennisetum typhoides</i>)[H. gero]; módíyà (<i>P. spicatum</i>)[H. maiwal]; vèřdâ (first ripe heads); gèzhí (heads of poor quality)
marry, get married to: zèbáu	millipede: shíídǎw
massacre: rèbú	mimosa: see 'Acacia nilotica'
massage: càapú	mirror: kúkútèřàm
mat: búucí [H. tabarma]; gádíà [H. zana]; díáaráu (made of deleb palm leaves); mádâmbá [H. tufaniya]; cìcì (worn out)	mischief making: ndúřúndúřú
mate (mare to stallion): hàaptú	miserliness: ngwàasà
measles: gàcùfèrāk	misfortune: kúdèřà
measure (length, etc.): kàaktíú	mislead: see 'lead astray'
meat: tíùwái (= 'animal'); sáurāk (in strips, dried)	mix: tàmíú (into heavy paste); tùksú (dry substances together); see also 'stir in'
medicine: kàřgûn, dùngûn	moisten: řèdlú
meet, go to: kàptú	molar: zhìyám
meet up with: ndàagè mú, zèbú	<i>Momordica balsamina</i> [H. garafuni]: gàdék'yík
Melegueta pepper (<i>Amomum melegueta</i>)[H. citta]: cìitá gājávér; see also 'pepper'	Monday: řiitèřin
melt: shìshiyú; řèdlú (tr.); řèdlú (intr.)	money: dâgdwá
mention: sàanú	mongoose: sùwùn (<i>Ichneumia albi-cauda</i>)[H. tunku]
mere: jáb, báram	monitor: gèzhàn (Nile, "water"); mùgbá ("land", "iguana")
message: sákwtù	monkey: vèjí; see also 'vervet monkey', 'baboon'
messenger: mùwàanàk	month: see 'moon'
metal: dũuyâk	moon: tèřá
metamorphose: mètú; kátáu	moon, appear 1st day of month: řèu
middle: pátlâ	

moreover: kàřú, nákat

morning: mìyá-k tíanú-k dàa (before sunrise); pédǎk (early); gáanyà (late)

morsel (of meat): see 'muscle'

mortar: támà

mosque: mǎshíidì

mosquito: vèdàdùwà

mother: mài; dàadá (term of address)

mount: sàkǎmú

mountain: gúgùyàk

mouse: see 'rat', 'pygmy mouse'

mouth: mìyá

move aside: kèřiyàatú, dàbáu

much: gâawá (= 'many')

mucous: tión

mud: tǎíó, tàǎó

mumbling: ngũřǎngúřì

muscle: dúgú!

mush: shàr (without sauce); màa-sàná; gùdá (made with oil and eaten on special occasions)

musk shrew (*Crocidura* spp.) [H. ja-
ba]: gúmzédǎ

myrrh: see 'Balsamodendron'

N

name: dlùgún

navel: zábáu

near: dàmtáu, bǎram

necessary, be: kàmàatú

neck: wùrá

necklace: mǎtíkìdǎ

need v.: lǎmbèetú

need n.: lǎmbé

needle: àlǎfǎbǎřǎm

neighing: yáyí

nerve: dèzhí (= 'vein')

nest: sákà

net: àràakáu (for trap or for fishing); ràagáyà (to hang calabash in)

never: see 'ever'

new: káaràrà

news: lǎabǎř

(the) next world: mǎzgài

next year: wáyák

Ngamo person/language: ngàmò

Ngizim person/language: ngǎzém

nice: bǎlǎn

night: dǎvídǎ; yùwàn (passing the night)

nine: kúdkúvdà	onion: àlbásâř
nineteen: gúumà áyâawá-w kúdkúvdà	only: káwài
ninety: gúumúu kúdkúvdà	open v.: rəptú
noisy, be: vèdú	open space: see 'area'
north: zəgář	opening: mỳá (= 'mouth')
nose: tén	openness: pářák
not: báí	opportunity: mànàwá
notch v.: gəřđú	oppress: zàaləmtú
now: gùsəskú; gácâařé (just now)	or: bíi-n, kóo, řâ, dà(a)

O

oath: démâ	orange: see 'citrus'
obedience: nákwáná	oribi (<i>Ourabia nigricaudata</i>)[H. ba-tsiya]: wíisá
"oboe" [H. algaita]: àlgítâ	orphan: tərku
occiput: gùdú	orphanhood: tərəkùnà
occupation: sàanfyâ	ostrich: zəmànú
odor: fówâ	outside: vèdà
oil: mərək	overload: zàarú
okra (<i>Hibiscus esculentus</i>)[H. ku-bewa]: gàmbarám	overpower: rəmáu
old, become: gərú	overtake: dəgđú, tàsáu
old: gázgàrà (with reference to persons); gàmàná (of things)	owl: dúuzhì
old man or woman: gwàngùràk	oryx (<i>Oryx dammah</i>)[H. mariri]: màaríirì
old woman: dúgùrú (barren); gúdu-gùm (widow)	
on top of: đă	
one: gàyí (enumeration form); kíđen (counting form)	

P

pack up: mèđú
pad (for load on head): kwəbshí
pagan: kéřdì
pain: dlərə

- painful: tótâa (= 'difficult')
 palace: gárva
 palate (in mouth): hàahá
 palm fronds (esp. of dum palm): ářďűwà
 palm tree: see 'date palm', 'de-leb palm', 'dum palm'
 pan (for measuring corn): kùyàngí
 pants: wàndó; pànjáamâ (baggy)
 paper: kákkádì, tákãřdá
Parkia: see 'locust bean'
 pass: nùutú
 pass by: bəntú
 pass out: see 'faint'
 pass the day: nàwáu
 pass the night: wùnú
 pass time: sèkòokùyú
 pasture, put to: dàwáu
 path: zàdédí (for cattle, fenced with trees); see also 'road'
 patience: kàanádí
 patient, be: mǎřtú
 pay, pay back: ngùmáu
 pay attention to: shàalú
 peace, make: sàlòotú
 peanuts: gwádánú
 peck: càkwǎú
 peek: đěďkú
 peel off: bǎbǎřú
 peer: kèlàamá, sáaráa
 pelican: see 'pink-backed pelican'
 pelvic thrusts, make: mǎğďű
 penis: gènyí
Pennisetum: see 'millet'
 pensiveness: jàajém
 people: ndìiwà, ndàawà
 pepper: kémhá (*Xylopiā aithiōpica*) [H. kimba]; shìitá, cìitá (*Cap-sicum frutescens*) [H. barkono]; see also 'ginger', 'Melegueta pepper'
 perfume: àatèřshân
 perhaps: dàa wánángè
 persevere: řàktú
 person: nèn
 perspiration: đǎafáu (= 'heat')
 pestle: áwùk
 persuade: lǎgòotú
 pester: zhìibú
 phlegm: ndáfâk (= 'a cold'); see also 'mucous'
Phoenix: see 'date palm'
 pick (beans, etc.): tǎatəmú
 pick up: mǎu
 pied crow (*Corvus albus*) [H. hankaka]: hǎk
 pierce: dǎpú, zùktú
 pigeon: bǎří (domestic) [H. tanta-bare]; bəgdǎ (Columba guinea) [H. hasbiya]
 pile (grass, stalks, etc.): sǎptó

pillow: bíi súktá-k ádá	pole: tákářwá (bamboo); dèngâgúđ (forked)
pimple: vèrà	pond: gádèřà
pinch: zhìibú	poor, be: tiùwáu
pinch off: òàdú	poor person: tiátìwà, ngúdì
pink-backed pelican (<i>Pelecanus ru-fescens</i>) [H. kwasa-kwasa]: zàbgà	pop out: pàkú
pit (where water collects): wúrfyâ	porcupine: ámbâi
pity: kànjíinò	portent, regard as: shàfùwàatú
place v.: mpáu	possessor of ...: bàací, bàabú (m.); màì (f.); ndà (pl.)
place n.: ràì	post (for tethering animal): wàyí
plain (field): pátátá	postpone: kùndú
plait: see 'braid', 'weave'	pot: dàkúrá (small, for sauce); dáawàì (clay, for cooking); gùrèf (large); vākènak (large, clay, for water)
plan n.: dàbář	potash: áráawà
plant v.: zègè mú; pàarú (make holes for putting seeds in)	potato (<i>Ipomoea batatas</i>) [H. dankali]: dānkálí
plaster v.: kèlǐbú	Potiskum: Pótéskè m̀ (Ngizim pronunciation), Pátáskà m̀ (Hausa pronunciation)
platform (raised, in field): dàbábàràk	potsherd: ðāmbáu
playing: kàawà	pottery: see 'clay'
pleasant: kàarák	pound: zàatú (in mortar); sàpǎú (grain to remove bran); kùtlèptú (wet grain to make fura, etc.); tàkwsú (leaves, etc. to render soupy); dègàgàrú (floor to make hard)
pluck: see 'pick', 'extract', 'snap'	pour: páu, vèngú (a liquid); tèpkú (dry substance, e.g. grain); dáasú (through narrow opening)
plug up: dàasú	powerful, become: gèřǎú
plum: see 'Vitex'	praise v.: gèdlǐbú, mà ádá
pocket: lííí	
pointed: jáljál	
poison: sèřká; gázákáu, yáabí (for arrows)	
poke: flidú (in ribs); see also 'pierce', 'prod'	

- praise *n.*: mà-g ádâ
- prayer: kùmàgádédâ
- pregnancy (pregnant stomach):
mádâú
- prepare: sàpèřàatú, sèrmú, zèřnàkú
- present *n.*: gèdèř (given at funeral); zègéégé (taken on a visit)
- preside over: řòotú
- press: tàkdú (p. on); tàmdú (p. on, p. together); tèřkàkdú (p. repeatedly)
- prevent: dàptú (p. from doing or happening); ngwàasú (= 'refuse')
- pride: màayá
- prince: máinà
- prod: shàshkú
- profit: támàn
- prone (on back): gfinà
- Prosopis oblonga* [H. kirya]: áayàk
- protect: dēmlyú
- provoke: zèřbè ádâ
- Pterocarpus erinaceus* [H. madobiya]: dlànji
- (the) public: jàmâa
- pull: zàrú
- pull out: 'yùwú; see also 'draw out', 'extract'
- pulverize: pèpsú
- pumpkin (*Cucurbita pepo*) [H. kabewa]: gàabíyăw; see also 'gourd'
- punch *v.*: zádâú
- puppy: kútéřú
- pus: ánkwâk
- push: dàbâú; jègdliàdlèřú (p. repeatedly)
- push away, push aside: jèmbèlú
- put: mpáu; dâawú ('put' or 'put on')
- pygmy mouse (*Mus minutoides*):
mìi-g âw
- python: káfá

Q

- quarter (of town): vèdà
- "quartermaster": gəlàadíimâ
- quickly: kádê
- quiet, be: bèzàmú
- quilt armor: see 'armor'
- quinine tree: see 'Gardenia'
- quiver (for arrows): gatlíyámák
- "quote" (introduces direct or indirect quotation): maa

R

- rabbit: see 'hare'
- rag: dlinà
- raid(ing): bémbedâ
- rainbird: see 'stork'
- rainbow: vawù-gé skù

rainy season: dèmán	red: bàu
raise: tlàtláú (lift); tlèdú (r. orphaned child, animal, etc.)	red earth [H. koya]: vawú
rake n.: dlákwâk	red-flowered silk cotton tree: see 'kapok'
rake v.: see 'sweep'	red sorrel: see 'sorrel'
ram: góomâk, gwámâk	redeem: dlègdú
ransom v.: dlègdú	reduce: pèlùutú
rapping (head with knuckles): kwànkòorí	reedbuck (<i>Redunca redunca nigeriensis</i>) [H. kwanta rafi]: kwàrà-kwàntà
rat: gáadagùm; kùrkúm (given as Hausa òeran gida); dlágái (given as òeran jeji in Hausa); "stink rat", see 'musk shrew'; see also 'cane rat', 'giant rat'	refuse: kùrú; ngwàasú (r. something to someone)
ratel (<i>Mellivora capensis</i>) [H. da-ge]: mégìyá	reinforce: tànkú
raven: see 'pied crow'	relax: tàdè kùnú
raw: gàatlá	release: tàdú
raze: rèbgú	relieved, feel: kàatú
razor: àrmúusàì	remain: dlàbáu, dlàbú, gázáu
read: kèřàatú	remainder: gágàzhìn, káakónâi
reason: dàlíl	remedy for: dùngún, kàřgún
rebel v.: bèdàmú	remember: tàanú
rebellious: gábdámák	remove: see 'take out/off'
rebelliousness: ndòoró	renowned: gázgàyák, nòogátà
receive: bǎu, gènú; wàtú (r. a guest, etc.)	repair: dǎlmú, dǎnmú
reciprocate: ngùmáú	repairing: dǎdǎm
recognize: sàanùutú	repentance: túubì
reconciliation (with wife): dègá	representative: wàzíířì
recover: ngàatú (from illness); sàktú (after fainting, etc.)	request v.: wílílú; see also 'ask'
	reside: see 'live'
	resow: sá dà-k âw
	ressemble: dlám gènàawà

- rest: dà mǎfíyâ
- retaliate: ngùmáú
- return: kàlàktú, kàtáú
- rib: áarà (of body); àzáǎ (of palm frond)
- Ricinus communis* [H. zirman]:
dlábùwàk
- ride (horse, etc.): gàayú, sàkè mú
- ridgerow: áatárú
- right, right hand: màtá
- ring: kúyú; mǎzgéd (on handle of spear)
- rinse (mouth): kùnkùǎ
- rip: see 'tear'
- ripen: nàwáú
- river: ánkú; see also 'water-course'
- road: dǎlpù, dènú
- roan antelope (*Hippotragus equinus koba*) [H. gwamki]: gáskâi
- roast: bàkú
- robe: see 'gown'
- roll: vǎrgàgènú (r. along on ground); fǎrfèrú (r. back and forth between hands)
- roll up: yàidú
- rolling around on ground: bèřzàzán
- room: sésàú
- rooster: gàskám
- root: àaráu
- rope: zàyí
- rosewood: see 'Pterocarpus'
- rot (carrion, etc.): dlègwàǎ, tǎřàǎ
- Rothmania (Randia) nilotica* [H. barbaje]: àagúvá
- rotten: gátǎřàǎk
- row (hill formed with plow):
áatárú
- rub: zǎzgú (to relieve itch); zùwáú (r. paint, oil, etc. on); yàikáú (r. a surface to smooth); mǎr-mǎsú (r. with circular motion, e.g. peanuts to remove skins)
- rubber: ánáyí
- rubbish heap: bǎzhèk
- ruin: dlèmtú, tlàkàtú
- ruined, be: dlèmatú, tlàkàtú, dlèbgènú
- ruined a.: gǎdlèmaták
- run: ràwáú
- run away: rǎmáú
- Ruppell's griffon (*Gyps ruppelli*) [H. miki]: zákwták
- rush: gùbàǎ

S

blocks)	secretly: gàmádlìyàk
same: gàyí (ákshí gàyí 'they are the same'); řák nàa ('same as')	see: ìikáu, làunú
sand: áisăw	seed: zádák
sarcasm: mărñìiwà	seize: jìbú
satisfied (with food): gáwáyák, gáawáyák	select: cìkdũ
satisfy (a need, desire): tlàtú	sell: đébdú
Saturday: sébdùwà	send: wànáu; dàbáu (a person)
sauce: dlùgwàn; see also 'flavoring for sauce'	separate v.: wàayú (disperse); òèrú (split); řèetú (into two parts); tlàatú (one long thing from another); cìkdũ (thing from a mass or group)
save (from): ráu	servant [H. bara]: bàayí, zèdái
say: see 'speak'	servant, state of being: zèdlíná
scabies: kèshàtùwà	set down: mpáu
scars (tribal): gùvà	set (trap, etc.): tùutáu
scatter: wàayú	set (of sun): vègú
scissors: mákâs	set fire to: tàđá ákâ
scold: gèřnú	set out for: tàřnú
scoop out: ngwău	seven: gátkàsà
scorpion: wũřjí (red); gàatlég-dàdăř (black)	seventeen: gúumà áyâawá-w gátkàsà
scrambling: wáawúř	seventy: gùumúu gátkàsà
scrape: pàpkú (s. surface to make smooth); sàskú (s. off small, adherent pieces); gùutú (s. impression in ground); díàřdú (s. skin, abrade)	severed: gágádák
scraper: tládăk	sew: đănku
scratch: tlàadũ (s. place that itches); kwàatíú (with claws); dlèktàtènú (s. ground, e.g. chickens); see also 'to draw'	sexually excited, be: tàsú
secret: àashéř	shade: nénúwà
	shake: rəbú (shiver, tremble); gùgùyú (blanket, gown, etc.); zàpènú (to mix, e.g. water and flour in gourd)
	shame: zhìráu

- share *n.*: núubà
- sharif: shàǎíṗ
- sharp (pointed): jáljál; see also 'sharpness'
- sharpen: ṣḍáú (cutting edge);
sètú (to point)
- sharpness (of cutting edge):
yàanáu (= 'tooth')
- shatter: see 'break into pieces'
- shave: sèkú
- shea-nut tree (*Butyrospermum par-*
kii)[H. kaḍanya]: kùtású
- sheath (small, for knife, etc.):
sákà
- shed: see 'shelter'
- sheep: tàmàakú; ábzhùurà (virgin);
see also 'ram'
- shell (of nut): tìèkwàkùràk
- shelter [H. rumfa]: bákâ
- shin: métókùs (= 'calf')
- shishkebab: áḍèbà
- shit *n.*: sháu
- shit *v.*: bà sháu
- shivering: jàgják
- shoe: sóonò
- shoot: vǎu (an animal, etc.);
vèrkú (an arrow, etc.)
- shop: kàntí
- short: gâgwvén
- shortage: nàmbò
- shoulder: gáptâ
- shouting: kúruwâ
- show: tàatkú
- shrivel: see 'wither'
- sibling: yáagànà
- sick, be: fèrú
- sick, feel: dàgzú
- sick (person, under another's care):
ngáfèràk
- sick on: shèshkú
- sickle: sèkwái
- side: bàakà; bègbék (of body, be-
tween ribs and pelvic bone);
see also 'rib'
- sieve: ráríyá
- silent: see 'quiet'
- silk-cotton tree: see 'kapok'
- similarity: gènàawà
- since: àagí, tén
- sing: rùwáu
- singe: vàvìyú
- singing: see 'song'
- sip: rèvú
- sister: gèḍén (younger, = 'younger
brother'); gázgàrà (elder, =
'elder brother'); dàadà (elder,
term of address)
- sit down: mbàsú
- six: zèdù
- sixteen: gúumà áyâawá-w zèdù
- sixty: gùumúu zèdù
- skim: sèpú

skin n.: rə̀vək	snatch up (as hawk catching prey): zàamtú
skin v.: náu	sneak up on: sèmdú
skink: shìláláfyâ	sneak past: pèdú
skirt: see 'wrapper'	sneeze, sneezing: wáatəshì
sky: déskù	sniff at: see 'smell at'
slander v.: nyùwáu	snoring: dlánkôř
slap: màskàlàatú	snorting (of bull, etc.): = 'hiss- ing'
slaughter: zìidú	soak (herbs in water, etc.): gùbú
slave: gùzép	Sodom apple: see 'Calotropis'
slave-like: gágúzbú	soft: lə́bád; lə́fíid; lə́glák; lə́mís; təlúus
slavery: gùzəpənà	<i>Solanum</i> spp. [H. gauta]: kwìitáawà
sleep (in the eyes): ngàapəcátl	some: dágài, jìgàp
sleeping: yùwán	son: màtkám, wùn; mágáají (first- born of any one wife)
sling over shoulder: dlègú	song: rúwâ
small: gángám	sorcerer: báddəřà; máaləm (= 'tea- cher')
smallpox: áizá	sorceress: zégá; mágáná (term of reference)
smear on (plaster, mud, etc.): kəlúú	sore: see 'ulcer', 'pimple'
smell v.tr.: kəmáu	<i>Sorghum bicolor</i> : gávérkà, gávérékà, gàrófkà [H. dawa]; dàashà [H. jan dawa]
smell at, sniff at: fàunú	sorrel (<i>Hibiscus sabdariffa</i>) [H. ya- kuwa]: àrás
smelly: gádìəgwàdák	soup: see 'sauce'
smithing: mǎazám	sour: fáu (acidic); zhòm (ferment- ed); cáďák; còmcom
smoke: zàawúk	south: àadáu
smooth out (with rubbing motion): màksú	sow: see 'plant'
snake: mbíikďa	
snap in two (rope, fruit from tree, etc.): gèdú (tr.); gádú (intr.)	
snap off several (e.g. peppers or okra from bush): dlèřdú	

- space: see 'area'
- speak: ràmbú
- spear: ngàs
- speech: rámbà
- spend the day/night/time: see 'pass the day/night/time'
- sphere: shàr
- spices (hot pepper, etc.): bàatàrà
- spider: áráríwà
- spill: vèngú
- spit: tèpkú, tàpkú; pùurú (in spray)
- spitting (of cat): = 'hissing'
- split (wood): dlàbèrú
- split open: bèrú, dlèdú
- spoil: dlèbgènú (tr. or intr.); dlèmtú (tr.); dlèmàtú (intr.); kwàabú ('not go well'); see also 'rot'
- spoiled, be: = 'spoil' (intr.)
- Spondias* sp. [H. danya]: máwú
- sprain: kùřtèkú
- spray: bàzìyú; pùurú
- spread out: rùunú (washing to dry); pèřtú (mat, blanket, etc.); sènú (something on mat, etc.)
- sprinkle: jìcǎú (water); wàskú, wùřwùřú (spices, etc.)
- sprout (leaves from tree, etc.): dǔwàyú
- squash n.: see 'pumpkin'
- squash v.: dèřgèzú
- squatting: jòokúlółòk
- squeeze: màadú
- squeeze out: 'càapáu (juice, oil, etc.); tèřdú (pus from boil)
- squeeze together: zhìibú
- squirrel (*Xerus erythropus*) [H. ku-rege]: kàayák; see also 'flying squirrel'
- squirt (out): cìřdú
- stab: dlàpú
- staff: see 'stick'
- stalk: sésúwà
- stallion: ngářgù
- stand up: tláu; see also 'stop'
- star: gázhǎw
- start (doing): see 'begin'
- stay (as a guest): zèdàpú; see also 'remain'
- steal: kèrú
- steam v.: zèbàayú
- stem of plant: gùvú
- step on: tàkdú
- Sterculia tomentosa* [H. kukuki]: mbák
- stick: záwâ; see also 'stirring stick'
- sting (scorpion, etc.): vǎu
- stink: see 'odor', 'rot', 'spoil'
- stir (thick substance): tùnkùdú
- stir in (flour into water, etc.): cǎlmú

stirring stick: àvón	struggling: pérméshí
stirrup: dùwâl	stuck, be: dlègàyú
stoke: rùksú	stumbling: kúřtâm
stomach: kùnú (internal organ); see also 'belly'	submerge: 'yàmú, nìyú
stone: kàcàř (small); sáayà (for adornment); dǎadúkòk (for shap- ing grindstone); gúgùyàk (= 'mountain'); see also 'grinding stone'	substitute: séréâm
stoop: gùtkú	suck: pàadú
stop: řdú	suckling: mfiwà
stop up: dàasú	suffice: bàtáu
store v.: tlèkú	sugar: sékàř
stork: shìrândúk (marabou s., <i>Lep- toptilus rumeniferus</i>) [H. babba da jaka]; ngúráarú (Abdims' s. or rainbird, <i>Sphenorhyncus ab- dimii</i>) [H. shamuwa]	sugar cane: ángàabà; ámbàawà (any type of stalk with sweet pulp)
storm: kànám	sun: áfâ
storm v.: kànè mú	Sunday: láaduwà
story: see 'folktale'	support: see 'allegiance'
"stove": see 'tripod'	surpass: bèntú; see also 'exceed'
straighten out (wire, etc.): démáu, demú	surprise, be surprised: jàptú
strain: see 'filter'	surround: vèikú
stranger: see 'guest'	swaggering: màayá
strength: áwáyáu	swallow: òtú
stretch (legs out in front): sèrmú	swear: see 'oath'
string (beads, etc.): sèřú, sèřtú	sweep: kàasú; bàazú (as a gown sweeping the ground)
strip (edges of palm leaves): pèstú	sweet: dónémnè
strong: see 'strength'	swell up: gùbàmtú; tlàatlèřú; wùsú (due to infection, etc.)
	swerve: gwàafú
	swerve off (road): dlàgdú
	swing (back and forth): vèřwàutú
	switch (made of cane): kúřpâk

swollen: gátláatlàrák

sword: kàsákáã

syphilis: gádáagúrí

syphilis, to contract: vǎu

T

tail: kùtǎã

take: 'go' + transitizing suffixes
-náa, -dù (take from one place
to another); gènú (take a thing
given); see also 'accept',
'take up'

take apart: see 'undo'

take away: tlèrú

take down: wùrtú

take effect (medicine, etc.):
tàpáú

take off (clothes): rèntú

take out, off: dǎu; dǎktú (a li-
quid after sediment has set-
tled)

take up (load, etc.): máu

tale: zénzèn

tall: gǎzbǎã

tamarind (*Tamarindus indica*)[H.
tsamiya]: méshónú

tangled, be: tlǎrdú

taste v.: tàmbáú

taunt: see 'insult'

taxes: hàãájì

teach: gùgzú

teacher: máalám, máalêm

tear v.: tlèmpìyú

-teen: vǎrə, áyâawá, àa

tell: see 'speak'

tell fortune: gǎzáú

ten: gúumà

tender, tenderness (of meat):
cíkáas

termite(s): tárúwâ [H. gara];
pǎrdá [H. gina]

termite hill: kèsǎã

terrified, become: gèràbú

testicles: ànán

testimony: sháidà, sháidá

tethering rope: dǎngwâi

thank: gòdòotú

that a.: tífú

that (+ relative clause): wàarǎ

that one: sífú, sífú tífú (being
pointed out or in question);
ténú (in question)

thatch: dǎdzú; see also 'bundle of
thatching grass'

the: -w, -gú; ténú

then: lǎkwǎ-w ((at) that time);
kámàndén ("and then")

there: rìi tífú ("that place");
nèngú (pointing)

there is/are [French *voilà*, H.
gàa]: sǐi(tài), sǎnà (+ singu-
lar object); ndíi, ndónà (+ plu-
ral object)

there is/are [French *il y a*, H.

akwai]: nàa + noun or pronoun; wàrá (with no overt complement)	three: kwán
there is/are no [French <i>il n'y a pas</i> , H. babu]: góo, nàa ... bái	throat: ngúrdládiyá
these: ndáu (<i>pron.</i>); tkú (<i>adj.</i>)	throw: vèrkú; see also 'hurl'
thick (viscous): gèdèbès	throw down (as in wrestling): kàrdú, řàađú
thickness (viscosity): dèbès	throwing weapon: kwáakúraì
thief: àkér, ákéràk	thrust (with pelvis): màgdú
thigh: gèmə	thunder: = 'lightening'
thin: gájàawàsák (lean); láuláu (watery)	Thursday: làamísùwà
thin, be: jàawàsú	tick: vávíd
thing: bái, bàyà, bèe, bì	tickle: fìlídú (by poking in ribs)
think about: tùmàntú	tie: tàkwsú, tàusú; mēdú (in a bundle); see also 'fetter'
thinking: túmáadà	tighten: ñtíú
thirst: gējì	time: lákwù; zàamàn (epoch, the time of); sářtù (determined for specific event); zègèr (as in "one time", "two times")
thirteen: gúmà áyâawá-w kwán	tiny: jíííí
thirty: gùumúu kwán	tired, be: đúwàtlú
this a.: tkú	tiredness: đúwàtlú
this one: sáu, súu tkú	to: ìi
this year: dàvànàngú	toad: kèřinàkáu
thistle: see 'Centaurea'	tobacco: tàabà
thorn: jèjém	today: gùskú
those: ndíyú, ndénú (<i>pron.</i>); tíyú (<i>adj.</i>)	together: đagàyí
though: yàayé	tomato, bitter (<i>Solanum</i> spp.)[H. gauta]: kwìtáawà
thousand: dábú	tomorrow: ámzhàrú
thread: gèřàazán	tongue: mǎrnyí
threaten: đěvàarú	too (also): yé

tooth: yàanáu; see also 'bicuspid', 'cuspid', 'incisor', 'molar'

touch: lèntú

town: dāa

toy (on string, whirled): táwúnyà

trace (designs): nàudú; see also 'draw'

tracks: dálásâ, gâtér zègér

trading: māsà, sáafêř (itinerant)

train v.: dēmú

trap: kàmbúudì; àràakáu (net);
kêl (metal, with spring);
kwálté (pit)

travel v.: ràakènú

traveling: bùwà; ràakán

treasury: bìitèl(è)mân

tree: wákà

trembling: mátíkátíkà; jàgják

tribe: àudú; kàadúgú, kàadúkú

trilling: 'yárárái

tripod (of stones, to rest cooking pot on): vákín

trouble v.: ngènèptú, ràvènú;
see also 'pester', 'annoy'

trouble n.: bóonê, kàbíinè

truce, make: sàlòotú

trumpeting (with horn or mouth):
màakēm

trust n.: àamân

truth: jířê, jířèewá

Tuesday: tèlákèk

tumble: bəřtənú

turban n.: àrìyáapù; kèlèekèlé
(strip of white cloth worn by
sorceress)

turban v.: yàidú

turn: mèstú; vùutú (turn away);
kwăřkwăřtú (turn around and
around)

turn into: mèstú (= 'turn'), kàtáu
(= 'return')

turn over: címú

turtle: áyákú

tweezers: bákúmâk

twelve: gúumà áyâawá-w shírín

twenty: gùumúu shírín

twigs (for firewood): càacáawà

twist: məřtəkú

two: shírín

tyrannize: bàzàřtú; wànáu

U

udder: dúwák

ugly: gářshú

ulcer: déřènkú, dláyâ

ululation: see 'trilling'

umbrella: láayímâ

unable, be: bédàmú; dègàrú (to get
down from high place, etc.)

uncle: bàabángám (younger paternal)

under: dádāa

undo: pèřtú
 undress: sèltú
 unhaft, come unhafted: kùpkú,
 kùkkú
 unless: ʔn; bíi-n
 unload: fùwú, wùřtú
 unsatisfied, be: làamtú
 untie: fètkú
 until: hář, kápá; sée, sái
 upset, be: jìktú
 urine: vèďáu
 useful: gámpàaták
 useful, be: ñpàatú
 usefulness: páyídà

V

vagina: see 'vulva'
 vein: dèzhí
 vervet monkey (*Ceropithecus aethiops tantalus*) [H. kirká]: bùdò-
 ngàrá
 vexed, be: jìktú
 victory: kènásâř
 village: see 'town'
 virgin [H. budurwa]: dábákù
Vitex cienkowskii [H. dinya]:
 yáamâďú
Vitis pallida [H. dafara]:
 dúgúlgùl

Voandzeia: see 'Bambara ground-
 nuts'
 voice: wùrá
 vomit (up): bàn(ù)wú
 vulture: dfishăw (*Necrosyrtes mo-
 nachus*) [H. ungulu]; see also
 'Ruppell's griffon'
 vulva: wíyàk

W

wade (through tall grass): zàabú
 wait for: dèřáu, zàagú
 wake up: gùdlàdlú (tr.); gèràdú
 (intr.)
 walk: ràakènú
 walking: ràakán
 wall (esp. of a town): gàarú
 want: ncí
 war: zhà
 warn: gàbdú
 warthog: gùbés
 wash: vîyú; kùtú (lower legs, arms,
 and face w.o. soap); zèbàbîyú
 (millet after removing bran);
 cùntú (thing repeatedly)
 watch over: shàalú
 water: âm
 water (animals, garden): dèbú
 water pot: see 'pot'
 watercourse: gúmbàk (filled by rain);

- wúríyâ (feeding a river)
 weaken, be weakened: tàrsú
 wealth: bèřéḍ, fáayḷn; ləmân (usu-
ally livestock)
 wealthy, be: bèřḍú
 wealthy person: mábèřéḍ
 wean: tlèrú
 weapon: báar(è)mè; see also
'throwing weapon'
 wear out: pèsú
 weave: càakáu (cloth); nèmú (a
net); gəunú (zana-mat); təkú
(palm-leaf mat or dóbà); see
also 'braid'
 Wednesday: láarábà
 weeding: rùwái; rùwíi bàu (first);
řáaḅà (second)
 week: máagì
 weigh: ngàltú
 weight: see 'heavy'
 well (for water): dúwâ; cáacá
(shallow, dug in watercourse)
 well (after illness): řáamà
 well, become: nàwáu, ngàatú
 well adv.: řànkátà
 well bucket: kúřpí
 well-known: see 'renowned'
 well-off: gám̀bàsák
 west: dèkèmə
 wet, be: řàdlú
 wet v.tr.: see 'moisten'
 wet a.: gářádlák
 what: tàm (free form); -mòò (asso-
ciative noun phrase form)
 whatever: tàm̀ké, tà̀nké
 when (question): fátàwàn
 whenever: fátàwà̀nké
 where: ráwàn; ndá
 wherever: ràwà̀nké
 which, which one(s): tàwàn
 whichever: tàwà̀nké
 whip: ləkóodì
 whistle v.: flìflìyú
 whistling: flìflì
 white: àaràwái; bàu (light-colored
skin)
 who (question): tài (free form);
-yèe (associative noun phrase
form)
 whoever: tìyé, tìiké
 why: gàadā-gé mòò; nà̀nà
 wickedness: kəmángàř
 widen (hole): řètliú
 widow: gúdùgùm
 wife: ámə; àtliḅá (disfavored)[H.
bora]; á̀nàatàakáu (favored)[H.
mowa]; m̀aajlyà (head wife); see
also 'co-wife'
 wild cat (probably *Felis libica*)[H.
kwara]: ngàrà
 wind n.: zùwàk; kwákwàk (esp.
cold wind)
 wind v.: lù̀bùutú; yàidú (wind

turban on)

wing: gáptâ (= 'shoulder'); màvâk-
tâk (forepart)

X

winnow: tlàrlyú (by pouring from
one calabash to another, lett-
ing wind take chaff); bàktú
(using dóbâ or strainer to re-
move bran from grain or coarse
flour from fine)

Xylophia: see 'pepper'

Y

witch: see 'sorceress'

with: nâa

wither: sàamàdú (shrivel up);
zènàdú (become dry but not die)

yam (wild): búřmùwà

yawn(ing): fúumâ

without: góo

year: àamán; see also 'last year',
'this year', 'next year'

woman: ámâ (adult); dábákù (young);
see also 'old woman', 'female'

year, spend: mànú

wood: dèm

year of (used in dates): híjírâ

word(s): ráma

(a) year old: gámánák

work: wánâ

yellow: áawâyâ

world: dùunfýâ; lářdì (= 'coun-
try', 'area')

yesterday: gárvácá

worm: kèshák

yet (in negative 'not yet'): dègò

worry, be worried: sàltú

yolk: ngàavèn

worthless: vátkú

young man: màapéndì; zèdái

wound: mâtîâ; see also 'ulcer'

young woman: dábákù

wrap on (turban): kàisú, yàidú

Z

wrapper (for woman): páapá

wrestling: dlègìd

Zingiber: see 'ginger'

wring out: mèřgèdú

Zizyphus: see 'jujube'

wrinkle v.: kwìifàafènú

zorilla (*Ictonyx senegalensis*)[H.
baudari]: kílìlákìlìá

write: gèvú, tàřnú

Addenda

The following items, all ideophones or similar onomatopoeitic words, were inadvertently omitted in the preparation of the dictionary.

mèřàadl-mèřàadl *id.* chomping, chewing. sai dá kkəm dayak maayim-gu took dá jib-du dà gaaji dà tki-du, mēřaadi-mēřaadi-mēřaadi tēnu, dà kiid-du 'then he hit the goat of the boy bang!, caught him, bit him and killed him chomp-chomp-chomp, and ate him up'.

mētł *id.* with a hard blow. dáa yki dabi, naa dabi mētł tēn dá tki-du 'then he saw the hoe, and with the hoe bang! he killed him'. See also zhàa.

mánjáu *id.* very tight, leaving no open space. zhiiba-naa yu manjau 'he squeezed against me m.'. See also lérǵíǵí.

mǎu *id.* tightly. dà taushi-naa kutēř-gə bədlamu ii tka-w mau 'he tied the hyena's tail to it (a root) tightly'.

miida *id.* with swaggering motion. waane áa raakan miida-miida 'so-and-so is swaggering along'.

ndǎŋ *id.* with a solid thud. sai bií tku ndaw gwabo dá jib-naa vəkshi bədlamu ndaŋ 'then that thing the gourd caught the anus of the hyena thock!'.
ndándó! *id.* with a leap. tiike àa sa-k ada gwabo-gu, suu àa sa-w ndan-dol nən, dá zdafi-ngəri ... suu ndandol nən, dá zdafi-ngəri 'everybody was jumping over the gourd, when this one would jump, he would come down ... that one whoop!, he would come down'.

ngǔlǔt *id.* covered up. dáa ji ii vək-gəri dà miya-k sau dà dabgi-naa ada-gəri ngulet dá vəji-ngəri 'he went to his hole from the doorway of the hut, buried his head deep, and lay down'.

ngwàl *id.* peeking. nən mətə-ngəri-n, dáa ji da ngwal? 'if a person is dead, does he peek with his eye?'.

nyàktlām *id.* rather hard.

pəlók *id.* used w. àayùwà 'black'. àayùwà pəlók 'coal black'.

pěřək *id.* with a bound. ja dá vəri pěřək 'the dog bounded out'.

pám *id.* (1) indeed, a lot. dá jikci-naa atu pam 'he bothered her a lot'.

(2) expansive. wate miya mavgi Daanga tku dá dlam pam 'and may the doorway of Danga be broad (i.e. may D. prosper)'.

pàsàpàsà *id.* in abundance. aw Ngełjarma, aw dà 'yawí pasapasa 'the

grain of Ngeljarma, may the grain be abundant'.

pâu *id.* bang. dâa ki patla-k aḏa-gəri dá kkəmə naa kuku-gu maa pau!
kuku dá taŋi 'he sighted on the middle of his head, he hit with the
baobab pod bang!, and the pod broke'.

pâuuu *id.* bright (light or color). dâa tlanə-ngara pauuu 'the dawn came
brightly'; ná yka-naa pəṭlayu-gən taaba pauuu 'I saw the tobacco blos-
soms brightly colored'.

ràarəm-ràarəm *id.* speedily. àa rawa raaram-raaram 'he (dog) was zipping
along'.

řùḅḅaa *id.* old, tired. garə-ngəri řùḅḅaa 'he's very old and decrepit'.

řúḅḅa *id.* large quantity (of food). nda dlamee ii-ja abən tənu, ká
yka bi řùḅḅa 'when the food was made for us, you should have seen it
piled up'.

řúmús *id.* burnt up. bakə-ngara řumus 'it burnt to a crisp'.

səlóok *id.* empty-handed. náa vəgi-n, ná vəgi cikŋlaaa, ná vərə-n, ná
vərai səlóok 'when I dived in, I dived in adorned, (but) when I came
out, I came out empty-handed'.

sám *id.* (cf. K. sàm 'a short time, a little while'; H. sám 'empty, no-
thing') silent, saying nothing. mbasu sam kaṛgun baaci nyaw 'sitting
in silence is the remedy for the gossip'.

sháráu *id.* zoom! See dádəmək.

sól *id.* used w. àaràwàì 'white'. àaràwàì sól 'snow white'.

súr-súr-súr *id.* sai kutləm-kutləm tku dá vərai suř-suř-suř dà yi dà
ř'yi 'then the spirit came out s-s-s, went, and stood'.

təŋ *id.* exhausted. bədlam dá duwatlə-ngəri təŋ 'the hyena was complete-
ly exhausted'.

təř *id.* directly. ja dà tərnyi kunu-k dâa təř goo ř'yi see kwakunu-k
dâa 'the dog headed directly into the town without stopping until
(she was) in the center of town'.

ták *id.* (one) only. gàyì ták 'just one, exactly one'.

táŋlái *id.* upward. dà ram maa, "kunam talai, kunam talai," kunamu dà
yi-ngara ii dəsku 'she said, "Palm go up, palm go up," and the palm
tree went up'.

táatarəngúdá *id.* sound of a drum being beaten. sai ndá kkəm ganga taa-
tarənguda, taatarənguda 'then they beat the drum boomity-boom-boom'.
cf. bəřəmbádcəm, dləřəntəm.

tlářéd-tlářéd *id.* scraping. ná tlaadə fəna tləřéd-tləřéd 'I scraped
out the calabash scrape-scape'.

t'ook *id.* bang! See mèřàadl-mèřàadl.

wál-wál-wál *id.* sound of washing. Riddle: ná viyi dēgəna-gaa wal-wal-wal, ná cimə-n, àa w'yi kee bai 'I washed my bowl w-w-w, when I cover it, it won't dry'. Answer: miya-k tən ja 'the end of a dog's nose'.

wàwài *id.* on purpose. dayak dá bandai adan wawai 'the goat started crying on purpose'.

wú-wú-wú *id.* bray of a donkey.

References

- Koelle, Sigismund Wilhelm. 1854. *Polyglotta Africana*. London: Church Missionary Society. Republished 1963 with an Historical Introduction by P.E.H. Hair, by Fourah Bay College, the University of Sierra Leone.
- Kraft, Charles H. n.d. "Wordlists of Chadic languages." Ms.
- Lukas, Johannes. 1937. *A Study of the Kanuri Language*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Meek, C.K. 1931. *Tribal Studies in Northern Nigeria*, 2 Vols. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner and Co. Ltd.
- Newman, Paul. 1977. "Chadic classification and reconstructions." *Afroasiatic Linguistics* 5(1):1-42.
- Schuh, Russell G. 1971. "Verb forms and verb aspects in Ngizim." *Journal of African Languages* 10:47-60.
- _____. 1972. "Aspects of Ngizim syntax." Doctoral dissertation, University of California, Los Angeles. [University Microfilms #73-1729]
- _____. 1975. "Bóde, Ngo:djin and Dó:ai in the *Polyglotta Africana*." *African Languages/Langues africaines* 1:290-299.
- _____. 1977. "Bade/Ngizim determiner system." *Afroasiatic Linguistics* 4(3):101-174.
- _____. 1978. "Bade/Ngizim vowels and syllable structure." *Studies in African Linguistics* 9:247-283.